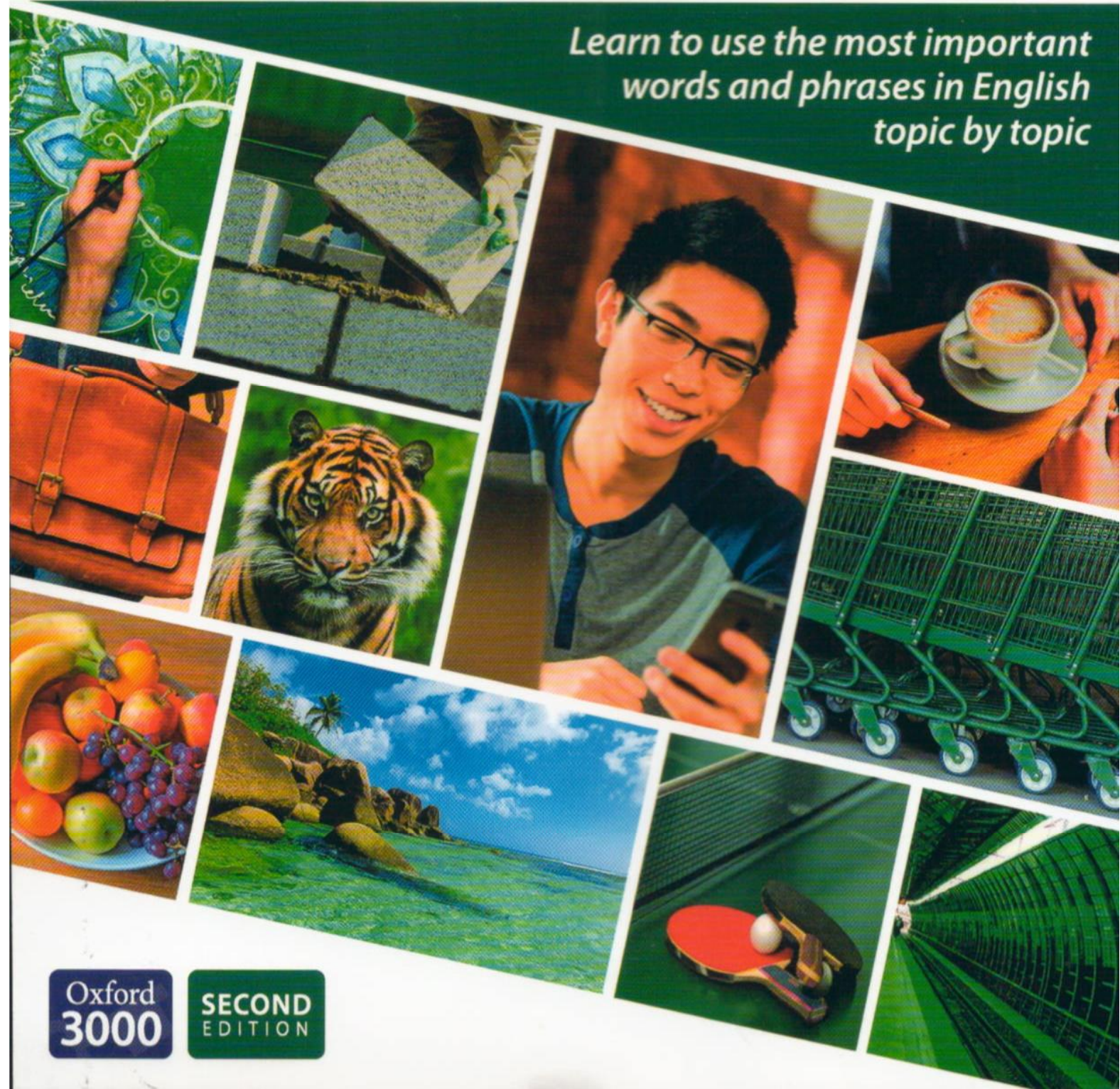


Oxford Word Skills

ELEMENTARY VOCABULARY

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

*Learn to use the most important
words and phrases in English
topic by topic*



Oxford
3000

SECOND
EDITION

Oxford **Word Skills**

ELEMENTARY VOCABULARY

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

*Learn to use the most important
words and phrases in English
topic by topic*

OXFORD

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2020

The moral rights of the authors have been asserted

First published in 2020

2024 2023 2022 2021 2020

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials contained in any third party website referenced in this work

ISBN: 978 0 19 460566 3 Pack
ISBN: 978 0 19 460567 0 Student's Book
ISBN: 978 0 19 479862 4 Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary 10th edition app

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Cover images: OUP (table tennis/ESLINE); Shutterstock (happy man/Dean Drobot), (painting/shoarts), (tiger/Colette3), (fruit/tazzymoto), (brick laying/Olefirenko Vitaly), (coffees/kikovic), (coast/Vibrant Image Studio), (subway/olivija_owl), (traveller/mimagephotography), (trolleys/Henrik Lehnerer).

Some of the **ABOUT YOU** answers were kindly supplied by the following people: Elzbieta Rudniak (Poland), Eva Paulerová and her students (Czech Republic), Franky Lau (China), Florence Waeni (Kenya), Gabriela Rangel (Mexico), Katalin Elekes and her students (Hungary), Mallika Ghosh (India).

Back cover photograph: Oxford University Press building/David Fisher.

Although every effort has been made to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, this has not been possible in some cases. We apologize for any apparent infringement of copyright and, if notified, the publisher will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest possible opportunity.

Disclaimer: This book includes some words which have or are asserted to have proprietary status as trademarks or otherwise. Their inclusion does not imply that they have acquired for legal purposes a non-proprietary or general significance nor any other judgement concerning their legal status. In cases where editorial staff have some evidence that a word has proprietary status this is indicated in the listing of that word in the Word List but no judgement concerning the legal status of such words is made or implied thereby.

The publisher would like to thank the following for their permission to use the following photographs: **Alamy Stock Photo** pp. 64 (recipe/Zoonar GmbH), 66 (police/Martin Brayley), 112 (post office/Kumar Sriskandan), 129 (history/Ian Dagnall), (literature/CBW), 158 (Vanessa May/ITAR-TASS News Agency), (Jonas Kaufmann/dpa picture Alliance), 159 (Glastonbury/Roger Cracknell 01), 160 (Mr Bean/United Archive GmbH), (Dunkirk/Moviestore Collection Ltd), (Bond/Entertainment Pictures), (cartoon/MARKA), (science fiction/Sportsphoto), 165 (Mary Shelley/Heritage Image Partnership Ltd), 177 (information office/EDU Vision); **Metropolitan Museum of Art** p. 129 The Mr. and Mrs. Henry H. Thaw Collection, 1956 © Metropolitan Museum, New York; **OUP** pp. 65 (mobile phone/Maxx Studio), 80 (monkey, snake, whale, cow, spider), 92 (milk, bread, chocolates), 94 (apple, grapes, pineapple), 95 (cucumber), 96 (cow, beef, lamb), 102 (bike), 140 (computer), 154 (TV), 171 (plane); **Shutterstock** pp. 17 (spoon/Alex Staroseltsev), 24 (seasons/mandritoiu), 28 (woman/J.P. Chretien), (man/Studioloco), 30 (tall/Asier Romero), (average/pikselstock), (short/mimagephotography), (slim/Ebitkar), (average build/AlexNasty), (overweight/Gelpi), 31 (beard/Cookie Studio), (blonde hair/nakariidore), (straight hair/Roman Samborskiy), (grey hair/AJP), 34 (reception/SeventyFour), 36 (damon/aastock), (Elsie/India Picture), (Alf/Pathdoc), (Dave/kurhan), (Maggie/Djomas), (Paul/eurobanks), (Jane/natu), (Luke/Spectral Design), (Karen/Heather Shimmin), (James/Gelpi), (Jessica/All-about people), 37 (couple/Spectral Design), (Damon/aastock), 38 (laughing/WAYHOME Studio), 39 (Gemma, Sophie/WAYHOME Studio), 40 (couple/Bobex-73), 41 (Sophie, Gemma/WAYHOME Studio), 51 (Caroline/Artem Varnitsin), 53 (tennis/mtmphoto), 56 (scarf/Yuri Gulakov), (hat/FoodTravelStockforlife), (belt/Jian Zhongyan), (handbag/specnaz), (umbrella/Scrudje), (watch/Olga Popova), (shoes/Kutlaved Dmitriy), (leather boots/Hlemedida Ivan), (trainers/Den Rozhnovsky), (socks/valkonien), (tights/Kajonsak Tui), (glasses/Ajintai), (sunglasses/yod67), (gloves/Andrey Armyagov), (rings/AOME1812), (jewellery/Alina MD), (necklace/Alpay Erdem), 57 (Shoes/glamour/necklace/superphoto65), (watch/Hugh Adams), (boots/Hlemedida Ivan), (trainers/Harry Cabance), (gloves/TinasDreamworld), (belt/

AlenKadir), (tights/Spinsv), (plastic ring/Nikos Andreou), 58 (red skirt/Velvet Eye), (blue skirt/lev radin), (orange handbag/Nadia Korel), (green handbag/Khmelnitskaia Evgeniia), (tie/Sandratsky Dmitriy), (purple tie/bg_knight), (shoes/Ivan Popelyshko), (red shoes/azure), 59 (shop assistant/Zoriana Zaitseva), (large shirt/EveniAnd), 60 (bank notes & coins/Ubermensch Matt), (bank notes/Andrew Baker), (coins/UKRID), (debit card/robertindiana), (brown wallet/Ekaterina43), (purse/Bayanova Svetlana), (wallet/LomdetP), 61 (table setting/allstars), (hair products/Maria Francesca Moccia), (car/White Vector), 62 (toys/Billion Photos), 64 (diary/Panya Anusami), (old camera/finwal89), (cassette/Ensuser), (old tools/Olivier Le Queinec), 65 (fan/ScriptX), (electric fan/Ratthaphong Ekariyasap), (old phone/Adrio Communications Ltd), 68 (headache/Makistock), (toothache/PARIN.PSA), (stomach ache/napator aungsirochinda), (backache/Obprod), (cold/Samo Trebizan), (cough/Stockbakery), (flu/kryzhov), (temperature/Ermolaev Alexander), (sick/New Africa), 69 (ill/Rawpixel.com), 71 (rocks/Tatiana Popova), 72 (logging/Sheryl Watson), 73 (coal/Pail Oleg), (petrol/Novikov Alex), (electricity/TW Stock), (gas/Happyhunt), 78 (sunny/traXX), (cloudy/Suzanne Tucker), (raining/Inga Neilson), (windy/Rainer Fuhrmann), (snow/Alexander Demyanov), 79 (stormy/diamond), 80 (lion/Eric Isselee), (tiger/nattanan726), (elephant/Rich Carey), (bear/Alexander Cher), (bird/Dennis Jacobsen), (horse/mariat), (sheep/Aaron Amat), (pg/photomaster), (dog/Dora Zett), (cat/Timmar), (mouse/Eric Isselee), (fly, bee/irin-k), 89 (painting/Olena Yakobchuck), (timetable/PR Image Factory), (family/Iakov Filimonov), (cinema/Nikolay Antonov), (holding up hands/fizes), 90 (fighting/Anton Watman), (phone call/WAYHOME Studio), (waking up/YAKOBCHUK VIACHESLAV), (smelling rose/Arthir Premprayot), (asleep/Golubov), (smiling/Antonio Guillem), 92 (butter/jakf ffm), (cheese/Hong Vo), (eggs/nechaevkon), (sugar/Kasabatskaya Nataliya), (cake slice/ninikas), (cake/Brittney), (jam/Alter-ego), (biscuits/TairA), (olive oil/Agorohov), (olives/Africa Studio), (rice/RVillalon), (spaghetti/jamakosy), (chocolate/etorres), 93 (grocers/Iakov Filimonov), (butchers/Minerva Studio), (bag/Pitchayarat Chootai), 94 (banana/vandycan), (orange/Valentyn Volkov), (peach/Svetlana Serebryakova), (pear/Ines Behrens-Kunkel), (lemon/Valery121283), (strawberry/Maks Narodenko), (nuts/Svetlana Verbitckaia), 95 (potato/grey_and), (beans/ConstantinosZ), (onion/Lubava), (carrot/VictoriaKH), (peas/AmyLv), (cabbage/jamakosy), (mushroom/bergamot), (garlic/Artem Kutsenko), (lettuce/Gavran333), (tomato/Tim UR), (red pepper/SOMMAL), (peas/Africa Studio), (cooked peas/stevemart), 96 (sheep/Aaron Amat), (lamb/Tanya Sid), (chicken/Olhastock), (duck/Aksenova Natalya), (pig/Tskhmister), (chicken/JIANG HONGYAN), (duck/bonchan), (pork/Mirek Kijewski), (ham/sripfoto), (bacon/Richard Griffin), (sausages/kzww), (salmon/TheFarAwayKingdom), (tuna/picturepartners), (squid/demarco), (prawns/aperturesound), (crab/LAURA_VN), 99 (waiter/Iakov Filimonov), 100 (coffee/Photoongraphy), (black coffee/amenic181), (tea/Pavol Lys), (hot chocolate/Lilya Kandrashovich), (orange juice/etclassen), (cola/StudioBy The Sea), (sandwich/gowithstock), (brown bread/Richard M Lee), (toasted sandwich/Drozhhina Elena), (roll/Ninetechno), (crisps/Mettus), (cakes/V_L), 102 (car/Rawpixel.com), (us/Sanit Fuangnakorn), (coach/Mikbiz), (van/TeamDaf), (lorry/Sunday Stock), (motorbike/Dimitris Leonidas), (taxi/maradon 333), (underground/MirasWonderland), 105 (information/SHASAKPRACHUM), 107 (pointing/tofumax), 108 (directions/Haalen Haagen), 110 (closed sign/AOFTO), (toilets/Thas Pol Sangsee), (exit/Piotr Zajda), (sale/Sundry Photography), (no smoking/Lester Balajadia), (keep left/Focus Dsign), (no dogs/Britain), (out of order/Junpinzon), (no exit/Eddie H S Cho), (no parking/Mike Kuhlman), (do not feed/Richard Johnson), (no vacancies/Chiyat), (danger/AC Rider), (entrance/Stripped Pixel), (queue/imrankadir), (mind the gap/Joseph Maguire), (keep off the grass/emattil), 112 (castle/Daniela Miglionisi), (palace/Fulcanelli) (church/Caron Badkin), (museum/Anton Ivanov), (art gallery/Sofia Voronkova), (market/Epel), (park/EarthScape ImageGraphy), (library/Ermolaev Alexander), (tower/prasit jmkajomkaiat), (square/PHOTOCREO Michael Bednarek), (bridge/Carlos Bruzos Valin), 129 (chemistry/Picel-Shot), (physics/Science Photo), (biology/New Africa), (maths/Billion Photos), (computer science/Aleksey Khilko), (geography/TonelloPhotography), (languages/Aysezgicmel), (exercise/Summersky), (design and technology/RomanR), 130 (uniform/Rawpixel.com), 131, 132 (man/AJR_Photo), 133 (doctor/Monkey Business Images), (plans/asobov), (hard hat/Nattanan Zia), (scales of justice/Billion Photos), (newspaper/DONOT6_Studio), (computer/Staniisic Vladimir), (businessman/michaeljung), 134 (police/betto Rodrigues), (business people/gigsy25), (dentist/djrando), (model/FashionStock.com), (shop assistant/Lstock Studio), (nurse/Monkey Business Images), (fashion designer/Nenad Aksic), (soldier/Misha Belly), (pilot/Angelo Giampiccolo), (builder/ALPA PROD), (teacher/Asia Images Group), (chef/Webreak Media), (cleaner/RossHelen), (lorry driver/Kzenon), (hairstresser/Iakov Filimonov), 136 (secretary/Dragon Images), (office/Africa Studio), (factory/You Touch Pix of Eu Toch), (hospital/Tyler Olsen), 138 (intervention/Blue Planet Studio), 140 (computer screen/Russian Ivantsov), (keyboard/On_Ter), (mouse/AG-Photos), (printer/cigdem), (laptop/Sergey Peterman), (tablet/Umberto Shtanzman), (computer programme/Morrowind), (drop down menu/Semenchenko), 144 (mobile phone/Ellica), (phone charger/2Ban), 147 (sightseeing/Rosshelen), (tent/Alexlukin), (painting/Syda Productions), 150 (bathroom/Artazum), (dining room/roakoma), (bus stop/den-arcticman), (DJ/FabrikaSimf), (railway station/CapuletBK), (art gallery/Anton Ivanov), (address book/Photology1972), (dishwasher/Leszek Glasner), 151 (phone/jeka), 153 (man/Africa Studio), (two people/Rommel Canlas), 154 (tent/Alexlukin), (fishing rod/Rvector), (weights/Valeriy Ivashchenko), (guitar/Andrej Valadzenkou), (golf clubs/Sean Locke Photography), (computer game/Gorodnoff), (suitcase/omnimoney), (sketch pad/Nastya Sokolova), (cooking/Creativa Images), (stamp alb/279Photo Studio), (friends/Monkey Business Images), (DVDs/Ingrid Balabanova), 155 (ballet/Flamingo Images) 156 (goalkeeper/FOTOKITA), (baseball/zsolt_uveges), (basketball/Fabrizio Andrea Bertani), (swimming/Jef2499), (American football/Brocreeative), (tennis/Q Stock), (table tennis/Stefan), (ice hockey/Sergey Mironov), (running/EverenKalinbakac), (motor racing/Ev.Safronov), (skiing/Andrey Nikulin), (football/Herbert Kraty), 158 (orchestra/Ferenc Szelepcsényi), 158 (Lang Lang/Maria Laura Antonelli/AGF), 159 (CD/Arkadi Bulva), 160 (love story/Bogoljub), (horror/Studio Canal), 161 (movie poster/Universal Pictures), 164 (reading/Motortion Films), 166 (passport/Ray Morgan), 167 (double room/Nasimi Bahev), (single room/Ruslana Maskenskaia), 168 (hotel/alexkatov), 169 (key card/Pressmaster), (key/Zelikjo Radojko), 170 (ticket machine/illpazphotomatic), (check in desk/Tyler Olsen), 171 (businessman/Maridav), (seat belt/newsfoto), (flight attendant/Sorbis), (plane/tzuky333), (passport official/FrameStockFootages), (carousel/fizes), 173 (taking photos/Stokkete), 179 (teacher/Dean Drobot), 180 Dean Drobot, 184 (wedding/Olya64), (Sonya/ProStockStudio), 188 (café/pickingpok), 191 (taking off jacket/Cecilia Tomio), (light switch/Svetlana Cherkasova), (putting on shoes/BOKEH STOCK).

All illustrations by: CCS Digital Education.

Contents

List of spotlight boxes	6
Acknowledgements	7
Introduction	8

LEARNING ENGLISH

1 Classroom vocabulary	12
2 Grammar words	13
3 Using this book	14
4 Learning new words	16
5 Classroom activities	18

NUMBERS AND TIME

6 Numbers	20
7 Telling the time	22
8 Days, seasons and dates	24
9 Time words and phrases	26

PEOPLE

10 Parts of the body	28
11 Describing people	30
12 Physical actions	32
13 Personal information	34
14 Family	36
15 Personality	38
16 Relationships	40
17 Feelings	42

LANGUAGE SECTION 1 prepositions

18 Prepositions: time	44
19 Prepositions: direction	45
20 Prepositions: place	46
21 Prepositions: phrases	48
22 Word + preposition	50

EVERYDAY LIFE

23 Routines	52
24 Clothes	54
25 Accessories	56
26 Colours, size and appearance	58
27 Money	60
28 Shopping	62
29 Possessions	64
30 Crime	66
31 Illness	68
32 Injuries	70

THE WORLD AROUND US

33 Geography	71
34 The environment	72
35 Countries and nationalities	74
36 My country	76
37 Weather	78
38 Animals, insects and birds	80

LANGUAGE SECTION 2 verbs

39 Irregular verbs	82
40 <i>have got</i> and <i>have</i>	84
41 <i>make</i> or <i>do</i>	86
42 <i>get</i>	88
43 <i>see</i>	89
44 Verbs and nouns with the same form	90

Contents

FOOD AND DRINK

45 Shopping for food	92
46 Fruit and vegetables	94
47 Meat and fish	96
48 A restaurant table	97
49 Eating in a restaurant	98
50 In a café	100

GETTING AROUND

51 Vehicles and roads	102
52 Buses	104
53 Trains	106
54 Directions	108
55 Signs and notices	110

PLACES

56 My town	112
57 The countryside	114
58 Home	116
59 Kitchen	118
60 Bedroom and bathroom	120
61 Living room	122

LANGUAGE SECTION 3 adjectives and adverbs

62 Adjectives with prefixes	123
63 Adjective opposites	124
64 Common adverbs	126
65 Adverbs of manner	128

STUDY AND WORK

66 School subjects	129
67 The education system	130
68 University	132
69 Jobs	134
70 Describing jobs	136
71 Job interview	138
72 First day at work	139

TECHNOLOGY

73 Computers	140
74 Email, letters and the internet	142
75 Phoning	144

LANGUAGE SECTION 4 building words

76 -er / -or / -r nouns	146
77 -ing forms	147
78 Noun suffixes	148
79 Compound nouns	150

HOBBIES AND INTERESTS

80 Likes and dislikes	152
81 Free time	154
82 Sport	156
83 Music	158
84 Films	160
85 The media	162
86 Books	164

HOLIDAYS

87 Arranging a holiday	166
88 Hotels	168
89 Airports	170
90 Types of holiday	172

SOCIAL ENGLISH

91 Meet and greet	174
92 Ask for information	176
93 Requests and permission	178
94 Invitations and suggestions	180
95 Offers and saying sorry	182
96 Probably or possibly	184

LANGUAGE SECTION 5 link words and phrasal verbs

97 Link words 1	186
98 Link words 2	188
99 Phrasal verbs	190
100 Common expressions	192
Vocabulary building	194
Common irregular verbs	198
Answer key	200
A1 Oxford 3000 words which aren't keywords	235
Word list	236
Abbreviations used in the book	256

Spotlight boxes

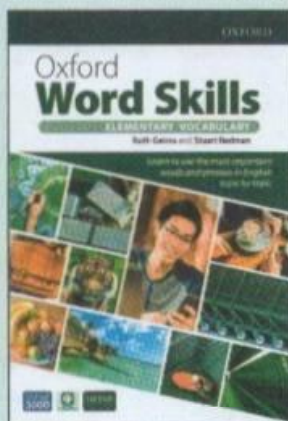
Title	Unit	Page	Title	Unit	Page
<i>a lot (of) and a bit (of)</i>	37	78	<i>have + noun</i>	60	121
<i>about and around</i>	6	20	<i>have got and have</i>	40	84
<i>adverbs of frequency</i>	23	53	<i>have to + verb</i>	88	169
<i>adverbs of manner</i>	65	128	<i>How long does it last?</i>	68	132
<i>airports</i>	89	170	<i>How long does it take?</i>	52	104
<i>allow and let</i>	55	110	<i>how much and how many?</i>	45	93
<i>amounts of money</i>	27	60	<i>hundreds, thousands, millions</i>	6	21
<i>another and some more</i>	49	99	<i>(I'm) sorry</i>	95	183
<i>at</i>	18	44	<i>I think so / I hope so</i>	96	184
<i>at first and in the end</i>	21	48	<i>information</i>	13	34
<i>at university, in hospital, etc.</i>	21	49	<i>injuries</i>	32	70
<i>be good at sth</i>	66	129	<i>introductions</i>	91	174
<i>be ill and sick</i>	31	68	<i>irregular verbs</i>	12	32
<i>being polite</i>	93	178	<i>irregular verbs</i>	82	157
<i>book/reserve sth</i>	53	107	<i>keep</i>	73	140
<i>boring/bored, interesting/interested, etc.</i>	80	153	<i>last</i>	53	106
<i>both</i>	38	80	<i>lend and borrow</i>	93	179
<i>by</i>	83	158	<i>love/like/hate + -ing</i>	80	152
<i>café, bar, pub</i>	50	100	<i>meet and meeting</i>	70	137
<i>capital letters</i>	8	24	<i>menus</i>	49	98
<i>centre and card</i>	79	151	<i>might + verb</i>	87	166
<i>comparatives and superlatives</i>	14	37	<i>minutes to or past</i>	7	22
<i>either ... or ...</i>	67	130	<i>noun + shop</i>	28	62
<i>else</i>	100	193	<i>order of adjectives</i>	26	58
<i>employ</i>	69	134	<i>people from a country</i>	35	74
<i>ever</i>	39	82	<i>please and thanks</i>	50	101
<i>exams</i>	67	131	<i>plural forms of nouns</i>	48	97
<i>feelings and emotions</i>	17	43	<i>plural nouns and pairs</i>	25	56
<i>flat, house, home</i>	58	117	<i>position of adjectives</i>	63	124
<i>for and since</i>	9	27	<i>preposition + -ing form</i>	22	50
<i>friend</i>	16	41	<i>quite</i>	11	30
<i>get</i>	42	89	<i>really</i>	15	39
<i>good-looking, beautiful, etc.</i>	11	31	<i>record sth and a record</i>	83	159
<i>happen and take place</i>	30	66	<i>relationship</i>	16	40

Title	Unit	Page
salad	46	95
saying and writing dates and years	8	25
saying email addresses	74	142
saying phone numbers	75	144
saying what you eat	47	96
see and watch	43	89
see you	91	175
should + verb	31	69
so and such	72	139
somewhere, anywhere,	33	71
nowhere, everywhere		
still	97	187
suffix -ion	78	148
suffix -ment	78	149
teacher, lecturer, professor	68	133
thing(s)	4	16
think about and think of	22	51
too and very	26	59
trouble	86	164
turn sth on/off	59	118
uncountable nouns	45	92
-in, -im, -ir, -un	62	123
used to + verb	90	172
verbs used with vehicles	51	102
verbs with games and sport	82	156
watch, see, listen, hear	85	162
What kind/type/sort of ...?	84	160
What's he/she/it like?	15	38
which or what?	92	177
whose and belong to someone	92	176
word building	5	18

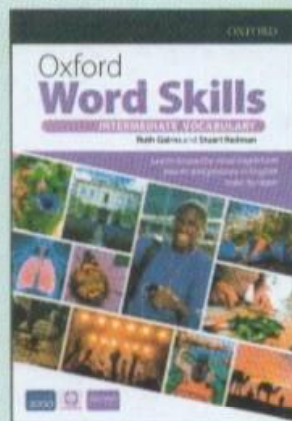
Introduction

What is *Oxford Word Skills*?

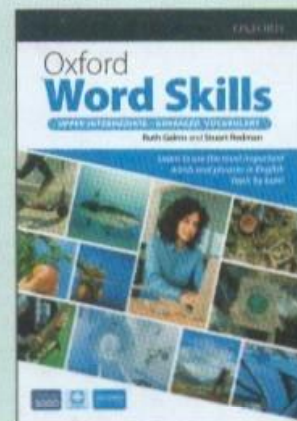
Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn and practise new vocabulary.



Level 1:
elementary/pre-intermediate
(CEFR levels A1 and A2)



Level 2:
intermediate (CEFR level B1)



Level 3:
upper-intermediate/advanced
(CEFR levels B2 and C1)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.


How are the books organized?

Each level contains 100 units of vocabulary presentation and practice, with a unit being 1–2 pages, depending on the size of the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable chunks, then immediately followed up with practice exercises, usually on the same page.

The units are grouped within modules containing 3–10 units. A majority of the modules are topic-based, e.g. People, Food and drink, Study and work, but some modules have a language focus, e.g. Prepositions, Adjectives and adverbs, Verbs.

The Elementary level also contains:

- a list of all the 'spotlight' boxes
- a list of word-building tables
- a list of irregular verbs
- an answer key for all the exercises
- Word list – an index of all the vocabulary taught with a unit reference to where the item appears

Oxford Word Skills is directly linked to the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* app, which allows learners to find the meaning of new words in English and provides a pronunciation model for the words. You will find pronunciation exercises throughout the book which refer you to the  to check the correct pronunciation.

What vocabulary is included?

At Elementary level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. clothes, free time, at the airport
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. inviting people, meeting and greeting
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prepositions, verbs, adjectives and adverbs

Throughout the three levels the main focus is on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, although the higher levels increasingly add more language from different styles of English as well as more figurative use of language.

The selection of vocabulary at each level is based on frequency and usefulness, with the foundation being the Oxford 3000™. This is a list of 3000 words identified by the Oxford University Press ELT Dictionaries team as the most important words for learners of English.

**Oxford
3000**


**Oxford
5000**


These items have been divided into four levels in accordance with the CEFR levels (A1, A2, B1 and B2).

- The Elementary level includes many items from A1, but with the majority of items at A2 level.
- The Intermediate level has a focus on B1 items from the Oxford 3000, as well as recycling some items from the A2 level.
- The Upper-Intermediate/Advanced level concentrates on B2 items from the Oxford 3000, but also includes B2 and C1 items from the enlarged Oxford 5000™ word list.

The Oxford 3000 word list is supplemented by the Oxford Phrase List™, containing just under 1,000 phrases considered important for students at these levels; and topic lists from OUP's learner's dictionaries, which identify key vocabulary items across a range of 60 topics. By using the Oxford 3000 alongside the topic lists, we are able to focus on high-frequency vocabulary, but also to include vocabulary items that may not have a high frequency overall, but will have great value in particular contexts, e.g. *main course* in a restaurant, or *hand luggage* at an airport. By using the Oxford Phrase List, we are also able to ensure the best coverage of both words and phrases at each level.

We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* for information on other meanings.

In the Elementary level, there is also a list at the back of the book of all the A1 items from the Oxford 3000 that have not been taught. The reason for this is that the Elementary level makes some assumptions about very high frequency level items which learners should already be familiar with. If there are words here that students do not know, they can go to the  to check the meaning and pronunciation.

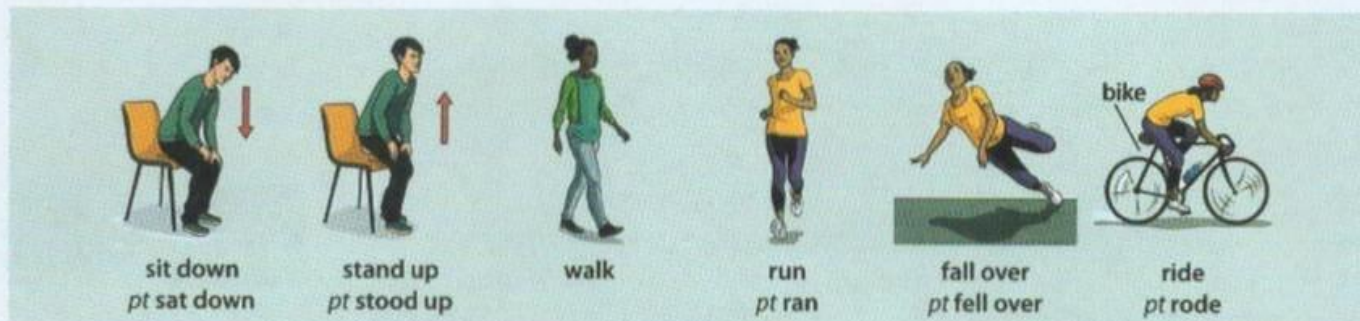
Key words are sometimes repeated in later units in the book, but may not be highlighted in bold. If students do not recognize the word, they should look in the Word List to see where the item was introduced and defined, or use the . Such recycling is useful for learners.

To the teacher

How can I use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through:

- photographs and illustrations



- tables

on	a day	a date
	on Tuesday	on September 10
	on Friday evening	on 6 th May
	on Tuesdays = every Tuesday	
	on my birthday on Christmas Day	

- different types of text

B Friends

WHY WE LIKE each other

Sophie: I **get on very well with** Gemma – she's great. I don't know why, because we've got

GLOSSARY

each other She likes me and I like her.
= We like **each other**.

get on (well) with sb have a good relationship with sb

personality what a person is like that makes them different from other people

meet pt met 1 see and speak to sb for the first time
2 go to a place and wait for sb:
*We're **meeting** them at 7.30.*

become begin to be sth: **become friends/ flatmates**

flatmate a person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship

advice [U] an opinion or information that you give to help sb with a problem
give (sb) advice

see sb talk to or visit sb

Visuals obviously provide a clear guide to meaning; the tables and texts show words being used in natural sentences, with the meaning explained in a glossary (within a table or beside a text). As the input in most sections occupies a page and does not usually exceed 15 items, it is very straightforward to use in the classroom. Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the visuals or written text in the presentation for at least ten minutes. This allows time for them to reinforce the connection between the visual input and the meanings, or to read through the glossary carefully to check the meaning of the new items in the presentation sentences, dialogue or extended text. Tell students to look at the extra words included in the **glossary** (opposites, synonyms, derivatives, collocations and further examples) as this will help them to expand their vocabulary with minimal effort in many cases. It is also important to look at the **spotlight** boxes. This is an additional feature which picks out an item or items of particular value, for example, these spotlights on *else* and on the difference between *flat*, *house* and *home*:

SPOTLIGHT *else*

You can use **else** to mean 'different' after words like **everyone**, **somewhere** and **nothing**.

- I didn't like it, but **everyone else** did. (= all the other people)
- The restaurant was full so we went **somewhere else**. (= to another place)
- We had bread because there was **nothing else** to eat. (= no other thing)


SPOTLIGHT *flat, house, home*

A **flat** is a number of rooms on one floor of a building.

SYN **apartment**

A **house** is a building that is made for people to live in. It can have more than one floor.

Home is where you live (in a flat or a house).

- While students are working through the presentation, you can answer any questions they may have about the items. This is also an opportunity to provide a pronunciation model for your students to repeat; otherwise the presentation stage is going to be a long silent phase. You might want to read a text aloud, or get students to read sections of it, etc.
- Students can move on to the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the Answer Key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class. This is probably a better approach as you can also discuss why they might have arrived at a wrong answer and focus on / practise pronunciation. It is sensible to work through the exercises chronologically as they tend to progress from receptive practice to controlled productive practice, and then quite often to freer productive practice in the ABOUT YOU / ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY activities.
- When you are satisfied with their answers to the first exercise, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary. When they have finished an exercise, you will find that many of them – sentence completion and particularly dialogue completion – lend themselves to controlled speaking practice. Students can practise dialogues in pairs or take it in turns to read out complete sentences to each other.
- Students should look out for the  **TEST YOURSELF** icons in each unit. When they have completed the written exercises, students can test themselves on the new vocabulary. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new words beneath a picture (using a book, notebook or piece of paper) while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises. It is also useful to demonstrate this so that students can revise vocabulary in their own time using this 'cover and check' approach.
- You will often notice the headings **ABOUT YOU** or **ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY**. These are personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary in a freer way, and within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pairwork activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the Answer Key, possible answers for these activities are provided by both native speakers and proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world. This may be of particular value to a self-study learner, as a way of comparing answers.

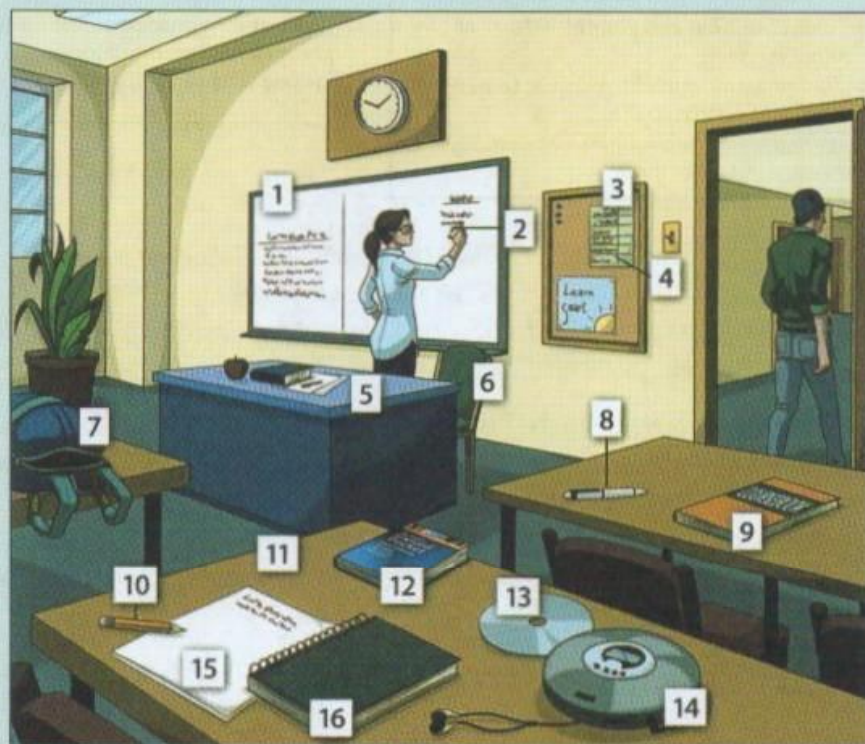


TEST YOURSELF How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If you want your learners to use the material for self-study, you can recommend that they use the book alongside the app, as it gives them a pronunciation model for items of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. For self-study learners in particular, it is also a good idea to start with the first module, which will help them use the book more effectively. Self-study learners can check their answers to exercises using the Answer Key, and test themselves using the 'cover and check' procedure explained above. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge. In addition, they have the opportunity with this book to test themselves, as explained above.

1 Classroom vocabulary

- 1 whiteboard (ALSO board)
- 2 board pen
- 3 noticeboard
- 4 notice
- 5 desk
- 6 chair
- 7 bag
- 8 pen
- 9 coursebook
- 10 pencil
- 11 table
- 12 dictionary
- 13 CD
- 14 CD player
- 15 piece of paper
- 16 exercise book / notebook



1 Tick (✓) the things you can put in a bag. Put a cross (X) by the things you can't.

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| ▶ pen <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 2 desk <input type="checkbox"/> | 5 table <input type="checkbox"/> | 8 noticeboard <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ▶ board <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 3 notice <input type="checkbox"/> | 6 coursebook <input type="checkbox"/> | 9 dictionary <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 1 pencil <input type="checkbox"/> | 4 CD player <input type="checkbox"/> | 7 chair <input type="checkbox"/> | 10 piece of paper <input type="checkbox"/> |

2 Complete the words or phrases.

- | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|
| ▶ notebook | | |
| 1 board | 3 notice | 5 piece of |
| 2 course | 4 exercise | 6 CD |

3 Write your answers.

- ▶ You sit on one of these. a chair
- 1 The teacher writes on this. _____
 - 2 You find the meaning of words in this. _____
 - 3 You sit behind one of these. _____
 - 4 You write in one of these. _____
 - 5 The teacher puts information on this. _____
 - 6 The teacher can play one of these. _____
 - 7 You can put your books in this. _____
 - 8 You study from one of these. _____

4 ABOUT YOU Write four things you've got at home, and four things you haven't got.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| ▶ I've got <u>a dictionary</u> | ▶ I haven't got <u>a CD player</u> |
| _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ |



TEST YOURSELF

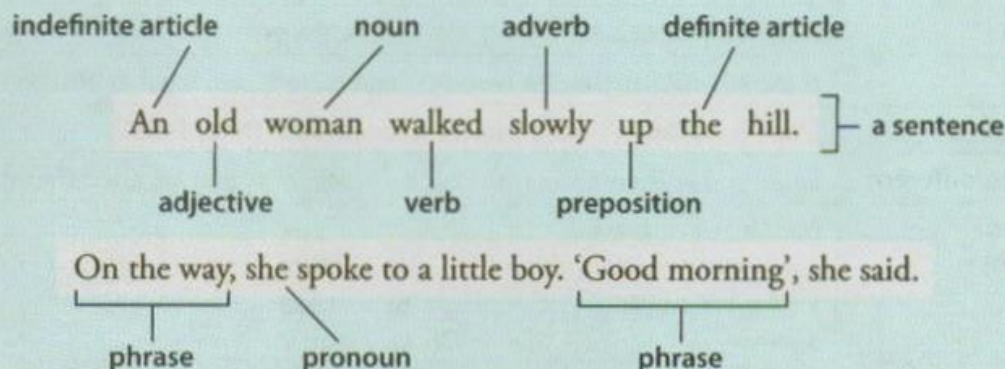
2 Grammar words

Read this short text.

An old woman walked slowly up the hill.
On the way, she spoke to a little boy.
'Good morning', she said.

- There are eight **words** in the first **sentence**.
- *Walk* is a **regular** verb. The **past simple** is *walked*.
- *Speak* is an **irregular** verb. The past simple is *spoke*, and the **past participle** is *spoken*.
(The past participle is used to form the present perfect: *Have you spoken to the doctor today?*)

Look at the different parts of speech.



1 Circle the correct answer.

► A and the are *adjectives* / articles

1 A and an are *definite* / *indefinite* articles.

2 Woman is a *noun* / *adjective*.

3 Up is a *preposition* / *pronoun*.

4 Have is a *regular* / *an irregular* verb.

5 He and she are *nouns* / *pronouns*.

6 Go and do are *verbs* / *nouns*.

7 Badly and happily are *adverbs* / *adjectives*.

8 Gone is the *past simple* / *past participle* of the verb go.

2 Find the answers for each sentence.

I have an English lesson now.	► a verb <u>have</u>	2 an indefinite article _____
	1 a pronoun _____	3 a noun _____
There's a young man from Rome in the class.	4 an adjective _____	6 an indefinite article _____
	5 a preposition _____	
This morning, he asked a question, and he spoke very quietly.	7 an adverb _____	9 a regular past simple _____
	8 an irregular past simple _____	10 a phrase _____
I think he's in the wrong class.	11 a noun _____	14 a pronoun _____
	12 a verb _____	15 a sentence _____
	13 an adjective _____	

3 What are the parts of speech for the other words in the text at the top of the page?

- hill noun
- 1 on _____
- 2 the _____
- 3 way _____
- 4 spoke _____
- 5 to _____


- 6 a _____
- 7 little _____
- 8 boy _____
- 9 she _____
- 10 said _____



TEST YOURSELF

3 Using this book

Learn these words. You need to understand them to do the exercises.

tick	✓ (= yes OR correct)				
underline	<u>word</u>				
cross out	word				
circle	(word)				
complete	I <u>like</u> ice cream.				
correct/wrong	2 + 2 = 4 is correct (ALSO right). 2 + 2 = 5 is wrong .				
mistake	If sth is a mistake , it's wrong. e.g. <i>English</i> . SYN error				
correct	make sth right, e.g. <i>English</i> (wrong), <i>English</i> (right); tell sb what mistakes they are making				
true/false	'Paris is in France.' That's true . 'Paris is in Italy.' That's false .				
the same/different	<i>Small</i> and <i>little</i> are the same (<i>small</i> = <i>little</i>). <i>Small</i> and <i>big</i> are different .				
match sth (with sth)	Match 1-3 with a-c. <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="margin-right: 20px;"> 1 I come from 2 I speak a little 3 I'm </div> <div> a) English b) married c) Japan ✓ </div> </div>				
missing	If sth is missing , it is not there. e.g. He comes <i>Tokyo</i> . (The word <i>from</i> is missing .) He comes <u>from</u> Tokyo.				
cover	put one thing over another thing 				
test sb OR yourself	If you test yourself , you ask yourself questions to find what you know and understand, e.g. <i>When I test myself on English verbs, I look at the verb, then say the meaning in my language.</i>				
table	This is a table: <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Question</th><th>Answer</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>What does <i>awful</i> mean? NOT What means 'awful'?</td><td>I don't know. OR It means 'terrible'.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Question	Answer	What does <i>awful</i> mean? NOT What means 'awful'?	I don't know. OR It means 'terrible'.
Question	Answer				
What does <i>awful</i> mean? NOT What means 'awful'?	I don't know. OR It means 'terrible'.				
column	The table above has got two columns : one for questions and one for answers.				
put sth in order	put things in the right place or position: <i>Put these words in order to make a sentence.</i> <i>bed / I / early / to / went</i> <u>I went to bed early.</u>				

Short forms and symbols

- TV is a **short form** of *television*.
- A **symbol** is a sign or picture with a special meaning. e.g. = is a symbol that means **equals** OR is the same as: 2 + 2 = 4.

e.g.	is short for for example : <i>fruit, e.g. apples and bananas.</i>
OPP	is short for opposite : <i>Big is the opposite of small.</i>
SYN	is short for synonym (= a word that means the same as another): <i>small SYN little.</i>
etc.	You use etc. at the end of a list to show there are more things, but you don't want to say them all: <i>We bought apples, oranges, bananas, etc.</i> We can say etc. as 'etcetera' or and so on .
inf	means informal . If a word is informal , you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know well, but not in serious writing or important letters. OPP formal
sth	is a short form of something .
sb	is a short form of somebody/someone .

1 Read the sentences and write your answers.

- Put a tick at the end of this sentence. ✓
- Underline the third word in this sentence.
 - Circle the first word in this sentence.
 - Cross out the last word in this sentence.
 - What's the opposite of *big*?
 - What's a synonym for *fantastic*?
 - Correct the mistake in this sentence.
 - What's a more informal word for *thank you*?
 - Is it *true* or *false* that London is in Scotland?
 - What word is missing in this sentence?
 - Is eight thirty the same as half past eight?
 - Fourteen and twenty-seven is forty-three. Is that right or wrong?
 - Complete the next sentence. *Where* *you live?* ~ I live near the park.

2 Match the opposites.

- formal c
- the same
 - correct
 - true
 - synonym
- a wrong
b opposite
c informal ✓
d different
e false

3 What do these short forms and symbols mean? Write your answers.

- **OPP** opposite
- e.g.
 - ✓
 - inf
 - SYN**
 - =
 - etc.

4 Complete the sentences.

- Do days of the week have a capital letter? Yes, that's correct/right.
- You use at the end of a list to show that there are other things but you are not going to say them all.
 - What word is in the next sentence? *I went bed early.*
 - If you put something in, you put it in the correct place or position.
 - 12 and 12 is 26, isn't it? No, that's
 - = is a, and it means 'equals' or 'is'
 - I make lots of when I speak, but my teacher usually me.
 - After each page, I always myself on all the new words. I often look at the words, the meanings, and then try to remember and say the meanings.
 - US is a of the United States of America.
 - In this exercise, you have to *a* to *e* with *1* to *5*.
 - Hi* is a more way of saying *hello*.
 - San Francisco is the capital of America. True or?
 - is a synonym for *mistake*.
 - How many has this table got? ~ Three.

Word	Synonym	Example
family name	surname	Rodriguez
first name(s)	forename(s)	Maria Helena

- We have to the correct answer, e.g. I looked at/in the board.
- We have to the wrong answer, e.g. I looked at in the board.



TEST YOURSELF

4 Learning new words

A How to learn words

Here are some **things** to **help** you when you are learning new words:

- Repeat words **out loud** two or three times to practise the **pronunciation**.
- **Write down** new words in a **notebook**. It's important to **keep a record** of them because it will help you to remember them.
- Write the **meaning** in English or your own language.
- Write an example sentence with the new word. This helps you to understand how to **use** the new word.
- Think of **situations** where you can use this word, and perhaps write them down.

GLOSSARY

help	do sth good for sb; make their life easier
out loud	so that other people can hear it
pronunciation	how to say a word pronounce v
write sth down	write sth on paper so you can remember it
notebook	a book that you can write in
record	notes of things that have happened, e.g. a record of money that you have spent keep a record (of sth)
meaning	The meaning of <i>small</i> is 'little'.
use	do a job with sth: <i>I use a key to open my door.</i>
situation	things that are happening at a certain time or in a certain place: <i>I was in a difficult situation at work today because my computer wasn't working.</i>

SPOTLIGHT *thing(s)*

We often use **thing(s)** to talk about an idea or a subject. It means we don't need to find the exact name for something.

- *We talked about lots of **things**.*
- *Art is the **thing** that interests me most.*

1 Complete the dialogues with one word.

- What's this word?
- 1 Was the homework easy? ~ *Beige*, but I don't know the correct **pronunciation**.
- 2 Did the others hear you? ~ No, it wasn't, but my father _____ me.
- 3 How do you know you've read that book? ~ Yes, I said his name out _____.
- 4 How did you remember her phone number? ~ Because I keep a _____.
- 5 Do you know the meaning of **awful**? ~ I wrote it _____.
- 6 I've broken my mother's favourite cup. I don't know what to say to her. ~ Yes, but I don't know how to _____ it.
- 7 Have you got a new computer? ~ What a difficult _____!
- 8 Did you talk about the holiday? ~ Yes, but I don't know how to _____ it yet.
- ~ Yes, and lots of other _____.

2 Complete the sentences. First, cover the text at the top of the page.

- Here are some ► **things** _____ to help you when you are learning new words.
- 1 Repeat words _____ two or three times to practise the pronunciation.
- 2 Write down new words in a _____. It's important to _____ a record of them.
- 3 Write the _____ in English or your own language.
- 4 If you write an example sentence, it helps you to remember how to _____ a new word.
- 5 Think of _____ where you can use this word.

3 Answer the questions.

- Why do you do lots of different things when you are learning new words?
To help you to understand and remember them.

- 1 Why do you repeat words out loud? _____
- 2 Where can you write down new words? _____
- 3 Why is it important to do that? _____
- 4 How can you write the meaning? _____
- 5 Why do you write an example sentence? _____
- 6 What can you do after that? _____



TEST YOURSELF



B Questions about words

Question	Answer
What does <i>awful</i> mean? (NOT <i>What means awful?</i>)	I don't know. OR It means 'terrible'.
What's this called in English? How do you say <i>fil</i> in English?	I can't remember. OR It's a spoon. <i>Son</i> . OR <i>Fils</i> is French for <i>son</i> .
Could you explain 'No vacancies'? (NOT <i>Could you explain me...?</i>)	Yes. You see it in a hotel window. It means the hotel is full. There are no free rooms.
What's the difference between <i>hello</i> and <i>hi</i> ?	The meaning is the same, but <i>hi</i> is informal.
What's the opposite of <i>big</i> ?	Small.
How do you pronounce <i>tie</i> ?	It's like <i>my</i> .
<i>Eight</i> is pronounced like <i>night</i> . Is that right/correct?	No, that's wrong. OR That's not right. It's pronounced like <i>wait</i> .
How do you spell <i>apple</i> ? I'm not sure. (Is it one 'p' or two?)	It's A-double P-L-E. (double P = two Ps)

4 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- | | | |
|--|-------|---|
| ► How do you <i>spell</i> your name? | c | a Very small. |
| 1 How do you say <i>cup</i> in German? | ..... | b It's what you say when you meet a friend. |
| 2 What's the opposite of <i>closed</i>? | ..... | c A-double N-A. ✓ |
| 3 What does <i>tiny</i> mean? | ..... | d It's like <i>wait</i> . |
| 4 How do you pronounce <i>weight</i>? | ..... | e No, they don't. That's wrong. |
| 5 Could you explain <i>hello</i>? | ..... | f I don't know. I only speak French. |
| 6 <i>Come</i> and <i>go</i> mean the same thing. | ..... | g Open. |

5 Complete the dialogues.

- What does *awful* mean ? ~ Terrible.
- 1 What's this in English? ~ It's a frying pan. 
- 2 How do you pronounce *what*? ~ It's hot. 
- 3 you spell *eye*? ~ I'm not sure. I think it's E-Y-E.
- 4 What's the difference *bye* and *goodbye*? ~ *Bye* is more informal.
- 5 *Pen* is the same as *pencil*. Is that right? ~ No, that's
- 6 What's the of *interesting*? ~ Boring.
- 7 What *enormous* mean? ~ It means 'very big'.
- 8 Could you *EXIT*? ~ You see it on a door. It means you can go out there.

6 Write a question using each word.

- pronounce How do you pronounce *vegetable*?
- | | | | |
|---------------|---|------------------|---|
| 1 mean | ? | 4 explain | ? |
| 2 spell | ? | 5 opposite | ? |
| 3 say | ? | 6 called | ? |



TEST YOURSELF

5 Classroom activities

A Teacher instructions

OK, repeat after me.

When you finish, **compare** your answers **with** a partner.

I want you to write a **description** of someone you know.

Please **pay attention**.

Practise new words every day.

I'd like you to **make up** a story.

Listen to the conversation. Then answer the questions.

Listen, then **follow the instructions** in the book.

If you don't know the meaning, try to **guess**.

And don't **forget** to **do the homework**.

GLOSSARY

repeat	say or do sth again
compare sth (with sth)	think about things or people to see how they are different
description	words that tell what sb or sth is like or what happened describe v
pay attention	look or listen carefully
practise	do sth many times so that you do it well practice n
make sth up	say sth that is not true SYN invent
instructions	words that tell you what you must do or how to do sth. You follow (the) instructions .
guess	give an answer when you do not know if it is right guess n SYN have a guess
forget	If you forget to do sth, you don't remember to do it.
homework	work that a teacher gives you to do at home: <i>I'm doing my homework. (NOT I'm making my homework.)</i>

SPOTLIGHT word building

Many nouns in English are formed from verbs, and **-(t)ion** is a common noun ending:

▪ **instruct** (verb) → **instruction** (noun)

There is often a spelling change:

▪ **describe** → **description**

▪ **explain** → **explanation**

▪ **educate** → **education**

1 Match 1-8 with a-i.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| ▶ repeat it <u>c</u> | a talk to another student about it |
| 1 make something up | b listen carefully |
| 2 follow the instructions | c say it again ✓ |
| 3 pay attention | d do it a few more times |
| 4 I forget. | e invent something |
| 5 compare with another student | f say what it's like |
| 6 describe it | g If you don't know, just think of an answer. |
| 7 practise it | h I don't remember. |
| 8 have a guess | i do what it tells you |

2 Complete the table. If you don't know the answer, have a guess.

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
▶ discuss	<u>discussion</u>	instruct	.....
explain	.....	invent	.....
describe	.....	practise	.....
guess	.....	educate	.....

3 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Were you listening? ~ No, the teacher told me to pay attention.
- 1 Can you say that again, please? ~ Yes, I'll it.
- 2 Did you remember your? ~ No, I'm afraid I forgot to do it.
- 3 Did you know the answer? ~ No, but I had a
- 4 How can I get better? ~ You have to more.
- 5 How do you know they're different? ~ We them.
- 6 Did you the homework? ~ No, I it. I'm sorry.
- 7 Did you invent that story? ~ Yes, I it.
- 8 Did you write a description? ~ No, I just it to her.



TEST YOURSELF

B Student activities

Here are **activities** that students do in the classroom:

- read a **text**
- guess the meaning of new words from the **context**
- listen to **dialogues**
- **look up** the meaning of new words in a dictionary
- write a **paragraph** about something
- write a short **essay** on something
- **revise vocabulary** from another lesson
- do written **exercises**
- have a **conversation** about something in English
- have a **discussion** about something

GLOSSARY

activity	sth you do, perhaps often
text	a short piece of writing that you read
context	the words that come before or after another word or sentence
dialogue	words that people say to each other, often in a book or film
look sth up	try to find information in a book
paragraph	a group of lines of writing
essay	a short piece of writing about sth. It usually has three or more paragraphs.
revise	look at or do sth again
vocabulary	all the words that sb knows or uses
simple	easy to do or understand
exercise	work that you do to learn sth
conversation	a talk between two or more people
discussion	talking about sth seriously discuss v

4 Underline the correct answer.

- I like to revise / look up the vocabulary after I've studied it.
- 1 We read a text / context in class about pop music in the 1970s.
 - 2 I don't need to write a lot – just one context / paragraph.
 - 3 We practised the essay / dialogue in pairs, and the teacher listened to us.
 - 4 The teacher sometimes asks us what contexts / activities we want to do.
 - 5 I have to write a discussion / an essay for homework.
 - 6 You can understand the meaning from the text / context.
 - 7 We had a discussion / conversation in class about politics.
 - 8 Everyone understood because it was quite simple / difficult.

5 Complete the sentences.

- We started the exercise in class and finished it for homework.
- 1 We studied the past tense last week and we're going to _____ it this week.
 - 2 I didn't understand so I _____ it _____ in my dictionary.
 - 3 Yesterday, I had a _____ in English with my American friend.
 - 4 Yesterday in class we did three _____ on irregular verbs.
 - 5 We listened to a _____, then practised it in pairs.
 - 6 Speaking is my favourite _____ in class.
 - 7 I'm sure you can understand this text: it's very _____.
 - 8 We had to write an _____ in English about our holidays for homework.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 How often do you read texts in English? What do you read? _____
- 2 Do you often use the context to help you understand the meaning of a new word? _____
- 3 How often do you write an essay in English? _____
- 4 Do you often revise vocabulary? Why? / Why not? _____
- 5 What's your favourite activity when you are studying English, inside or outside class? _____
- 6 Do you like listening to dialogues? Do you think listening to them helps you to learn vocabulary? _____



TEST YOURSELF

6 Numbers

A 1-100

1	one	11	eleven	21	twenty-one	40	forty
2	two	12	twelve	22	twenty-two	50	fifty
3	three	13	thirteen	23	twenty-three	60	sixty
4	four	14	fourteen	24	twenty-four	70	seventy
5	five	15	fifteen	25	twenty-five	80	eighty
6	six	16	sixteen	26	twenty-six	90	ninety
7	seven	17	seventeen	27	twenty-seven	100	a/one hundred
8	eight	18	eighteen	28	twenty-eight		
9	nine	19	nineteen	29	twenty-nine		
10	ten	20	twenty	30	thirty		

GLOSSARY

count	When you count, you say numbers one after another, e.g. 1-2-3-4-5. I counted the chairs - there were 15. I can count in German.
equal	be the same as sth: 2 + 2 equals (=) 4
minus	less; when you take away: 6 minus (-) 4 = 2
plus	and; added to: 4 plus (+) 4 = 8

SPOTLIGHT *about and around*

about/around = a bit more or a little less than

- How many students are there? ~ **Around/about** 20. (= 18? 19? 20? 21? 22?)
- How much is it? ~ It's **about/around** €100.
- How long is the programme? ~ **About/around** half an hour.

1 Write the middle number in words.

▶ 24	<u>twenty-five</u>	26			
1 7	_____	9	6 5	_____	7
2 19	_____	21	7 12	_____	14
3 66	_____	68	8 71	_____	73
4 49	_____	51	9 23	_____	25
5 34	_____	36	10 88	_____	90

2 Write the number in words using *about* or *around*.

▶ sixty-eight people	<u>about/around seventy people</u>	
1 ninety-seven euros	_____	5 forty-nine dollars
2 nine lessons	_____	6 seventy-eight people
3 thirty-one years	_____	7 sixty-eight pounds
4 forty-one students	_____	8 nineteen chairs

3 Do the maths. Write your answers in words.

▶ three plus nine equals <u>twelve</u>	▶ ten minus six equals <u>four</u>
1 twelve and seventeen equals _____	
2 forty-three plus thirty-four equals _____	
3 eighty-seven minus twenty-four equals _____	
4 seventeen plus fourteen equals _____	
5 sixty minus thirty-six equals _____	
6 seventeen plus twenty-eight equals _____	

4 Close your book and count from 1 to 20. Then count from 30 to 100 in tens.



TEST YOURSELF

B Large numbers

101	a/one hundred and one
140	a/one hundred and forty
200	two hundred (NOT two hundreds)
1,000	a/one thousand
1,050	a/one thousand and fifty
1,250	a/one thousand two hundred and fifty

2,000	two thousand (NOT two thousands)
100,000	a/one hundred thousand
1,000,000	a/one million
2,000,000	two million (NOT two millions)
1,000,000,000	a/one billion

In numbers over 999, write a comma (,) between:

- **thousands** and **hundreds**, e.g. 11,000
- **millions** and **thousands**, e.g. 3,000,000

SPOTLIGHT *hundreds, thousands, millions*

We use **hundreds**, **thousands**, and **millions** (with an 's') when we don't use a specific number.

- We saw **hundreds of** animals. (OR We saw **three hundred** animals.)
- There were **thousands of** people at the concert.
- The new shopping centre will cost **millions**.

5 Correct the mistakes in the spoken or written number.

- ▶ one hundred two one hundred and two
- 1 two hundreds _____
- 2 three hundred forty _____
- 3 one thousand and five hundred _____
- 4 two thousand six hundred fifty _____
- 5 seven thousands _____
- 6 42500 _____

6 Write the next number in words.

- ▶ 243 two hundred and forty-four
- 1 999 _____
- 2 5055 _____
- 3 11,300 _____
- 4 999,999 _____
- 5 2,499 _____
- 6 324,999 _____
- 7 999,999,999 _____
- 8 1,999 _____

7 Write the sentences in a more general way. Use **hundreds/thousands/millions** or **about/around**.

- ▶ There are four hundred flats. There are hundreds of flats.
- 1 They said it was three thousand dollars. _____
- 2 It's forty-eight minutes. _____
- 3 There are six thousand of them. _____
- 4 I bought seventeen books. _____
- 5 We want to grow four hundred trees. _____
- 6 There are about ten to twelve million people with this problem. _____



TEST YOURSELF

7 Telling the time

A What's the time?

What's the time?



It's four o'clock.

It's (a) quarter past four.
It's four fifteen.It's half past four.
It's four thirty.It's (a) quarter to five.
It's four forty-five.

What time is it?



It's five past six.

It's twenty past six.
It's six twenty.It's twenty to seven.
It's six forty.It's three minutes to seven.
It's six fifty-seven.

SPOTLIGHT minutes to or past

We use **minutes to** or **minutes past** with numbers which are not five, ten, fifteen, twenty or twenty-five.

- eight **minutes to** two (NOT eight-to-two)
- three **minutes past** six (NOT three-past-six)

1 Write the times in words. Don't use *past* or *to*.

- ▶ 3.10 three ten
- 1 9.15 _____
- 2 10.25 _____
- 3 3.35 _____
- 4 6.45 _____

- ▶ 6.15 six fifteen
- 5 5.50 _____
- 6 7.20 _____
- 7 2.30 _____
- 8 4.40 _____

2 Write the times in words. Use *past* and *to*.

- ▶ 12.30 half past twelve
- 1 7.15 _____
- 2 9.30 _____
- 3 11.35 _____
- 4 3.50 _____

- ▶ 6.40 twenty to seven
- 5 8.55 _____
- 6 1.03 _____
- 7 2.45 _____
- 8 4.17 _____

3 Look at the timetable and answer the questions. Write your answers in words.

Bath Spa	7.25 ▼	7.45 ▼	8.05 ▼	8.35 ▼	9.05 ▼
Swindon	7.57 ▼	8.17 ▼	8.45 ▼	9.07 ▼	9.42 ▼
Didcot Parkway	8.15 ▼		9.02 ▼		9.58 ▼
Reading	8.35 ▼	8.55 ▼	9.15 ▼	9.45 ▼	10.10 ▼
London Paddington	8.55	9.15	9.35	10.05	10.35

- ▶ When does the first train leave Bath? At seven twenty-five.
- 1 When does the first train after 8.00 leave Bath? _____
- 2 You want to be in London before 10.00. What time is the best train from Swindon? _____
- 3 When does the 8.05 train from Bath get to Didcot Parkway? _____
- 4 When does the 8.05 from Bath get to London Paddington? _____
- 5 When does the 9.05 from Bath get to Reading? _____

4 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What time do banks open and close in your country? _____
- 2 What time do most shops open and close? _____
- 3 What time do most restaurants open and close? _____
- 4 When do most people start and finish school/work? _____
- 5 When do you have lunch? _____
- 6 When do you have dinner? _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Exact times and periods of time

9.00 a.m.	nine o'clock in the morning
12.00 p.m.	(at) midday / noon
9.00 a.m. – 1.00 p.m.	all morning
1.58	just before / nearly / almost two
5.00 p.m.	five o'clock in the afternoon
2.00 – 5.30 p.m.	all afternoon (ALSO all day from 9.00 – 5.00)
7.00 p.m.	seven o'clock in the evening
8.02	just after eight
11.30 p.m.	eleven thirty at night
12.00 a.m.	(at) midnight



sun



moon

5 Same or different? Write S or D.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------|--|----------|
| ▶ 8.45 p.m. / 8.45 in the evening | <u>S</u> | ▶ 3.00 p.m. / nearly 3.00 | <u>D</u> |
| 1 12.00 at night / midnight | ..... | 7 8.43 / nearly quarter to nine | ..... |
| 2 4.00 a.m. / 4.00 in the afternoon | ..... | 8 2.17 / quarter past two | ..... |
| 3 6.27 / nearly 6.30 | ..... | 9 12.03 p.m. / just after midday | ..... |
| 4 11.45 p.m. / 11.45 at night | ..... | 10 2.00 p.m. – 5.30 p.m. / all afternoon | ..... |
| 5 almost 7 o'clock / just before 7.00 | ..... | 11 8.30 / just before 9.00 | ..... |
| 6 9 a.m. – 1.00 p.m. / all day | ..... | 12 3.00 a.m. / three o'clock | ..... |

6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I can meet you in the morning.
- 1 She usually leaves before three.
- 2 Our train was late, and it was eight thirty when we arrived.
- 3 The party ends midnight, and then I'll get a taxi home.
- 4 It starts to get really hot around
- 5 We got there at about five o'clock the afternoon.
- 6 I usually go to bed around 11 o'clock night.
- 7 They are very busy, so they'll be at work day.
- 8 It was 7 o'clock when we got home.
- 9 The train leaves after 8.00, at 8.03.
- 10 She's there morning, from nine until lunchtime.

7 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- | | |
|--|--|
| ▶ I get up just/seven o'clock. <u>before / after</u> | 5 I watch television evening. |
| 1 I'm meeting my friend midday. | 6 I go to bed midnight. |
| 2 I only drink coffee the morning. | 7 I don't get home before 10.00 night. |
| 3 I work day in a bank. | 8 It's three minutes to 8.00 – it's 8.00. |
| 4 I see my friends the evening. | 9 I always get up before 7.00, at 6.55. |



TEST YOURSELF

8 Days, seasons and dates

A Days, months and dates

DAYS of the WEEK	Monday Thursday	Tuesday Friday	Wednesday Saturday	Sunday
MONTHS of the YEAR	January May September	February June October	March July November	April August December
SEASONS (in Britain)	spring (March–May) summer (June–August) autumn (September–November) winter (December–February)			
SPECIAL DAYS	Christmas Day (25 December) New Year's Day (1 January) your birthday (the day you were born)			

SPOTLIGHT capital letters

Days and months have a capital letter.

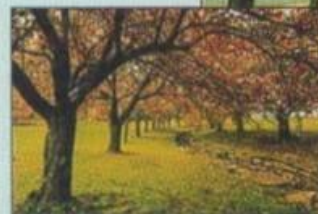
Monday (NOT *monday*); **January** (NOT *january*)



spring



summer



autumn



winter

1 Put the words in the correct order. Write the numbers in the boxes.

- 1 Wednesday ☐ Saturday ☐ ► Monday ☐ Friday ☐ Tuesday ☐ Sunday ☐ Thursday ☐
 2 autumn ☐ spring ☐ winter ☐ summer ☐
 3 December ☐ March ☐ June ☐ February ☐ November ☐ January ☐
 October ☐ April ☐ July ☐ September ☐ May ☐ August ☐

2 Say the days of the week and the months in the correct order. Use the to help you with pronunciation. Practise saying the words.

3 Write the next day, month or season.

- | | | | |
|------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| ► May | <u>June</u> | ► Sunday | <u>Monday</u> |
| 1 Monday | _____ | 6 March | _____ |
| 2 August | _____ | 7 January | _____ |
| 3 spring | _____ | 8 autumn | _____ |
| 4 November | _____ | 9 Wednesday | _____ |
| 5 Friday | _____ | 10 June | _____ |

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- Which month is your birthday? _____
- Which season do you like best? Why? _____
- Which day of the week do you like best? Why? _____
- What do you do on Christmas Day? _____
- What do you do on New Year's Day? _____
- What are two other special days in the year, and when are they? _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Ordinal numbers and dates

1 st	first
2 nd	second
3 rd	third
4 th	fourth
5 th	fifth
6 th	sixth
7 th	seventh
8 th	eighth
9 th	ninth
10 th	tenth

11 th	eleventh
12 th	twelfth
13 th	thirteenth
14 th	fourteenth
15 th	fifteenth
16 th	sixteenth
17 th	seventeenth
18 th	eighteenth
19 th	nineteenth
20 th	twentieth

21 st	twenty-first
22 nd	twenty-second
23 rd	twenty-third
30 th	thirtieth
31 st	thirty-first

SPOTLIGHT saying and writing dates and years

We can write the date like this:

■ 10 March OR 10th March OR March 10 OR 3.10.07 OR 3/10/07

We say the date like this:

■ What's the date today? ~ It's March the tenth.
~ It's the tenth of March.

Say the year like this:

■ 1995 nineteen ninety-five ■ 2006 two thousand and six
■ 2020 twenty twenty OR two thousand and twenty

5 Complete the words.

► ni__th

1 th__rd

2 twent__eth

3 fi__th

4 f__rst

5 eig__th

6 si__teenth

7 fo__rteenth

8 th__rteenth

9 s__cond

6 Answer the questions below, then practise saying the dates you wrote.

CALENDAR													
MARCH							APRIL						
S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S
				1	2	3	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
4	5	6	7	8	9	10	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
18	19	20	21	22	23	24	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
25	26	27	28	29	30	31	29	30	31				

What's ...

► the first Saturday in March? March the third / the third of March.

1 the second Tuesday in April?

5 the second Wednesday in April?

2 the first Sunday in March?

6 the first Friday in April?

3 the third Tuesday in April?

7 the fifth Saturday in March?

4 the third Wednesday in March?

8 the fourth Monday in April?

7 Write the dates/years as we say them.

► 6.9 the sixth of September

1 3.2

7 21.5

2 4.7

8 30.11

3 10.12

9 22.4

4 12.8

10 2015

5 15.1

11 today's date

6 2022

12 the date next Tuesday



TEST YOURSELF

9 Time words and phrases

A The past, the present and the future

Look at the **diary** and read the sentences below. It's midday on Thursday, 11 April.

APRIL					
MON 1	Moscow	MON 8	Jonah & Charlotte 7.30	MON 15	London
TUES 2	↓	TUES 9	pay phone bill	TUES 16	dinner with Scott 8.00
WED 3		WED 10	lunch with Ella 1.00 meet Logan 7.45	WED 17	↓
THUR 4		THUR 11	TODAY cinema 7.15	THUR 18	Dr Holton 10.45
FRI 5	Bath	FRI 12	meeting 9.00-12.00 Wheeler's café 7.30	FRI 19	theatre 8.00
SAT 6		SAT 13	stay at Will's ↓	SAT 20	Callum's birthday
SUN 7		SUN 14	↓	SUN 21	to Mum and Dad's for lunch

I was in Moscow **last week**.

I saw Jonah and Charlotte three days **ago**.

I had lunch with Ella **yesterday**.

I went out with Logan **last night**.

I'm going to the cinema **this evening**.

I have a meeting **tomorrow morning**.

I'm staying at Will's **this weekend**.

I'm going to London for three days **next week**.

I have a doctor's **appointment next Thursday**.

I'm seeing my parents **in ten days**.

GLOSSARY

diary	a book where you write what you're going to do
last week	(the past) = 1-7 April
this week	(the present) = 8-14 April
next week	(the future) = 15-21 April
ago	before now; in the past

last night	(NOT <i>yesterday night</i>)
yesterday evening	(NOT <i>last evening</i>)
appointment	a meeting at a fixed time, often with one person, for work or with a doctor/dentist, etc.
in ten days, etc.	ten days, etc. from now

1 True or false? Write T or F.

► I was in Moscow last week. T

1 I got back from Moscow two days ago.

2 I saw Jonah and Charlotte this week.

3 I paid the phone bill three days ago.

4 I met Logan yesterday.

5 I was in London last week.

6 I'm going to the cinema this afternoon.

7 I'm going out tomorrow evening.

8 I'm seeing Scott in four days.

9 I'm seeing the doctor in a week.

10 I'm going to the theatre next Friday.

2 Complete the sentences.

► We saw them at the cinema yesterday evening.

1 She saw Paul about three days

2 I won't forget Pedro's birthday - I wrote it in my

3 She called me at 10 o'clock last

4 He wants to come week, not next week.

5 She can't come tomorrow morning. She's got a dentist's

6 I'm going to Italy week.

3 Look at the diary again. It is now Wednesday, 17 April. Write three more things about last week and three things about this week.

► I had lunch with Ella a week ago.

1 on Thursday evening.

2 five days ago.

3 last weekend.

4 tomorrow morning.

5 in three days.

6 this weekend.



TEST YOURSELF

B Time words and tenses

There are some words about time in English that we often use with particular tenses.

ever	Do you ever swim in the winter? (present) Have you ever been to Moscow? (present perfect)
while	He often phones while I'm eating. (present continuous) They arrived while I was watching TV. (past continuous)
already	I was already there when they arrived. (past) Do you want lunch? ~ No thanks. I've already eaten. (present perfect)
recently	I went to the dentist recently . (past) I haven't seen Tom recently . (present perfect)
yet	I haven't done my homework yet . (present perfect) Have you seen Almodovar's new film yet ? (present perfect)
just	Where are the girls? ~ They've just left. (present perfect)
for	I've been in this job for three years. (present perfect)
since	We've lived here since we got married. (present perfect)

GLOSSARY

ever	at any time (any time now with the present tense, or any time before now with the present perfect)
while	during the time that (sth else is/was happening)
already	before now or before then (but we don't know exactly when). In negative sentences, we use yet , not already .
recently	not long ago (with the past simple), or in a short period of time before now (with the present perfect)
yet	used for talking about sth that hasn't happened, but you think it will
just	a very short time before now

SPOTLIGHT *for and since*

We use **for** with a period of time.

- **for** two weeks, six months, etc.

We use **since** with a point in time in the past:

- **since** 2003, **since** last year, **since** I came to England, etc.

We often use these words with the present perfect.

- I've been at university **for** two years.
- I've known Joe **since** 2018.

4 Complete the sentence with **for** or **since**.

I've known her ...

► **for** a year

1 2010

2 a long time

3 about three months

► **since** last year.

4 a couple of years

5 I got married

6 I was at university

5 Circle the correct answer.

► My girlfriend wants to go to Ibiza, but I've **already** / **yet** been there.

1 Paolo is in the classroom. I've **just** / **yet** seen him.

2 Lily arrived **while** / **ever** we were having lunch.

3 Do you **just** / **ever** go to concerts?

4 We haven't seen them **since** / **for** yesterday.

5 I haven't been to Turkey **recently** / **already**.

6 I want to work abroad, but I haven't found a job **already** / **yet**.

7 Have you **ever** / **yet** driven a bus?

8 I went to Spain **just** / **recently**. I stayed in Seville **since** / **for** two weeks.

6 Complete the sentences.

► He's been in that flat **for** three months.

1 Have you finished your English course ? ~ No, I've got another two weeks.

2 I was awake when Mum came into my bedroom this morning. I was reading.

3 Where's Sophia? ~ She has gone out. She was here a minute ago.

4 I haven't been to the dentist's I must make an appointment.

5 Do you go to that café when you're in town?

6 I haven't had lunch I'm really hungry.

7 George tried to phone me I was in the meeting.

8 We haven't seen Joe he left school.

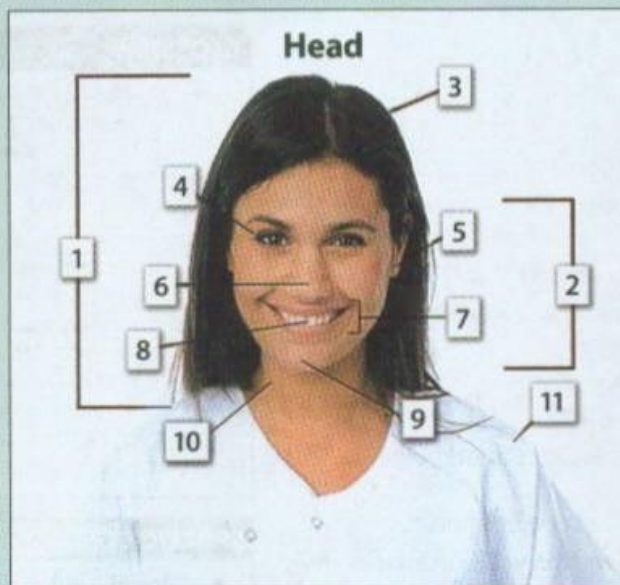
7 Translate the words in bold on this page into your own language.



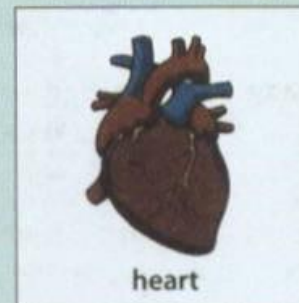
TEST YOURSELF

10) Parts of the body

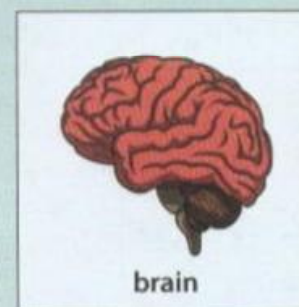
- 1 head
- 2 face
- 3 hair
- 4 eye
- 5 ear
- 6 nose
- 7 mouth
- 8 tooth
(pl teeth)
- 9 chin
- 10 neck
- 11 shoulder



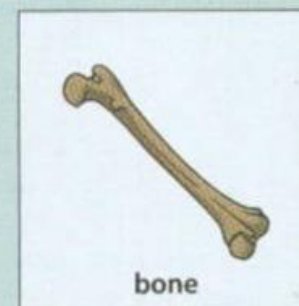
Inside the body



heart



brain

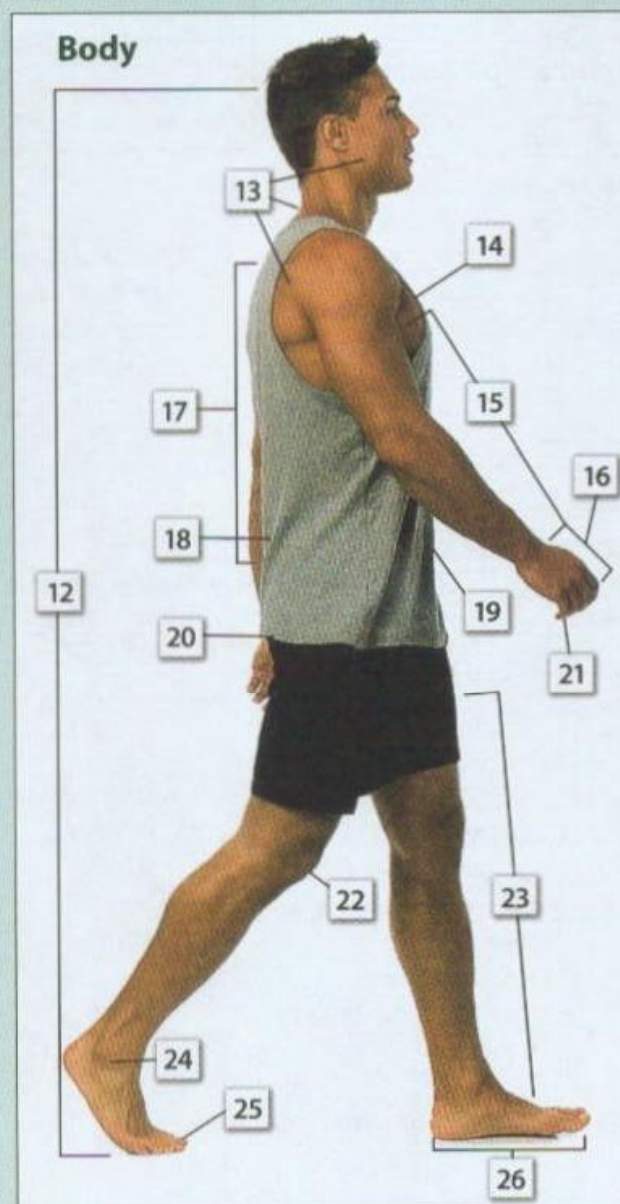


bone



blood

- 12 body
- 13 skin
- 14 chest
- 15 arm
- 16 hand
- 17 back
- 18 waist
- 19 stomach
- 20 bottom
- 21 finger
- 22 knee
- 23 leg
- 24 ankle
- 25 toe
- 26 foot
(pl feet)



GLOSSARY

- body** the total physical form of a person or an animal
- hair** [U] *My hair is long.*
(*My hairs are long.*)
- skin** [U] It covers the outside of a person or an animal's body.
- blood** [U] It is pronounced like *sun*.

1 Tick (✓) the words which are correct. Put a cross (X) by the words which are wrong.

I've got two ... ▶ eyes ☒ ears ☐ backs ☐ ankles ☐
 ▶ necks ☒ waists ☐ legs ☐ heads ☐
 noses ☐ knees ☐ hands ☐ arms ☐
 feet ☐ shoulders ☐ mouths ☐ teeth ☐

2 Which word is different? Circle it.

▶ finger arm waist hand
 1 foot shoulder toe ankle
 2 arm hand shoulder stomach
 3 neck ears nose eyes
 4 nose bottom chin hair
 5 shoulder chest neck blood
 6 teeth legs knees ankle
 7 bone brain heart finger

3 Complete the words.

▶ h _ a _ i _ r
 1 s _ _ _ n
 2 n _ _ _ e
 3 b _ _ _ k
 4 c _ _ _ n
 5 f _ _ _ e
 6 h _ _ _ d
 7 t e _ _ _ h
 8 c h _ _ _ t
 9 b l _ _ _ d
 10 b r _ _ _ n
 11 b o _ _ _ m
 12 s t _ _ _ h

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined vowels the same or different? Write S or D, and use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ chest leg S
 1 bone toe
 2 hand back
 3 head heart
 4 knee feet
 5 tooth soon
 ▶ arm ankle D
 6 blood foot
 7 foot took
 8 stomach bottom
 9 shoulder mouth
 10 stomach blood

5 Which part of the body comes between the other two parts?

▶ eyes nose mouth
 1 hand shoulder
 2 waist leg
 3 ankle toes
 4 chest head
 5 hair nose
 6 bottom ankle

6 Complete the sentences with a part of the body.

- ▶ I put the soap in my hand.
- I can't see - there's something in my
 - People have five at the end of each foot.
 - I have a problem with the middle of my left hand.
 - You sit on your
 - I usually wash my every two or three days.
 - I had a problem with my so I went to the dentist.
 - My is about 80 cm. It could be about 77 cm if I eat less.
 - We had a lot of sun and now the on my hands is a bit red, and they feel hot.
 - Can you stand on one?
 - I cut my finger with a knife, and there was a lot of
 - When my aunt was in hospital, she nearly died: her stopped for several minutes.
 - If you want to make good decisions, you have to use your
 - My brother broke a in one of his fingers.
 - Your skin covers the whole of your



TEST YOURSELF

11 Describing people

A Height and weight

How tall is she? She's ...

Is he thin or fat? He's ... How much does he weigh?



tall



average height



short



slim



average weight



overweight

GLOSSARY

height	(sounds like <i>white</i>) how tall sb is: <i>She's 175 cm tall.</i> OR <i>She's 175 cm in height. cm = centimetres</i>
weigh	<i>He weighs 60 kg.</i> OR <i>He's 60 kg in weight. kg = kilos</i>
slim	thin, but slim is more positive
weight	(sounds the same as <i>wait</i>) describes how heavy sb or sth is
put on weight	become heavier/fatter OPP lose weight

SPOTLIGHT *quite*

Quite is a very common word, and it means 'not very'.

- *She's quite tall.* (= not very tall but more than average height)
- *He plays the piano quite well.* (= not very well but better than OK)

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ If you are **overweight**, you aren't slim.
- 1 **Average height** means not fat and not slim.
- 2 **Quite thin** and **very thin** are the same.
- 3 **Put on weight** and **lose weight** are opposites.
- 4 If someone is **fat**, they are **overweight**.
- 5 The answer to *How much does he weigh?* is *200 cm*.
- 6 *How tall are you?* is a correct question.
- 7 **Average weight** means quite slim.
- 8 **Thin** and **slim** mean the same, but **thin** is more positive.
- 9 If you **lose weight**, you get thinner.
- 10 **Average height** and **average weight** are the same.

T

2 Complete the dialogues. Don't use the words in *italics* in your answer.

- ▶ Is he quite short? ~ No, he's very tall.
- 1 She's not tall or short, really. ~ No, she's average.
- 2 Are they quite *thin*? ~ Yes, they're both very .
- 3 Is he **overweight**? ~ Yes, he's getting a bit .
- 4 Is she very slim? ~ No, but she's . slim.
- 5 Max is looking a bit fat. ~ I know. He has 10 kilos.
- 6 Is he about average weight? ~ I think so. He 75 kg.
- 7 Scarlet isn't very tall, is she? ~ No, actually she's quite .
- 8 Ben is looking very slim. ~ Yes, he has a lot of weight.
- 9 This box is very heavy. ~ Is it? How does it weigh?
- 10 Is Willie very tall? ~ No, but he's tall.



TEST YOURSELF

B Features



beard

1 a good-looking man with dark curly hair and a beard



smile

2 a pretty teenager with long blonde hair and a lovely smile



3 a very attractive woman with straight fair hair



4 a middle-aged man with short grey hair

GLOSSARY

feature(s)	an important part of sth, e.g. <i>your face, your eyes</i>
teenager	a person between the ages of 13 and 19 teenage <i>adj</i>
lovely	beautiful or very nice: <i>a lovely smile/dress</i>
smile	(see picture 2) Smile is also a verb: <i>He smiled at me.</i>
middle-aged	about 45 to 60 years old

SPOTLIGHT *good-looking, beautiful, etc.*

For a woman, we can say **beautiful** or (very) **good-looking/ attractive**. For a man, we usually say **good-looking** or **handsome**. For girls especially, we can say **beautiful**, but we often use **pretty**.

3 Look at the pictures. True or false? Write *T* or *F*. If false, correct the mistake.

- ▶ The girl isn't a teenager. *F - She is a teenager.*
- 1 She's got a lovely smile. _____
- 2 She's got dark hair. _____
- 3 It's also quite short. _____
- 4 The young man isn't handsome. _____
- 5 He's got dark hair. _____
- 6 The woman has got blonde hair. _____
- 7 Her hair is straight. _____
- 8 She's beautiful. _____
- 9 The other man is old. _____
- 10 His hair is dark. _____

4 Complete the words in the texts.

My sister (15): ▶ is a **teenager**. She's very (1) **pr**_____, with (2) **d**_____ brown hair, and she has a lovely (3) **sm**_____, which is one of her best (4) **fe**_____.

My brother (18): is also a (5) **te**_____. He's very (6) **g**_____. I _____ and he knows it. He's got short (7) **st**_____ hair, and no (8) **be**_____.

My father (52): is (9) **m**_____ - a _____ now. I think he's still a (10) **ha**_____ man, but his hair is quite (11) **gr**_____.

My mother (50): has short (12) **bl**_____ hair. She was (13) **be**_____ when she was young and she is still very (14) **at**_____.

Me (20): I am no longer a (15) **t**_____ boy. I'm different from my sister because I've got (16) **f**_____ hair, and different from my brother because my hair is (17) **cu**_____. And I'm also different from them because, unfortunately, I'm not very (18) **g**_____.

5 ABOUT YOU Write two or three sentences describing yourself using some of the vocabulary from this page. Then look at the pictures again. Do you think the four people are beautiful/handsome/attractive? If possible, talk to someone else about them.



TEST YOURSELF

12 Physical actions

A Using your body



sit down
pt sat down



stand up
pt stood up



walk



run
pt ran



fall over
pt fell over



ride
pt rode



climb



jump



lie down
pt lay



dance



get on
pt got on



get off
pt got off

SPOTLIGHT irregular verbs

Many of the verbs above are **irregular**: the past simple is not formed by adding -ed. There is a list of the past simple and past participle forms of all the irregular verbs in the book on page 198. See also Unit 39.

1 Write the present form of the verbs.

- walked walk
1 lay down _____
2 fell over _____
3 rode _____

- 4 stood up _____
5 sat down _____
6 got on _____
7 ran _____

2 Complete these sentences with verbs from above.

- When you go to bed, you do this. lie down
1 When you hear music and you're happy, you do this. _____
2 When you're tired, you do this. _____ or _____
3 When you don't see something on the floor in front of you, you could do this. _____
4 When you go on a bike, you do this. _____
5 When you're waiting at the bus stop and the bus arrives, you do this. _____

3 Complete the sentences. You need the past simple in sentences 6–9.

- I sat down at my desk and worked for two hours.
1 The children have to _____ when the teacher comes into the classroom.
2 I often _____ to work in the summer – it's only twenty minutes on foot.
3 I want to _____ Mount Kilimanjaro next year.
4 Do you often _____ when you go to clubs?
5 The doctor asked me to _____ on the bed.
6 The boys _____ into the swimming pool.
7 She _____ her bike to school this morning.
8 I was late, so I _____ to the bus stop, but I _____ over and hurt my leg.
9 She _____ the bus, went into the station and got _____ a train.



TEST YOURSELF

B Using your hands



push



pull



carry



hold pt held



pick sth up



put sth down pt put



break pt broke



give pt gave



close/shut pt shut
OPP open



drop



throw pt threw



catch pt caught

4 Cover the pictures and underline the correct answers.

- ▶ You can drop a glass / a house.
- 1 You can open a door / a light.
- 2 You can catch a car / a ball.
- 3 You can throw a book / a house.

- 4 You can push the sky / a person.
- 5 You can hold a dictionary / a country.
- 6 You can break some juice / a pencil.
- 7 You can pick up a car / a bicycle.

5 Do you need two hands to do these things? Or can you do them with one hand?

- ▶ shut a dictionary 1

- ▶ give someone five dictionaries 2

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1 pick up a cup | drop a cup | 5 throw a ball | catch a ball |
| 2 pick up a TV | turn on a TV | 6 drop a ruler | break a ruler |
| 3 break a bottle | open a bottle | 7 carry a door | close a door |
| 4 pull a person | carry a person | 8 pick up a baby | hold a baby |

6 Complete the sentences with suitable verbs from above.

- ▶ I opened the garage door and then three of us pushed the car out.
- 1 It was cold, so he _____ the window.
- 2 She _____ the cat and _____ it _____ in its bed.
- 3 I'm afraid I _____ your best glass and it broke. I'm really sorry.
- 4 Four of us _____ the boat out of the sea and then _____ it along the beach.
- 5 I _____ the baby to Mum and she _____ it in her arms.
- 6 I _____ the ball to my brother but he dropped it on the floor.
- 7 The box is very heavy. I can't _____ it to the car.



TEST YOURSELF

13 Personal information

A Facts

Sandro is studying English in Cambridge. The **receptionist** needs some **information**.

- Receptionist** What's your family name? (OR What's your surname?)
Sandro Bertoli.
Receptionist And your first name?
Sandro Sandro.
Receptionist OK, Sandro. What's your address and postcode?
Sandro 45 Alfred Road, CB2 4TX.
Receptionist So, Sandro, where are you from? (OR Where do you come from?)
Sandro Italy.
Receptionist Whereabouts in Italy? (OR Where in Italy exactly?)
Sandro Pisa.
Receptionist What do you do in Pisa? (OR What's your job?)
Sandro I'm a doctor.
Receptionist And are you married or single?
Sandro I'm married. My wife is German.
Receptionist And how old are you?
Sandro I'm 34.



SPOTLIGHT information

Information [U] means facts about people or things, e.g. name, address, etc. **Information** is uncountable. Don't say *an information* or *informations*. **Personal information** is information about one person.

1 In each sentence, one word is in the wrong place. Correct it.

- Are married you?
 1 I need some information personal. 3 Do what you do? 5 How old you are?
 2 Where do come from you? 4 What your postcode is? 6 Where the receptionist is from?

2 Write the questions with different words but with the same meaning.

- What's your family name? What's your surname ?
 1 Where are you from? Where do _____ ?
 2 Whereabouts in Poland? Where in Poland _____ ?
 3 What's your job? What do _____ ?
 4 Where do you live? What's your _____ ?
 5 What's your age? How _____ ?

3 Complete the questions in the table.

QUESTIONS	ANSWERS	ABOUT YOU
► What's your <u>name</u> ?	Kovács.	.....
1 And your _____ name?	Zsuzsa.	.....
2 Where are you _____ ?	Hungary.	.....
3 _____ in Hungary?	The capital, Budapest.	.....
4 _____ your address?	Tarcali utca 27.	.....
5 And the _____ ?	1113.	.....
6 And what _____ you do?	I'm an engineer.	.....
7 Are you _____ ?	No, I'm single.	.....
8 How _____ are you?	I'm 27.	.....

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in the table, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Talking about your English course

Sandro has been in Cambridge now for two months and is talking to the receptionist again.

- Receptionist** So, Sandro. What's your English level now?
Sandro I'm intermediate.
Receptionist Yes, you **communicate** very well.
Sandro Thank you, but I still need to **improve**.
Receptionist Why's that?
Sandro Because I want to work **abroad** and **help** people in other countries. For that, my English has to be **perfect**.
Receptionist So **how long** are you **planning** to stay here?
Sandro I don't know.
Receptionist But you're enjoying your **course**?
Sandro Yes, it's great. I've made a lot of **progress**.

GLOSSARY

level	how high sth is, e.g. <i>an elementary/intermediate/advanced level of English</i>
communicate (with sb)	be able to say what you mean, or have a conversation with other people
improve	become better improvement <i>n</i>
abroad	in another country
help	do sth good for sb so their life is easier
perfect	so good it can't be better
how long?	how much time? (NOT <i>how long time?</i>)
plan (to do) sth	decide what you are going to do and how you are going to do it
course	a number of lessons
great	very good or nice SYNS <i>fantastic, wonderful</i>
progress	improvement

5 True or false? Write T or F.

- If you **help** someone, you make their life easier. T
 1 **Perfect** means the same as good.
 2 **Plan to do something** is the same as decide what to do and how to do it.
 3 **Improve** means to make something different.
 4 **Abroad** means in another country.
 5 **A language course** means the same as *a language level*.
 6 If you **communicate** something, you are able to say what you mean.
 7 **How long?** means the same as *how far?*
 8 **Great** means the same as *fantastic*.

6 Agree with the first speaker, but replace the words in *italics* with different words.

- The course is *really good*. ~ Yes, it's great.
 1 She's *getting better*. ~ Yes, she's
 2 Her English is *very good* now. ~ Yes, it's at a high
 3 She can *express ideas* very well. ~ Yes, she
 4 She wants to work *in another country*. ~ Yes, she wants to go and work
 5 They're *thinking about* going to Spain. ~ Yes, they're to go there.
 6 I thought it was *fantastic*. ~ Yes, it was
 7 He's really *improving*. ~ Yes, he's making a lot of
 8 He wants to *make people's lives better*. ~ Yes, he wants to

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What's your English level?
 2 How well do you communicate in English?
 3 Do you want or need to improve?
 4 Are you making progress?
 5 Are you planning to go to an English-speaking country? If so, where?
 6 Would you like to work abroad?



TEST YOURSELF

14 Family

A Damon's family tree



All the people here are Damon's relatives.
 Luke is Dave and Maggie's son.
 Karen is Dave and Maggie's daughter.
 Maggie is Dave's wife.
 Dave is Maggie's husband.
 Elsie and Alf are Maggie's parents.

Dave is Paul's brother-in-law.
 Jane is Maggie's sister-in-law.
 James is Maggie's nephew.
 Karen is Paul's niece.
 Luke is Elsie's grandson.
 Jessica is Elsie's granddaughter.

1 Complete the sentences about Damon's family.

- Paul is Elsie and Alf's son.
- 1 Maggie is Elsie's
- 2 Luke is Paul's
- 3 Jessica is Maggie's
- 4 Maggie is Jane's
- 5 Karen is Jessica's

- 6 Elsie and Alf are Damon's
- 7 Paul is Jane's
- 8 Elsie is Jessica's
- 9 Paul is Luke's
- 10 Maggie is Jessica's
- 11 James, Dave and Alf are Damon's

2 Complete the table.

MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE
► father	<u>mother</u>	brother-in-law	.....
brother	grandfather	.....
husband	grandson	.....
nephew	cousin	.....
relative	parent	.....
son	uncle	.....

3 ABOUT YOU Draw your family tree. Write the names and *brother, sister, uncle, etc.*

TEST YOURSELF

B Family history



My parents **got married** 25 years ago. Two years later, my brother Luke **was born**. Then I was born a year after that. I've also **got** a sister, Karen, who is two years younger than me, so **there are five of us** in my family. Luke has got a **girlfriend**, Amy, and they live in a small flat. Karen and I still live with **Mum** and **Dad**. We **spend** a lot of time together.



GLOSSARY

get married	become husband or wife with sb OPP get divorced stop being husband or wife with sb
be born	start your life
have got	have
there are five of us	(NOT <i>We are five.</i>)
girlfriend	a girl or woman who sb has a romantic relationship with ALSO boyfriend
mum inf	mother
dad inf	father
spend time with sb together	be with sb and do things with them with each other: <i>My family all live together in the same house.</i>

SPOTLIGHT comparatives and superlatives

- *Damon is 22 (years old).* (NOT *Damon is 22 years.*)
- *His brother is older than him. He's 23.*
- *His sister is younger than him. She's 20.*
- *Luke is the oldest in the family.*
- *Karen is the youngest in the family.*

4 True or false? Write T or F.

- | | |
|---|---|
| ▶ Damon is Luke's older brother. <u>F</u> | |
| 1 Damon's parents are divorced. | 6 Damon is Amy's boyfriend. |
| 2 Damon was born after Luke. | 7 There are four in Damon's family. |
| 3 Luke is younger than Karen. | 8 Karen is the youngest in the family. |
| 4 Luke and Amy live together. | 9 Damon and Karen are often together. |
| 5 Luke's mum has three children. | 10 Luke is Damon's dad. |

5 Write the words in the correct order.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| ▶ his / divorced / are / parents | <u>His parents are divorced.</u> |
| 1 born / I / 2001 / in / was | ..... |
| 2 spend / of / together / we / lot / time / a | ..... |
| 3 older / my / than / girlfriend / me / is | ..... |
| 4 in / six / my / of / are / family / there / us | ..... |
| 5 the / family / I / youngest / in / my / am | ..... |
| 6 brother / older / younger / an / 've got / I / a / and / sister | ..... |

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.


- 1 How many people are there in your family?
- 2 When were you born?
- 3 Have you got any brothers and sisters? If yes, are they older or younger than you?
- 4 In your family, who do spend a lot of time with?
- 5 Do you all live together?



TEST YOURSELF

15 Personality

A What's he/she like?

Word	Example	Meaning
friendly	<i>The students in my class are all really friendly. It's great.</i>	happy to meet and talk to other people OPP unfriendly
kind	<i>He visited me in hospital, which was really kind.</i>	friendly and good to other people
nice	<i>I met Charlie on holiday, and he's a really nice guy.</i>	kind and friendly (a very common word in spoken English)
fun	<i>I love Caitlin; she's great fun.</i>	sb or sth that makes you happy <i>Good/great fun</i> is common.
funny	<i>Josh makes me laugh – he's a really funny man.</i>	making you laugh 
relaxed	<i>I felt very relaxed after my holiday.</i>	calm and not worried
clever	<i>Tom is really clever – the best student in our class.</i>	quick at learning and understanding things SYN intelligent OPP stupid
patient	<i>My boyfriend is often late, but I'm very patient.</i>	able to stay calm and not get angry when you are waiting
strange	<i>He's a strange man – I never know what he's thinking.</i>	unusual or surprising

SPOTLIGHT What's he/she/it like?

We use this question to find out more about somebody/something.

- **What's Jack like?** ~ He's very nice. (NOT *He's like very nice.*)
- **What was the teacher like?** ~ She was *good fun*.

1 Complete the words.

► fun1 n e2 f y3 cl r4 st e5 f y6 p t7 la h8 r l x d

2 Cover the table, then answer the questions.

What's ...

- a synonym for nice? friendly
- 1 the opposite of friendly?
- 2 a synonym for clever?
- 3 the opposite of clever?

What do you call someone who ...

- 4 is able to learn quickly?
- 5 makes you laugh?
- 6 is able to wait for things?
- 7 is calm and doesn't worry?

3 Complete the conversations.

- 1 What's Alex like? ~ Oh, he's very funny. We a lot when we're together.
- 2 What are Ana's parents ? ~ Well, her mother's great . I like her very much. But I never know what to say to her father – he's very .
- 3 was your grandmother like? ~ She was very : she always helped everyone. And she was too: she went to university.

4 ABOUT YOU Write the names of people you know who are:

- kind very friendly patient with you
- good fun intelligent strange



TEST YOURSELF

B We like each other



Gemma



Sophie

WHY WE LIKE each other

Gemma: I met Sophie at university. I was **on my own** in the café, and she came and talked to me. She's like that. What's interesting is that we're **completely different**. She has a very **active social life** and meets lots of new people. I'm very **quiet** and **serious**. But it didn't **matter**. We became friends and **shared a flat** for two years. I'm **tidy** and did most of the housework. Sophie's quite **lazy**, but she is a great cook and a **really** nice person.

GLOSSARY

each other	She likes me and I like her. = We like each other .
on my own	not with other people syn alone
completely different	totally different; different in every way
active	busy and able to do a lot of things
social life	going out with friends
quiet	Somebody who is quiet doesn't say very much.
serious	A serious person thinks a lot and doesn't laugh much.
matter	be important; it doesn't matter = it's not important
share a flat	live in the same flat as another person
tidy	A tidy person likes everything to be in the right place. opp untidy
lazy	A lazy person doesn't like working. opp hard-working

SPOTLIGHT *really*

Really is important in spoken English. It means 'very', and you can use it before most adjectives.

■ I'm in a **really** nice class. ■ She was **really** lazy.

- 5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sound the same or different? Write **S** or **D**.
Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ social / doesn't **D**
1 other / own
2 hardworking / doesn't

- 3 alone / social
4 completely / other
5 completely / serious

- 6 Read the text again. True or false? Write **T** or **F**.

- ▶ Sophie likes cooking **T**
1 Gemma was alone when she met Sophie.
2 Gemma and Sophie are similar.
3 Gemma doesn't say very much.
4 They lived together at university.

- 5 Gemma is really lazy.
6 Sophie goes out a lot.
7 Gemma's untidy.
8 It was a problem that they were completely different.

- 7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I never put things away. I'm very untidy.
1 When we met, I was on my and wanted someone to talk to.
2 I've always had an active social : I go out most nights.

- 3 We wanted to a flat together.
4 Do you want me to help? ~ No, it doesn't
5 My sister and I are different.
6 We've always liked each

- 8 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers, or ask another student.

Questionnaire

What are you like?

- 1 Are you tidy or untidy?
2 Are you hard-working or a bit lazy?
3 Are you quiet?
4 Are you serious?
5 Do you have an active social life?
6 Do you like being on your own?



TEST YOURSELF

16 Relationships

A Romantic relationships

Max is my **partner**, and we have a very good **relationship**. We've **been together** for about two years. I started to **go out with** him after I came to London. We met at my **ex-boyfriend's** house, and because Max lived near me, it was easy for us to **get to know** each other. Now Max wants us to **get married** and **have a baby**, but I'm not sure. I have friends who are happily married, but I also know married **couples** who have **separated** and are now **divorced**. I don't want that to happen to us.



GLOSSARY

partner	sb you have a romantic relationship with (your boyfriend, girlfriend, wife or husband)	get to know sb	learn more about sb and become friends
be together	be in a romantic relationship	get married	become husband or wife with sb
go out with sb	have a romantic relationship with sb	have a baby	become a new mother/father
ex-boyfriend	a person who was your boyfriend in the past ALSO ex-girlfriend , ex-husband , etc.	couple	two people, often in a romantic relationship
		separate	stop being together
		be divorced	married in the past but not now

SPOTLIGHT *relationship*

You have a **relationship** with somebody. It can be good or bad.

- I have a **good relationship** with my classmates.
- He has a **difficult relationship** with his father.

We often talk about **romantic relationships** with wives, boyfriends, etc.

1 Make six more phrases using words from the box.

get to together ✓ ex- know be ✓ somebody get boyfriend go out with somebody have romantic a baby married relationship

► be together

2 Write the words in the correct order.

- get / to / they / married / want They want to get married
- 1 baby / last / had / a / year / they _____
- 2 separated / January / they / in _____
- 3 have / good / a / very / relationship / we _____
- 4 boyfriend / you / how / your / get / did / to / know _____?
- 5 three / together / for / they / years / were _____
- 6 with / six / went / him / months / I / for / out _____

3 Complete the sentences with a single word.

- They have a very good relationship.
- 1 Tom _____ married last summer, but I don't know his new _____.
- 2 We _____ to know each other at university, and we've been _____ now for a year.
- 3 I know Tom and Lucy very well. They're a lovely _____.
- 4 She went _____ with him last year, but they _____ in January.
- 5 Sonia is his _____ girlfriend, but they still talk to each other.
- 6 My parents were married for twenty years, but now they're _____. My father has a new _____, but I don't think they're going to _____ married.



TEST YOURSELF

B Friends



WHY WE LIKE each other

Sophie: I **get on very well with** Gemma – she's great. I don't know why, because we've got very different **personalities**. We first **met** at university about six years ago, and then we **became flatmates**. If I have a problem, Gemma is the first person I go to her for **advice**. And she always gives me good advice. We don't **see** each other very often now because we live in different cities, but I've **known** her for quite a long time, and she will always be my **best friend**.

GLOSSARY

each other	She likes me and I like her. = We like each other .
get on (well) with sb	have a good relationship with sb
personality	what a person is like that makes them different from other people
meet pt met	1 see and speak to sb for the first time 2 go to a place and wait for sb: <i>We're meeting them at 7.30.</i>
become	begin to be sth: become friends/ flatmates
flatmate	a person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship
advice [U]	an opinion or information that you give to help sb with a problem give (sb) advice
see sb	talk to or visit sb
know pt knew pp known	If you know sb , you have met them. If you have known sb for a long time, you are often friends.

SPOTLIGHT friend

A **friend** is a person that you like and know well. Your **best friend** is your most important friend. You can also have a **close friend** (= a very good friend) or an **old friend** (= somebody you have known a long time).

4 Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ We met last year. / I have known her for a year. S
- 1 We live near each other. / We are flatmates.
- 2 We get on very well. / We have a very good relationship.
- 3 I see her every Saturday. / I visit her every Saturday.
- 4 She's my best friend. / She's a close friend.
- 5 We became friends. / We stopped being friends.
- 6 She gives me advice. / She helps me with my problems.

5 Complete the sentences

- ▶ Abigail and I soon became friends.
- 1 My best friend often gives me good
- 2 Charles and Ed are good friends – they see other almost every day.
- 3 Mia is an friend – I've her for many years.
- 4 Sammy seems to on well with everyone – he's very popular.
- 5 I first my wife when we were at university – we were only twenty.
- 6 I've Olivia a long time, but we don't each other very much now.
- 7 I'm my friends outside the cinema at 7 o'clock.
- 8 Emma was just my – we shared a flat for a year. Now she's my friend, but we have very different

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Who is your best friend?
- 2 How long have you known him/her?
- 3 How and where did you first meet?
- 4 How often do you see each other?
- 5 Why do you get on well with him/her?
- 6 Do you often give each other advice?



TEST YOURSELF

17 Feelings

A Feelings and emotions



1 She's happy.



2 She's sad. SYN unhappy



3 They're excited.



4 He's bored.



5 He's angry.



6 She's scared/afraid (of sth/sb).



7 She's embarrassed.



8 She's surprised.



9 He's in love.



10 She's worried.

SPOTLIGHT feelings and emotions

Feelings or emotions are what you have inside yourself. We use adjectives after the verb **be** to describe our feelings, e.g. I'm **happy/sad/angry/afraid**, etc. We can also use many of these adjectives after the verb **feel** (pt felt): I **feel happy/sad/angry**, etc.

1 Complete the words.

► ha p p y

1 ang _____

2 wor _____

3 _____

4 sc _____

5 emb _____

6 unh _____

7 af _____

8 sur _____

9 ex _____

2 Answer the questions.

► What's the opposite of *sad*? happy

1 What's another word for *feelings*? _____

2 What's the opposite of *excited*? _____

3 What's another word for *unhappy*? _____

4 What's another word for *afraid*? _____

5 If two people love each other, how can we say it another way? They are _____

6 If you do something stupid, how do you feel? _____

3 Complete the sentences.

► The teacher got angry because the children were running round the classroom.

1 I got very _____ yesterday because I couldn't find my credit card. I found it this morning.

2 I got 100% in my English exam. I was happy but also very _____

3 My brothers get very _____ when they're watching football on TV.

4 I made a mistake and everyone laughed. I _____ stupid and a bit _____

5 My sister and Jake are getting married. My parents are _____ because they like Jake.

6 I didn't like the film and I was _____ after half an hour.

7 My aunt never travels by plane. She's _____ of flying.

8 Oliver and Marcia met on holiday. I think they're in _____

9 I had different _____ when I first flew in a plane: I was excited but also a bit scared.



TEST YOURSELF

B How did you feel?

How did you feel ...

when you went to bed last night?	~ Quite tired .
on your walk when it got hot?	~ I was thirsty .
after you had nothing to eat for hours?	~ I was hungry .
when everyone came to your party?	~ I was very pleased .
when you forgot a friend's birthday?	~ I was very sorry .
before your important exam today?	~ I was nervous .
when you broke your finger?	~ I was in pain .
when your dog died?	~ I was very upset , and I cried .
when you argued with / had an argument with your best friend?	~ I felt bad and unhappy about it.



She's crying.

4 How do you feel? Write your answers.

- ▶ It's the end of a working day.
- 1 Your best friend hasn't invited you to his party.
- 2 You are meeting your boyfriend or girlfriend's parents for the first time.
- 3 You've had nothing to drink for hours.
- 4 It's lunchtime and you didn't have breakfast.
- 5 You walked into a door and hit your head.
- 6 A friend wrote a letter to thank you for something.
- 7 A friend asked you to do something, and you forgot.

tired
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

5 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ When's lunch? ~ I don't know. Are you hungry ?
- 1 I've got my driving test tomorrow. ~ Oh, are you _____ ?
- 2 I'm going to bed. ~ OK. Are you _____ ?
- 3 Did Dan finally pass his exam? ~ Yes, he's so _____ .
- 4 Did Amelia fall down the stairs? ~ Yes, she was in a lot of _____ .
- 5 Steph looked very angry. ~ I know. She's just had an _____ with her boyfriend. Really? What about? ~ I don't know, but they often _____ .
- 6 I'm really _____ I couldn't come last night. ~ That's OK.
- 7 I'm _____ . ~ OK. What would you like to drink?
- 8 Julia's mother was in hospital and died last week, so Julia is very _____ .
~ Oh, that's probably why she was _____ when I saw her.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

Questionnaire

When was the last time you ...

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 felt tired? _____ | 5 argued with somebody? _____ |
| 2 felt nervous? _____ | 6 were in pain? _____ |
| 3 felt hungry? _____ | 7 cried? _____ |
| 4 felt thirsty? _____ | 8 felt pleased? _____ |



TEST YOURSELF

18 Prepositions: time

at	a time at six o'clock at midday/midnight	a mealtime at breakfast at lunch / lunchtime at dinner / dinner time	
on	a day on Tuesday on Friday evening on Tuesdays = every Tuesday on my birthday on Christmas Day	a date on September 10 on 6 th May	
in	a part of a day in the morning in the afternoon in the evening	a season in (the) spring/summer/ autumn/winter	a month, year or century in July/December in 1990/2050 in the 21 st century (= 2000-2099)

SPOTLIGHT at

We also use **at** in these time phrases:

- I relax **at the weekend**.
- Some doctors work **at night**. (NOT *in the night*)
- What are you doing **at Christmas / at New Year?**
- He's not here **at the moment** (= now).

1 Cross out the word or phrase which is not correct.

- **in** the spring / ~~February 15th~~ / the evening
- 1 **at** lunchtime / 2020 / the weekend
- 2 **in** August / summer / Friday
- 3 **on** April / your birthday / Saturdays
- 4 **at** night / the morning / half past seven
- 5 **in** autumn / the 20th century / 4.00
- 6 **on** midnight / June 2nd / Sunday afternoon
- 7 **at** breakfast / midday / the autumn
- 8 **on** winter / Christmas Day / 5th May
- 9 **in** the afternoon / lunchtime / 2018
- 10 **at** New Year / the evening / six o'clock

2 Write the correct preposition.

We went to Brighton for a few days last week. We left ► on Thursday morning (1) about nine o'clock and got there (2) lunchtime. We found a nice hotel, and then (3) the afternoon we went to the beach. The weather can be quite cold (4) spring, but it was great – really sunny. (5) Friday, we had lunch with an old friend. I first met her at university (6) 2007. Then (7) the evening, we went to a restaurant and got home (8) midnight. (9) the weekend, we went shopping and then went back to the beach. We'd like to go back for the Brighton Festival, which starts (10) May 6th.

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers using a preposition and a time phrase from the table, or ask another student.

When do you ...

- get up? _____
- study English? _____
- go swimming? _____
- usually go out with friends? _____
- watch TV? _____
- go to bed? _____

When ...

- is your birthday? _____
- were you born? _____
- are there public holidays in your country? _____



TEST YOURSELF



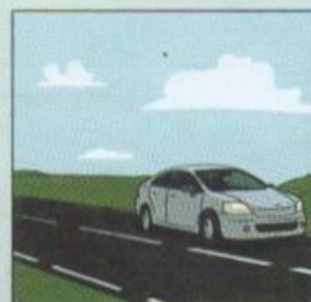
go into go out of
(the house)



go across the road



go up go down
(the stairs)



go along the road



go past the church



go through the gate



go under go across/over
(the bridge)



go towards the hill

1 Circle the correct word.

► Don't run down the hill / town.

1 Walk under the trees / field.

2 Drive along the city / motorway.

3 Don't go across the river / gate.

4 Go into the beach / shop.

5 Go towards the church / clouds.

6 Walk through the gate / stairs.

7 Go up the floor / mountain.

8 We flew over the sky / field.

9 Walk out of the building / hill.

2 Complete the sentences with a preposition. Use a different one in each sentence.

► Go straight on, along this road.

1 We shouted hello as the boat went _____ the bridge.

2 She went _____ the hotel and spoke to the receptionist.

3 They drove _____ the hill to look at the view from the top.

4 I walked _____ the village, which was about a kilometre away.

5 We drove _____ a restaurant on the way to the station.

6 He came _____ the door and fell over. It was very funny.

7 I came _____ the bank and saw the accident.

8 We went _____ the hill, into the valley below.

9 The dog saw a cat in one of the gardens, and he just ran _____ the road.

3 Complete the sentences with a preposition.

► What do you see when you go out of _____ the building where you live?

1 Do you ever walk _____ a bridge near your home?

2 Do you ever drive _____ a river or a railway line?

3 Do you walk _____ a gate when you leave your home?

4 Have you ever walked _____ the River Thames?

5 When you walk to work, do you go _____ any interesting buildings?

ABOUT YOU

4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

20 Prepositions: place

A at, in, on

at	<p>a place where something happens</p> <p>Let's meet at the bank / at the bus stop.</p> <p>I saw him at the match / at the party / at home</p> <p>at work / at school.</p>
----	---



in	<p>something with walls or sides</p> <p>in a box / in a cupboard</p> <p>in a room / in an office / in a flat</p> <p>in a garden / in a park</p>	<p>a big area</p> <p>in a village / in a town / in a city</p> <p>in the countryside</p> <p>in London/Spain/Asia/the world</p>
----	--	--



on	<p>something long</p> <p>on the road / on the coast</p> <p>on a river</p>	<p>something flat</p> <p>on the table / on the wall</p> <p>on the first floor</p>	<p>in OR on</p> <p>He's in the river.</p> <p>She's on the river.</p>
----	--	--	---

1 Underline the correct preposition.

- I live in / on Canada.
- 1 She's not in / on her office.
- 2 The photos are in / on the wall.
- 3 We met in / at a golf match.
- 4 We stayed in / on a lovely village.
- 5 He's swimming in / on the pool.
- 6 Barcelona is in / on the coast.
- 7 We live at / in the countryside.
- 8 There is a white line at / on the road.
- 9 Dinner is on / at the table.
- 10 They're sitting in / at the garden.
- 11 The books are on / in the table.
- 12 I saw her in / at the bus stop.
- 13 The number is in / on the door.
- 14 I spoke to her in / at the party.

2 Complete the questions with at, in or on.

- Which country do you live in ?
- 1 Do you live a village, a town or a city?
- 2 Do you live a flat or a house?
- 3 Is your town a river?
- 4 Which floor is your bedroom ?
- 5 What's the walls in your living room?
- 6 Do you like walking the countryside?
- 7 Do you ever meet new people parties?
- 8 Did you learn English school, work, or an English-speaking country?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Other prepositions



The people are **in front of** the garage.
The postman is **between** Mum and Dad.
The adults are **behind** the children.
The tree is **near** the house.

The office is **above** the garage.
The garage is **below** the office.
The seat is **next to** the bus stop.
The bus stop is **opposite** the house.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

► The tree is opposite the house. **F**

- 1 The blue car is near the house.
- 2 The big window is above the door.
- 3 The seat is opposite the garage.
- 4 The people are opposite the garage.
- 5 The postman is next to Mum.

- 6 The gate is between the house and the tree.
- 7 The children are behind Mum and Dad.
- 8 The girl is in front of the postman.
- 9 The front door is below the big window.
- 10 The green car is next to the bus stop.

5 Complete the sentences.

► The tree's behind the blue car.

- 1 The bus stop is the seat.
- 2 The blue car is the tree.
- 3 The boy is standing Dad.
- 4 The gate is the house and the garage.
- 5 The blue car is the house.
- 6 The people are the garage.
- 7 The postman is Dad.
- 8 The garage is the people.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

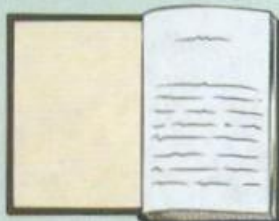
- 1 What's opposite the building where you live?
- 2 What's behind your building?
- 3 What's next to your building?
- 4 Are there any shops near it?
- 5 What's above your living room?
- 6 What's below your bedroom?
- 7 What's next to your bedroom?
- 8 Is there anything between your building and the street? If so, what?



TEST YOURSELF

A Position

- 1 at the front of the car
- 2 on the side of the car
- 3 OPP on the other side
- 4 at the back of the car
- 5 in the back of the car



at the beginning/start of the book



in the middle of the book



at the end of the book



at the top of the mountain



at the bottom of the staircase

SPOTLIGHT at first and in the end

We often talk about time using **at first** (= at the beginning of the time) and **in the end** (= finally) when we tell stories.

- **At first**, I didn't like being in the water, but I soon learned how to swim.
- It was a long journey. **In the end**, we arrived at our hotel.

1 Cross out the wrong answer.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ▶ at the front of the <i>cinema</i> / bread / house | 4 at the bottom of the <i>glass</i> / river / apple |
| 1 at the back of the <i>night</i> / bus / classroom | 5 in the middle of the <i>book</i> / road / milk |
| 2 at the beginning of the <i>story</i> / meal / pencil | 6 on the other side of the <i>sky</i> / house / river |
| 3 at the top of the <i>stairs</i> / book / building | 7 at the end of the <i>film</i> / morning / mountain |

2 Complete the sentences with a phrase.

- ▶ There's a murder at the beginning of the film.
- 1 There's a great view _____ of the hill.
 - 2 I always sit _____ of the class where the teacher can't see me.
 - 3 They found an old boat _____ of the lake.
 - 4 _____ I didn't enjoy learning English, but now I like it.
 - 5 When I go and see a film, I like to sit _____ of the cinema, where I can see easily.
 - 6 What happens _____ of the book? I didn't finish it.
 - 7 They put a big sign _____ of the square so everyone could see it.
 - 8 We had a lot of problems, but _____ it was OK.
 - 9 The problem is not on this side of the wall – it's _____.
 - 10 _____ of the film I couldn't understand their English, but it got better.
 - 11 _____ the restaurant was empty, but a few customers arrived about 6.30. Then a large group came in at about seven, followed by several more smaller groups. _____, it was almost full and really busy.

**TEST YOURSELF**

B Fixed phrases

Did you like London when you went there?

How many people came?

What are Liam and Yasmin doing **at the moment**?

Did you know Ellie **at university**?

Is Ethan here?

Were you late?

When will you finish painting the house?

Is Xav working now?

~ I don't remember. I was only 8 **at the time**.

~ **At least** 25.

~ I think they're **on holiday**.

~ Yes, we were there **at the same time**.

~ Yes, but he's **on the phone**.

~ No, I'm always **on time**.

~ Oh, **by the end of** the week.

~ No. **In fact**, he's **in hospital** with a broken leg.



SPOTLIGHT *at university, in hospital, etc.*

If you are **at university**, you are studying in a university.

If you are **at school**, you are a pupil/student.

If you are **in hospital**, there is something wrong with you and you must stay there.

If you are **in prison**, you have done something wrong/illegal and you must stay there for a period of time.

GLOSSARY

at the time	then: <i>I worked there in 2016. I was 24 at the time.</i>
at least	not less than
at the moment	now or around now: <i>I'm busy at the moment.</i> (NOT <i>in this moment</i>)
on holiday	not working/studying and often away from home
at the same time	used to say that two or more things happen together
on the phone	using the phone and speaking to sb ALSO on his/her phone (= mobile phone)
on time	not early or late
by the end of sth	not later than sth
in fact	used to say that sth is true (often the opposite of what sb says or thinks): <i>She looks English, but in fact, she's Spanish.</i> SYN actually

3 Make phrases using the words in the box.

least holiday university ✓ fact the same time the time
the phone the moment prison time hospital

AT ► university _____
ON _____
IN _____

4 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way.

- Is he at university? ~ No, he's still at school.
- 1 Did they arrive together? ~ Yes, _____.
- 2 Are they away? ~ Yes, they're _____.
- 3 What are you doing _____? ~ Now? Nothing. Why?
- 4 Is he ill? ~ Yes, he's _____.
- 5 Were there many people there? ~ _____ 50.
- 6 Were you late? ~ No, I was _____.
- 7 Is she still studying? ~ Yes, she's _____.

5 Complete the sentences with a suitable phrase from above.

- I was on time, but Max was late, as usual.
- 1 We came here in 2012, but I was only nine _____.
- 2 My father has been _____ with a heart problem.
- 3 The hotel is quite expensive: a room is _____ \$200.
- 4 She's on holiday at the moment, but she'll be back _____ the week.
- 5 He's been _____ for two years for stealing money.
- 6 I know she looks Swedish, but _____ she's English.
- 7 My sister has been _____ for two years. She finishes at the end of next year.
- 8 He's always _____. He never stops sending texts.



TEST YOURSELF

22 Word + preposition

A Verb or adjective + preposition

You will find the meaning of some of the verbs and adjectives in this unit in other parts of the book. Use the **APP** to help if you are not sure of the meaning.

Questionnaire

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR FAMILY

- Do you still **live with** your parents?
Do you still **depend on** your parents?
Do you ever **ask them for** money?
Do you usually **agree with** your parents?
Do you **spend** a lot of money **on** clothes?
Do you **care about** making money?
Do you always **thank** people **for** presents?
What are you **interested in**?
What are you **good at**?
Do you get **bored with** things quickly?

GLOSSARY

depend on sb/sth	need sb or sth
agree with sb	have the same view or opinion as sb (NOT <i>I'm agree</i> .) OPP disagree with sb
spend money (on sth) pt spent	pay money for sth
care about sb/sth	think that sb or sth is important
thank sb (for sth)	tell sb you are pleased or happy because they gave you sth or helped you
present	sth that you give to sb or get from sb SYN gift

SPOTLIGHT preposition + -ing form

A preposition can be followed by a noun or an **-ing form**.

- I'm **good at** maths. ▪ I'm **interested in** art.
- I'm **good at** drawing. ▪ I'm **interested in** learning languages.

1 Correct the mistakes.

- I spend a lot of money ~~in~~ food. on
1 I'm good in playing chess. _____
2 We must stop now. ~ Yes, I'm agree. _____
3 My brother depends of me. _____
4 I am bored for my job: it's always the same. _____
5 Do you ask for money your parents? _____
6 Do you care at the clothes you wear? _____
7 I live by two friends - we have a flat together. _____
8 I'm not interested in speak other languages. _____

2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb or adjective.

- I'm not very good at English. I make lots of mistakes.
1 I must _____ my aunt for the _____ she gave me for my birthday.
2 My boss is great. He really _____ about his workers and wants them to do well.
3 He's new in the job so he still _____ on other people for help and advice.
4 I _____ \$500 on a new tablet.
5 I know you used to take lots of photos. Are you still _____ in photography?
6 If you can't do this, why don't you _____ the teacher for help?

3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- She spent all her money on that computer.
1 I quickly get bored _____ housework.
2 Did you ask them _____ help?
3 I'm not interested _____ cooking.
4 I forgot to thank him _____ helping me.
5 They all depend _____ Maxine for help.
6 My mother cares _____ other people.
7 Why are you so good _____ maths?
8 Does she live _____ her family?
9 I disagree _____ the others - I think it's a wonderful book.

4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questionnaire above, or ask another student. Use the new vocabulary in your answers.

- I don't live with my parents because I'm married. I live with my wife.



TEST YOURSELF

B Verb + preposition

Read about Caroline, and some of the things she does and thinks.

I often **listen to** the radio in the morning.
I usually **hear about** things for the first time on social media.
When I **look at** people, I don't **notice** what they're wearing.
I like films that are **based on** true stories.
I like furniture **made of** wood.
I hate **waiting for** buses and trains, but don't like **paying for** taxis.
I haven't **applied for** a job yet.
I don't **think about** the future very much.



GLOSSARY

hear about sth	If you hear about sth, sb tells you sth or you read about it.
notice	see or pay attention to sb or sth
base sth on sth	make sth using another thing as the beginning: <i>We based the book on her diaries and letters.</i> <i>The book is based on her letters and diaries.</i>
apply for sth	write to ask for sth, e.g. for a job

SPOTLIGHT *think about and think of*

- I always **think about** my grandmother when I see that photo. = I have thoughts about her in my head.
- What did you **think of** the film? = What was your opinion of the film?

5 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|-------|-----------------------------------|
| ▶ Have you listened to | ..... | a the photo I sent you? |
| 1 Did you apply for | ..... | b the new TV yet? |
| 2 Have you looked at | ..... | c their new song? ✓ |
| 3 Are you waiting for | ..... | d leather? |
| 4 Have you paid for | ..... | e somebody to phone you? |
| 5 Did you base your story on | ..... | f the job? |
| 6 Is the coat made of | ..... | g something that happened to you? |

6 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ I wasn't listening <u>to</u> her. | 5 Is the film based <u>on</u> a book? |
| 1 What are you looking <u>at</u> ? | 6 Who are you waiting <u>for</u> ? |
| 2 Who paid <u>for</u> the meal? | 7 How did you hear <u>about</u> the party? |
| 3 Did you apply <u>for</u> a place on the course? | 8 What did you think <u>of</u> the book? |
| 4 Why are you thinking <u>about</u> Ali? | 9 I think this is made <u>of</u> plastic. |

7 Complete the sentences with the correct verb.

- ▶ I'm thinking about the weather. Is it warm enough to go swimming?
- 1 My story is based on something I read in the newspaper.
- 2 Have you heard about Marta? She's getting married.
- 3 The food was free, but we had to pay for drinks.
- 4 I've just seen Mia, and I noticed that she had a new hairstyle. It's very short.
- 5 I don't know why she applied for that job – it isn't very interesting.
- 6 I liked the film. What did you think of it?

8 ABOUT YOU Look at the sentences at the top of the page. Are they true for you? Write your answers or ask another student. Use the new vocabulary in your answers.

- ▶ I never listen to the radio. In the morning I sometimes listen to music on my phone.



TEST YOURSELF

23 Routines

A Weekdays (Monday to Friday)

What's your daily routine?



I wake up at 7.00.
I get up immediately.



I have a shower.



I get dressed.



I have breakfast.



I usually leave home
at 8.00.



I get to work/arrive
at work at 8.30.



I finish work/
go home at 5.00.



I have dinner at 8.00.



I normally go to bed
at about 11.30.



I sleep about seven
hours a night.

GLOSSARY

daily	happening every day
routine	your usual way of doing things
wake up	stop sleeping
immediately	now, without waiting
have + meal	e.g. <i>have breakfast, have lunch, have dinner</i>
usually	most often SYN normally

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

▶ get dressed / get up

D

1 I go home at 6.00. / I leave home at 6.00.

4 I get up immediately. / I get up daily.

2 I have lunch at 1.00. / I eat lunch at 1.00.

5 We usually leave / We normally leave at 7.00.

3 He finishes work early. / He gets to work early.

6 Do you wake up early? / Do you get up early?

2 A word is missing in each line. What is it and where does it go? Write it after the sentence.

▶ I normally / up at 6.30.

wake

5 I work and go home at 6.00.

1 I usually get immediately.

6 I dinner with my family.

2 I have a before breakfast.

7 I go bed when I'm tired.

3 I get after my shower.

8 I usually six hours a night.

4 I at work before 8.30.

9 My daily is what I do every day.

3 Complete the questions with the correct verb.

▶ What time do you usually wake up in the morning?

ABOUT YOU

I usually wake up early, at 6.00.

1 Do you _____ dressed before or after breakfast?

2 Do you _____ a shower in the morning?

3 Where do you usually _____ breakfast?

4 What time do you _____ home in the morning?

5 What time do you _____ school/university/work?

6 Who do you have _____ with in the evening?

7 What time do you normally _____ to bed?

8 How many hours a night do you _____?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Weekends (Saturdays and Sundays)

During the week I usually stay in after school and study, watch TV, or just talk to my family. Once or twice a week, my boyfriend comes round and we have dinner together or play video games. But at the weekend, I go out a lot more. On Saturday morning, I usually go shopping with a friend, and then my boyfriend and I go out in the evening. Sometimes we go to the cinema or a concert. On Sundays, I always get up late. We often go for a walk, and in the summer we play tennis or go for a swim.



GLOSSARY

during the week	from Monday to Friday
stay in	stay at home OPP go out
once a week	one time in every week
twice a week	two times in every week
come round	visit sb at their home
at the weekend	on Saturday and Sunday
go shopping	go to the shops to buy clothes, books, etc.
ALSO do the shopping	buy food
late <i>adv</i>	after the usual time late <i>adj</i> OPP early
go for a walk/swim	have a short walk/swim to enjoy yourself
play tennis	(see picture)

SPOTLIGHT adverbs of frequency

100% **always** usually/normally often sometimes never 0%

These adverbs go before the main verb, e.g. *get up*, but after **be**, modals, e.g. *can*, *will*, and auxiliaries, e.g. *does*, *doesn't*.

- I **always** get up early on Saturdays.
- Do you **often** go out in the evening?
- He **can** **sometimes** meet his friends on Fridays
- I'm **never** late for school.

5 Write the words in the correct order.

- ▶ twice / John / a / see / I / week I see John twice a week
- 1 shopping / do / the / do / often / you _____?
- 2 school / never / late / is / he / for _____?
- 3 early / up / we / tennis / get / play / sometimes / and _____?
- 4 weekend / at / shopping / the / you / always / do / go _____?
- 5 the / goes / during / often / out / week / Martha _____?
- 6 week / or / sister / a / once / see / my / I / twice _____?

6 Complete the phrases with one word.

- ▶ go _____ out = go to the cinema, a restaurant, etc.
- 1 not go out = _____ in
- 2 buy clothes, books, etc. = _____ shopping
- 3 have a game of tennis = _____ tennis
- 4 have a short walk = _____ for a walk
- 5 buy food = _____ the shopping
- 6 on Saturday and Sunday = _____ the weekend
- 7 from Monday to Friday = _____ the week
- 8 on Tuesdays only = _____ a week
- 9 on Mondays and Fridays only = _____ a week

7 ABOUT YOU True or false? Write T or F. If a sentence is false, change the word in bold to make it true.

- ▶ I **often** get to work or school late. F - I never get to school late.
- 1 I **always** play tennis in the summer. _____
- 2 In my family, I **never** do the shopping. _____
- 3 I **often** go for a long walk during the week. _____
- 4 I **sometimes** play video games at the weekend. _____
- 5 I **never** have dinner with my family. _____
- 6 **During the week**, I go out a lot in the evenings. _____
- 7 I like to get up **early** at the weekend. _____
- 8 I **often** go shopping with a friend. _____

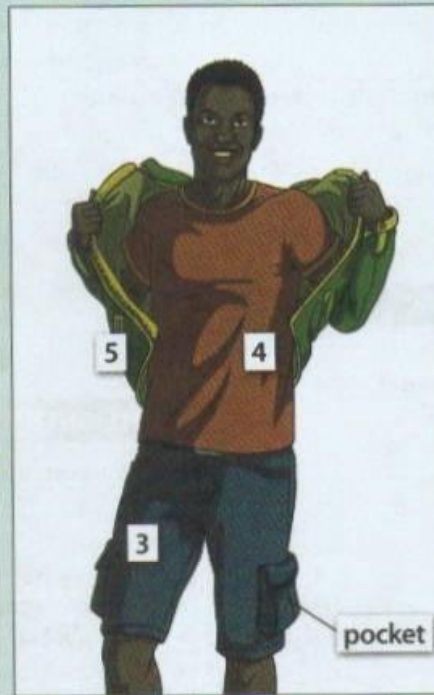


TEST YOURSELF

24 Clothes



Milla



Enzo

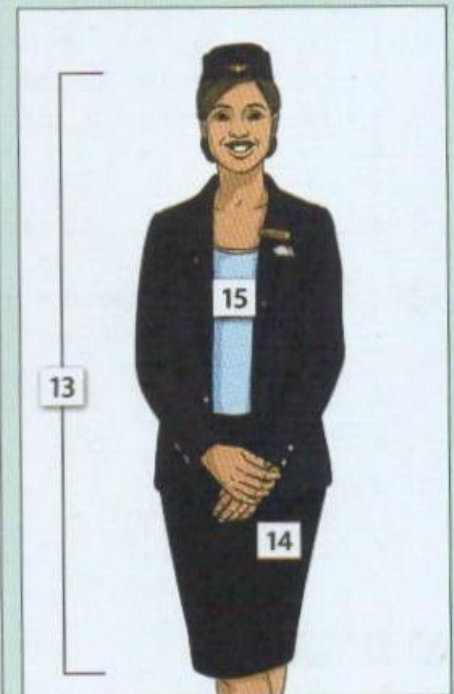


Osman

- 1 dress
- 2 coat
- 3 shorts
- 4 T-shirt
- 5 jacket
- 6 suit
- 7 trousers
- 8 jacket
- 9 shirt
- 10 tie
- 11 jeans
- 12 jumper/sweater
- 13 uniform
- 14 skirt
- 15 top



Kim



Megan

These are all items of clothing.

GLOSSARY

clothes

things like *trousers*, *shirts* and *coats* that you wear to cover your body

item of clothing

a thing that you wear, e.g. *a skirt*, *a tie*

wear pt wore pp worn

have clothes on your body

put sth on

take clothes and wear them: **Put on** your shoes. **Put** your coat **on**. **OPP take sth off**

uniform

the special clothes that everybody in the same job, school, etc. wears

1 Complete the words.

▶ su i t

1 j_____t

2 t_____s

3 j_____r

4 b_____n

5 c_____t

6 T-_____t

7 d_____s

8 p_____t

9 j_____s

10 t_____

11 sh_____t

12 sk_____t

13 sh_____s

14 sw_____t_r

2 Look at the pictures on page 54 and answer the questions.

▶ Who's wearing jeans and a jumper? Kim

1 Who's wearing a uniform?

2 Who's wearing shorts?

3 Who's wearing a suit?

4 Who's wearing a dress?

5 Who's wearing a skirt and top?

6 Who's taking off a jacket?

7 Who's putting a coat on?

8 Who's putting on a tie?

9 Who isn't wearing trousers?

10 Who's wearing a jumper?

11 Who's wearing a jacket with pockets?




12 Who's wearing an item of clothing with buttons?

13 Who's wearing three items of clothing?

14 Is anybody taking a coat off?

3 Put the words in the correct column.

jacket ✓ top suit trousers skirt shorts dress jeans tie T-shirt coat shirt jumper uniform

 WHOLE BODY	 ABOVE THE WAIST	 BELOW THE WAIST
	jacket	

4 Circle the correct word or words. Be careful: more than one answer may be correct.

▶ You wear shorts / a jacket / a jumper on a hot day.

1 Men don't usually wear skirts / dresses / suits.

2 When you go out, you take your coat off / put your coat on.


3 Women often wear ties / trousers / jeans.

4 You take your coat off when it's cold / hot.

5 Police officers usually wear jeans / a uniform at work.

6 A top is an item of clothing / a dress / a uniform.

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the  to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ clothes / top D

1 wear / jeans

2 skirt / shirt

3 uniform / clothes

4 tie / item

5 jumper / uniform

6 clothing / coat

7 jumper / put on

8 suit / uniform

9 jacket / take off

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What are you wearing today?

2 What did you wear yesterday?

3 Do you wear the same clothes at the weekend? If not, what is different?

4 What do you usually wear to parties?

5 Have you ever worn a uniform? If so, what was it for?



TEST YOURSELF

25 Accessories



scarf (pl scarves)



hat



belt



handbag



umbrella



watch



a pair of shoes



a pair of boots



trainers



socks



tights



glasses



sunglasses



gloves



some jewellery



rings



necklace

GLOSSARY

accessory	(usually <i>pl</i>) a thing you carry or wear with clothes, e.g. <i>a watch, a bag, a belt</i>
wear	You wear items of clothing, glasses or jewellery, e.g. <i>a scarf, sunglasses, a ring</i> .
carry	You carry a bag, a handbag or an umbrella.
gold	The <i>rings</i> in the picture are made of gold .
silver	The <i>necklace</i> is made of silver .
plastic	The <i>umbrella</i> is made of plastic .
leather	The <i>boots</i> are made of leather .

SPOTLIGHT plural nouns and pairs

Trousers, jeans, tights, clothes and **(sun)glasses** are always plural. They take a plural verb form.

■ *These **tights** are very warm.* (NOT *The tights is...*)

We use **a pair of** in two ways:

- two things of the same kind that we use together:
a pair of shoes/boots/trainers/socks/gloves, etc.
- a thing with two parts that are together:
a pair of glasses/sunglasses a pair of tights

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- You can wear a watch. T
- 1 Jewellery is often made of gold or silver.
- 2 Glasses are made of leather.
- 3 You can wear a belt.
- 4 You can wear an umbrella on your shoulder.
- 5 You can carry a handbag on your arm or shoulder.
- 6 A necklace can be made of plastic.
- 7 A pair of tights has two parts called *legs*.
- 8 Most people wear a pair of scarves.

2 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

watch hat scarf socks belt ✓ glasses umbrella handbag ring boots tights

- You wear it round your waist. belt
- 1 You wear them inside your shoes.
- 2 You wear it on your head.
- 3 You wear it on your finger.
- 4 You wear them on your feet.
- 5 You wear them over your legs and feet.
- 6 You wear them on your nose.
- 7 You wear it round your neck.
- 8 You wear it on your wrist.
- 9 You carry it when it's raining.
- 10 You carry things in it.

3 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- hat / necklace D
- 1 watch / socks
- 2 tights / ring
- 3 boots / jewellery
- 4 gloves / gold
- hat / handbag S
- 5 scarf / sunglasses
- 6 leather / belt
- 7 pair / trainers
- 8 carry / plastic

4 Make the sentences singular if possible.

- Are these your boots? Is this your boot?
- 1 Give me the socks.
- 2 Where are my tights?
- 3 I've got two pairs of trainers.
- 4 Where are my gloves?
- 5 She's got my scarves.
- 6 Where are my shoes?
- 7 The jeans cost €30.
- 8 I don't like these sunglasses.
- Her glasses are nice. Not possible

5 Label the pictures. Use a pair of where possible.

	► a pair of leather shoes		.....		.....
		
		

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Which accessories do you always wear?
- 2 Which accessories do you never wear?
- 3 Do you wear trainers a lot? If you don't, what do you wear?
- 4 Do you wear glasses or sunglasses? Why?
- 5 When do you wear: jewellery? a watch? a hat? a scarf?



TEST YOURSELF

26 Colours, size and appearance

A Colours and adjectives

- 1 long
- 2 short
- 3 large/big
- 4 small/little
- 5 cheap
- 6 expensive
- 7 comfortable
- 8 uncomfortable



Colours



white



cream



yellow



green



blue



dark blue



light blue



black



grey



red



orange



brown



purple



pink

SPOTLIGHT order of adjectives

Adjectives describing size or opinion go before colour adjectives.

- We say a **big blue umbrella** (NOT a blue big umbrella)
- **large brown eyes** ■ a **cheap black suit**

1 Find the end of each word.

red/green/pink/purple/orange/grey/dark blue/cream/brown/light blue/black/yellow/white

2 Write your answers.

- ▶ Red and yellow together make orange.
- 1 Red and blue together make _____.
- 2 White and blue together make _____.
- 3 Blue and yellow together make _____.
- 4 Red and white together make _____.
- 5 Black and white together make _____.
- 6 Black and blue together make _____.
- 7 Red and green together make _____.
- 8 Yellow and white together make _____.
- 9 Blue, yellow and purple are all _____.

3 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ My handbag's very large / small, so I can put lots in it.
- 1 I like these trainers, but they're very comfortable / uncomfortable.
- 2 I haven't got much money, so I don't wear cheap / expensive clothes.
- 3 He's only seven years old, so just buy him a small / large T-shirt.
- 4 You need your long / short coat today – it's really cold.
- 5 The good thing about the school café is that it's cheap / expensive.
- 6 You need comfortable / uncomfortable clothes when you are travelling.

4 Look at the pictures at the top of the page and describe the clothes and accessories.

- ▶ a cheap grey tie
- 1 a s skirt
- 2 a c shoes
- 3 a l handbag
- 4 a l skirt
- 5 a u shoes
- 6 an e tie
- 7 a s handbag



TEST YOURSELF

B Size and appearance

What size are you?
What size do you take?

I'm a (size) 12.
I take size 40.

Is it OK?

No, it's the **wrong** size.
It doesn't **fit**.

Yes, it's the **right** size.
It **fits** well.

What's the matter?

It's **too** long / **too** big. 😞

It looks nice/lovely/great. 😊

Do you like it?

It looks awful/terrible. 😞

Yes, I like the **style**.



SPOTLIGHT *too* and *very*

There is a difference in meaning between **too** and **very**.

- Her coat is **very** long. (But maybe it's OK.)
- Her coat is **too** long. (It's not OK.)
- These trousers are **very** expensive, but I'm going to buy them.
- These boots are **too** small – I can't wear them.

GLOSSARY

appearance	the way that sb or sth looks
look	If sth looks good, you think it's good.
nice	good
lovely	very good SYN great
awful	very bad SYN terrible
style	the shape, colour and way sth is

5 Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

► It looks terrible. / It looks nice. D

1 It fits. / It's the right size.

2 It looks great. / It looks lovely.

3 They're the right size. / They don't fit.

4 I like the style. / It looks awful.

5 They're too big. / They don't fit.

6 What size does he take? / What size is he?

7 They're very short. / They're too short.

8 It's the wrong size. / It doesn't fit.

6 Complete the dialogues.

1 What **size** are you? ~ I **size** 34.

2 What do you think of these trousers? ~ I like the **style** – they're very nice.

3 Is the shirt OK for you? ~ I'm sorry. It's the **wrong** size.

4 What size do you **take**? ~ 42.

5 Is that top comfortable? ~ No, it doesn't **fit**. It's **too** small.

6 What do you think of these jeans? ~ Oh, they **look** terrible. Don't buy them.

7 Are the shoes OK for you? ~ I take **size** 40, but these are **too** small.

8 That suit looks **great**! ~ Yes, it's **very**, isn't it? I'm going to buy it.

9 Did this jumper **fit**? ~ No, it was **too** big for me.

10 Do you like the trousers? ~ Yes, and they're also the **right** size.

11 Christa thinks about her **style** a lot. ~ Well, she's a teenager. That's normal.



TEST YOURSELF

27 Money

A Money in shops

You go into a shop to **buy** three books. They **cost** £9.50 **each**, so a **total** of £28.50. You think you have some **cash** (**notes** and **coins**) in your **wallet**, but when you look, you haven't got **enough** money with you to **pay** in **cash**, so you **pay** by **card**.

GLOSSARY

buy <i>pt bought</i>	give money to get sth
cost <i>pt cost</i>	How much does it cost ? = How much is it?
(£9.50) each	(£9.50) for one
total	the number you have when you add everything together
enough	(sounds like <i>stuff</i>) as much or as many as you need
pay <i>pt paid</i>	give sb money for sth. You pay in cash , but pay by debit/credit card .
debit card	If you use a debit card , the money comes out of your bank account (where you put money in and take it out).
credit card	A credit card is a bank card you use to buy sth and pay for it later.

SPOTLIGHT amounts of money

£10.99	ten pounds ninety-nine (<i>pence</i>) / ten ninety-nine
€5.30	five euros thirty (<i>cents</i>) / five thirty
■ a one- pound coin	■ a ten- dollar note (NOT a ten-dollars note)



cash



notes



coins



debit card



wallet



purses

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ You can pay for things in cash or by credit or debit card. **T**
- 1 If you pay in cash, you use coins and notes.
- 2 If you buy two things for £30 each, the total is £30.
- 3 If a cake costs \$5 and you have a ten-dollar note, you haven't got enough.
- 4 You can put a debit card in a wallet.
- 5 Things cost more if you pay in cash.
- 6 When you pay by debit card, the money comes from your bank account.
- 7 The past tense of cost is cost.

2 Complete the sentences using a word from the box.

cost coins cash enough -dollar purse total dollars credit card bought ✓ each

- ▶ She **bought** a new car yesterday.
- 1 I paid in
- 2 I put the notes in my
- 3 I paid by
- 4 I've got a few notes and
- 5 The ticket €50.
- 6 I need a ten note.
- 7 It cost five twenty.
- 8 That's a of £100.
- 9 Have you got money?
- 10 The peaches cost 50c

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Do you always have a lot of cash with you? Why? / Why not?
- 2 Where do you keep your money when you go out?
- 3 Do you have enough money with you today to buy a coffee? A book? Some jewellery?
- 4 Do you pay at the supermarket in cash or by debit/credit card?



TEST YOURSELF

B Money in adverts



Sell your car
for a great **price**
on eSellers.com!



Spend £50
on food and get
a **FREE** drink.



Pay your gas **bill**
online and **save** £40.

Earn \$30 an hour
in your own home.

☎ RING 0990 557731

Win cash
and **prizes!**
CALL US TODAY.



SALE
all products
50% off

GLOSSARY

sell <i>pt sold</i>	give sth to sb who pays you money for it OPP buy
price	the money you have to pay for sth
spend money (on sth) <i>pt spent</i>	pay money for sth
free	If sth is free , you don't pay for it.
bill	a piece of paper which shows how much you must pay
online	on the internet
save	If you save £40 on a bill, you pay £40 less.
earn	get money by working
win <i>pt won</i>	get money or a prize, often because you are better than others or lucky
prize	sth that you give to a person who wins a game, race, etc.
sale	a time when a shop sells sth for less money than usual
product	sth that people make or grow to sell
(50%) off	50% (= 50 per cent) taken off the normal price

4 Circle the correct answer.

► They're going to sell a new product / price.

1 What's the **price** / **bill** of these shoes?

2 I don't **spend** / **buy** a lot on food.

3 I bought ten boxes and **earned** / **saved** £3.

4 I **won** / **earned** £100 in a card game.

5 The **prize** / **price** of the classes was \$400.

6 I bought this table **online** / **free**.

7 Doctors can **win** / **earn** a lot of money.

8 I **bought** / **sold** my old car and got a new one.

9 She paid the restaurant **bill** / **price**.

10 The shoes are 15% **out** / **off**.

5 Cover the glossary and write the past simple forms.

► pay paid

1 buy

3 sell

5 win

2 spend

4 earn

6 save

6 Complete the questions with a word from the glossary.

► How much do you spend on food every week?

1 Do you ever shop?

2 Do you pay restaurant in cash?

3 Is water in restaurants?

4 What's the of a litre of milk?

5 Do you often buy things cheaper in a?

6 Do women more than men?

7 What kind of do men buy a lot?

8 Have you ever won a?

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

28 Shopping

A Places

PLACES	WHAT THEY SELL
shopping centre	everything
department store	everything (e.g. clothes, furniture, books, etc.) except food
supermarket	food, drinks, soap, cleaning products, etc.
chemist's/pharmacy	medicine, soap
baker's	bread and cakes
electrical store	TVs, computers, coffee machines, etc.
toy shop	dolls, model aeroplanes, building blocks
gift shop	T-shirts, toys, cups, etc.

toys



GLOSSARY

everything	all things
except	but not; not including
medicine	special liquids and pills to make you get better when you are ill
gift	sth that you give to or get from sb SYN present
toy	a thing for a child to play with

SPOTLIGHT noun + shop

For many shops, we often use a **noun + shop**, e.g. a shop where you buy books is a **bookshop**. ALSO **shoe shop**, **clothes shop**, **furniture shop**, **music shop** (for CDs, etc.), **fruit and vegetable shop**, etc.

1 Correct any spelling mistakes.

- furnishure shop furniture
 1 cemist's _____
 2 farmacy _____

- 3 departement store _____
 4 shoping centre _____
 5 medecine _____

- 6 cloths shop _____
 7 pressent _____
 8 elektrical store _____

2 Underline the stressed part of the word. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- shopping centre bookshop department store clothes shop pharmacy
 supermarket electrical store furniture shop everything medicine except

3 Cross out the one wrong answer.

- I got the vegetables from the ...
 a) supermarket
 b) ~~baker's~~
 c) fruit and vegetable shop
 1 I got the medicine from the ...
 a) chemist's
 b) toy shop
 c) pharmacy
 2 I got these jeans from the ...
 a) department store
 b) gift shop
 c) clothes shop
 3 I got these boots from the ...
 a) shoe shop
 b) department store
 c) furniture shop
 4 I got Gemma's present from the ...
 a) bookshop
 b) fruit and vegetable shop
 c) gift shop
 5 I got this coffee machine from the ...
 a) shopping centre
 b) electrical store
 c) music shop
 6 I got the bread from the ...
 a) baker's
 b) shopping centre
 c) chemist's

4 Where can you buy the following things? More than one answer is possible.

A shop where you can buy ...

- sugar, rice and soap: a supermarket
 1 cakes and bread: _____
 2 something for a child to play with: _____
 3 something for somebody's birthday: _____
 4 a CD: _____
 5 medicine: _____
 6 new shoes: _____
 7 a chair and a bed: _____
 8 trousers and a shirt: _____
 9 a TV and a fridge: _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Why go shopping?

Why go shopping?

A lot of people **shop online**, but sometimes they **prefer to** go shopping. Here's why:

- In the shops, you can **touch** and feel things, like clothes, and **try them on**.
- You can **choose particular** items, like fresh fruit or fish.
- You can see and **compare** the **quality** of items.
- You get a more **personal service** from a shop assistant than you do online.
- Often shops **reduce** the prices of items in the **sales**, which is very popular.

GLOSSARY

online	using a computer or the internet shop online
prefer	like one thing or person better than another: <i>Would you prefer juice or water?</i> <i>I prefer to buy fruit in a shop.</i>
touch	(sounds like <i>much</i>) put your hand or finger on sth or sb
try sth on	put sth on to see if you like it and it is the right size: <i>I tried the shoes on, but they were too small.</i>
choose	decide which thing you want choice n
particular	one only, and not any other: <i>She eats a particular kind of bread.</i>
compare	think about or look at things together so that you can see how they are different
quality	how good or bad sth is
service	the work that sb does for customers in a shop, restaurant, etc. serve v ; personal service service for one person
reduce	make sth smaller or less
sale(s)	a time when a shop sells things for less money than usual

5 Underline the correct word or phrase.

- good / big quality
- 1 compare two things / a choice
- 2 prefer to / or go home
- 3 try the shoes / the shoes on
- 4 a choice of two things / shop online
- 5 person / personal service
- 6 shop the sales / online
- 7 a particular shop / sales
- 8 reduce the sales / the price
- 9 touch the sky / somebody's face

6 Match 1-8 with a-h.

- They gave more choice f
- 1 He tried the coat on
- 2 She reduced the price for me
- 3 We compared the prices
- 4 The shop assistant had to
- 5 The quality of clothes was terrible
- 6 I touched the jacket
- 7 I shop online
- a so I was very happy.
- b and it felt very nice.
- c when I can't find what I want in the shops.
- d but it was too small.
- e so I didn't buy anything.
- f to their customers. ✓
- g serve three customers at the same time.
- h and bought the cheapest chair.

7 ABOUT YOU Complete the words in the questions.

- 1 Do you p..... supermarkets or small shops?
- 2 Is it easy for you to c..... clothes in shops?
- 3 Is good s..... in shops very important to you?
- 4 Is there a p..... kind of shoe that you wear?
- 5 When you buy new clothes, do you always t..... them?
- 6 Do you prefer to go to the shops, or shop o.....?
- 7 What time of year are the s..... in your country?
- 8 Do you like to t..... and feel things before you buy them?

8 Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

A Family possessions



One of my favourite possessions is a **diary**¹ that **belonged** to my aunt.



A **recording**⁵ of my grandmother's voice. She was quite a famous singer. It has very happy **memories** for me.



My grandfather's old **camera**². I've also got some of his old **tools**³. I had his **gun**, but I haven't got it any more – I gave it to a museum.



A book of my mother's **recipes**⁴. I use it a lot.

GLOSSARY

possessions	the things that you have or own
belong to sb	That book belongs to me. = It is my book.
gun	a weapon that shoots out pieces of metal to kill or hurt people or animals
(not) any more	used at the end of negative sentences and questions to mean 'now'
recording	sounds on CD, video or film
voice	the sounds that you make when you speak or sing
memory	sth that you remember

- 1 These words all have the same weak sound in them, as in *important*, *remember* and *comfortable*. **Underline** the sound in these words. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

► family 1 recipe 2 memory 3 diary 4 camera 5 possession

- 2 Write the name of the possession that matches the definition.

- You use this when you do a special job with your hands. a tool
- 1 You take photos with this. _____ 5 You use this when you're singing or talking. _____
- 2 You read these when you're cooking. _____ 6 You write what you're going to do in this. _____
- 3 things that belong to you _____ 7 sounds on a computer file, CD, etc. _____
- 4 This can kill people or animals. _____ 8 something that you remember _____

- 3 Complete the dialogues.

- Do you know the date of the party? ~ Yes, I wrote it in my diary.
- 1 Do you still sing? ~ I did a few years ago, but I don't.
- 2 How are you going to cut that wood? ~ I have a special _____ for it.
- 3 How did you make that pasta dish? ~ I used a _____ from my Italian cookbook.
- 4 Have you still got that photo of grandfather? ~ Yes, it brings back happy _____.
- 5 That man looks very dangerous. ~ Yes! He's got a _____!
- 6 I can't hear what she's saying. ~ No, she's got a very quiet _____.
- 7 Whose car is that? ~ It _____ to my brother.
- 8 You love that old diary of grandmother's. ~ I do. It's one of my favourite _____.

- 4 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Have you got any important family possessions? If so, what are they? _____
- 2 Have you got happy memories of school? What did you like? _____
- 3 Do you use a camera, or do you use the camera on your phone? Why? _____
- 4 Have you got a recording of a family member's voice? If so, who and why? _____

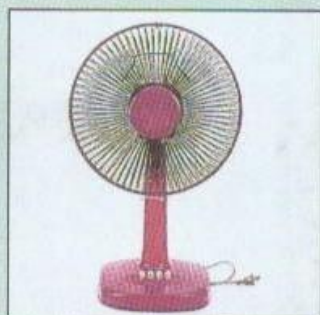


TEST YOURSELF

B Describing possessions



fan



electric fan



phone (ALSO telephone)




phone / mobile (phone)

A fan is an **unusual shape** and is used to make you cooler. It's made of **wood** and **material** or paper. There are also **electric fans**.

A mobile phone is a device made of **metal** and **plastic**. Modern phones are **flat** and thin. It has a lot of different **purposes** – a phone, an **alarm clock**, a **digital camera**, or a device for playing games.

GLOSSARY

unusual	If sth is unusual , you do not see it often or it does not happen often.
shape	A circle ○ and a square □ are two different shapes .
wood	Wood comes from trees.
material	cloth you use for making clothes, curtains, etc.
device	a piece of equipment you use for doing a special job
metal	Gold, silver and iron are types of metal .

plastic	an artificial substance that is used for making many different things, e.g. plastic flowers , plastic cups
flat	thin and wide and with no parts higher than the rest
purpose	the reason for doing sth
alarm clock	a clock that makes a noise to wake you up
digital	this is a digital clock —  ALSO digital camera/TV

5 True or false? Write T or F.

- Chairs are often made of wood. T
- 1 Clothes are often made of plastic.
- 2 Trousers are made of material.
- 3 A digital television is flat.
- 4 An alarm clock is often made of material.
- 5 A circle and a square are different shapes.

- 6 The purpose tells you why you are doing something.
- 7 If something is unusual, it's normal.
- 8 An electric fan is useful if it's very cold.
- 9 Mobile phones and digital cameras are devices.

6 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- The / of that big electric fan is to make the room cooler. purpose
- 1 I use my mobile as an clock in the mornings.
- 2 My desk is made of and is very old.
- 3 What is the table? ~ I think it's round.
- 4 He's got a very alarm clock – it's made of wood.
- 5 The garden chairs are made of white and they're very hard.
- 6 A computer is made of and plastic.
- 7 What do you call the that turns the TV on and off?

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

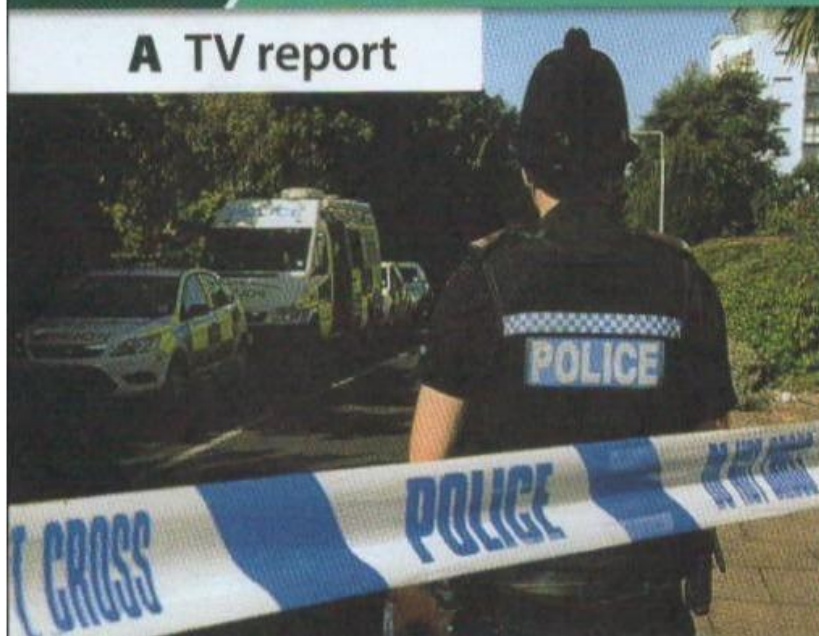
- 1 What shape is the table in your living room / dining room?
- 2 Do you use the alarm clock on your mobile phone?
- 3 What can you see in front of you that is made of wood? Plastic? Metal?
- 4 Have you got a digital TV?
- 5 Do you ever use a fan or an electric fan?



TEST YOURSELF

30 Crime

A TV report



Police have **found** the **body** of a 19-year-old man in a park in East London. The **dead** body was **discovered** by a woman walking her dog early this morning. The police have not **named** the man, but there has been a **series** of **crimes** in the **area** in **recent** weeks. They think the man was **killed** and the **attack** was **planned**.

GLOSSARY

find <i>pt/pp found</i>	see or get sth after looking
body	the whole form of a person or animal
dead	not living OPP alive
discover	find or learn sth for the first time discovery <i>n</i>
name	tell people sb's name
series	a number of things of the same kind that come one after another; <i>a series of accidents</i>
crime	sth that sb does that is wrong and against the law, e.g. if you attack or kill sb. A person who does this is a criminal .
area	a part of a town, a country or the world
recent	that happened or began only a short time ago
kill	make sb die
attack	an act which is done to hurt sb or damage sth attack <i>v</i> : He attacked the man with a knife.
plan	decide what you are going to do and how you are going to do it plan <i>n</i>

1 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ The girl was alive. / The girl was a criminal.
- 1 They found the body. / They discovered the body.
- 2 The dog was dead. / The dog was alive.
- 3 They named him. / They said who he was.
- 4 He attacked someone. / He killed someone.

- D 5 It's a recent problem. / It's an old problem.
- 6 This is a nice area of town. / This is a nice part of town.
- 7 a series of crimes / a number of crimes
- 8 They planned the crime. / They discovered the crime.

2 Answer Yes or No.

- ▶ Does a person have a **body**? Yes
- 1 If someone is **dead**, can they speak?
- 2 Can a **body** be a dead person?
- 3 If you **kill** somebody, are they dead?
- 4 Do the police look for **criminals**?

- 5 If a crime was **recent**, was it a long time ago?
- 6 Is a **series** more than one?
- 7 If you **attack** somebody, are they happy?
- 8 If you **discover** something, have you lost it?

3 Complete the sentences.

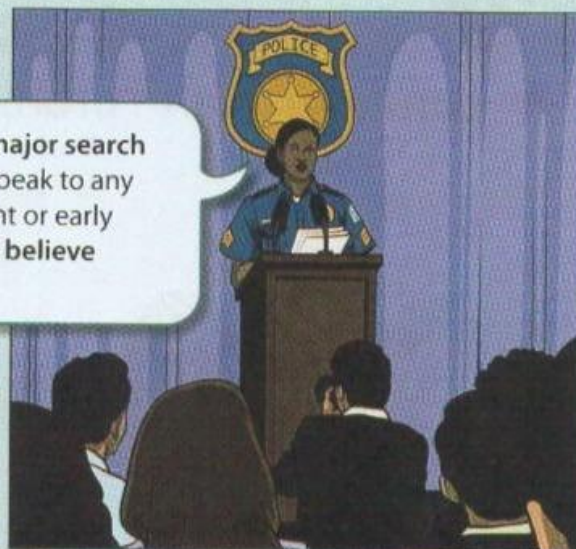
- ▶ There were purple marks on the body.
- 1 The police have a body in the woods outside town.
- 2 I never go there because it's a dangerous of town at night.
- 3 The woman was by the police as Josephine Smith.
- 4 Two men an old man in a bar, and he had to go to hospital.
- 5 The man died later in hospital but the police don't know who him.
- 6 The police are worried about the number of serious in the town.
- 7 There has been a of car accidents on that road.
- 8 The old man was still when they found him, and he was taken to hospital.



TEST YOURSELF

B Police statement

... We think the crime **happened late** last night, so a **major search** of the area is now **taking place** and we would like to speak to any **members of the public** who were in that area last night or early this morning. I would also like to **stress** that we do not **believe** there is any **danger** to the public.



GLOSSARY

statement	sth you say or write, which is often formal
late	near the end of a period of time: <i>He's in his late 20s</i> (= 27-29).
major	large or important
search	when you try to find sb or sth search v
member	sb who is part of a group or team
the public	people in general; everybody
stress	say sth strongly to show that it is important
believe	think that sth is true or possible
danger	the possibility that sth bad may happen: <i>You may be in danger if you are alone.</i> dangerous adj OPP safe

SPOTLIGHT *happen and take place*

These words have the same basic meaning, but **happen** usually describes something that is not planned:

- *How did the accident **happen**?*

Take place usually describes something that is planned:

- *The meeting **took place** yesterday evening.*

4 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ a member of the team / one person in the team S
- 1 a major problem / a small problem
- 2 They believe it's true. / They think it's true.
- 3 The place is dangerous. / The place is safe.
- 4 It was late last night. / It was early last night.
- 5 members of the public / members of the police
- 6 They're searching for him. / They're trying to find him.
- 7 They made a statement. / They made a decision.
- 8 It happens every year. / It takes place every year.

5 Complete the definitions.

- ▶ A statement is something you say or write.
- 1 If you search an area, you try to somebody or something.
- 2 A member is somebody who is part of a
- 3 If you stress something, you are saying it is
- 4 If you believe something is true, then you it is true.
- 5 The public are in general.
- 6 If something takes place, it

6 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Have the police spoken to anyone? ~ Yes, they're talking to the public now.
- 1 He's about 28, isn't he? ~ Yeah, he's in his 20s.
- 2 Have the police said anything? ~ Yes, they've made a formal
- 3 Is he safe? ~ No, he could be in
- 4 Have the police found anything? ~ No, but they're the area now.
- 5 Is it important? ~ Yes, it's a problem.
- 6 Do you think they'll find the boy? ~ Yes, I they will.
- 7 How did the fire ? ~ I think it was a cigarette that started it.
- 8 Are the police talking to people? ~ Yes, they're interviewing members of the



TEST YOURSELF

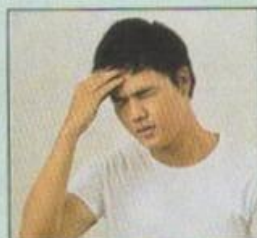
31 Illness

A Common health problems

What's the matter?

I don't feel well.

I've got ...



a headache



toothache



stomach ache



backache



a cold



a cough



(the) flu



a temperature



I feel sick.

GLOSSARY

common	If sth is common , it happens often.
health	If you are in good health , you are well, not often ill. healthy adj OPP unhealthy
a cold	a common illness of the nose and throat
(the) flu [U]	an illness like a very bad cold, and often with a temperature

SPOTLIGHT *be ill and be sick*

Ill means not well. An **illness** is a period of feeling ill.

■ *Rafa's not here today: he's ill. He didn't go to school because of illness.*

To **be sick** usually means to bring up food from your stomach (ALSO **vomit**). If you **feel sick**, you think you are going to **be sick**.

■ *I felt sick, so I ran to the bathroom. I was sick on the floor.*

1 Circle the correct answer.

► I'm / I've got a temperature.

1 What / What's the matter?

2 She feels / 's got a cold.

3 He doesn't feel / be well.

4 I feel / 've got toothache.

5 I've got headache / a headache.

6 Is / Has she got a temperature?

7 She's a healthy / health person.

8 I don't feel / be ill.

9 Do you feel / be sick?

10 A cold is a common / an often illness.

11 She is / 's got backache.

12 He's got flu / a flu.

13 I don't feel / haven't got a cough.

14 Does he feel / Has he got stomach ache?

2 Complete the sentences.

► I had to stand up for ten hours. Now I've got backache.

1 She smokes a lot, and now she's got a bad

~ Yes, and she doesn't do any exercise. She's very

2 He's got a . Look, it's 39 degrees.

3 What's the ? You look terrible.

~ I don't feel and I've got : I need to see a dentist.

4 I ate too much at lunch, and now I've got

5 My little boy had four ice creams and now he feels

6 I've got a temperature and a terrible headache. I think I've got

7 She's often ill. She's not in good

8 Flu is a horrible , and it's very in winter.

9 I don't think he's got flu. It's probably just a bad



TEST YOURSELF

B What should I do?



If you need **medical advice**, you **should** go to the **chemist's**.

Take some of those **tablets** to help you **rest** and sleep well.

You should **stay in bed** for a **couple** of days. You'll soon **get better**.

Have soup and hot drinks to **keep** you warm.

SPOTLIGHT *should + verb*

You use **should** when you tell people what you think is the best thing for them to do. **Should** is used for giving advice.

- I feel terrible. ~ You **should** go to bed.
- ~ You **shouldn't** go to work today.

GLOSSARY

weak	If you don't eat for a few days, you feel weak . OPP strong	advice	words you say that help sb decide what to do
catch an illness pt caught	get an illness, e.g. a cold, a virus	chemist's	a shop where you get medicine ALSO pharmacy
virus	a living thing that is too small to see but can make you ill. Flu is caused by a virus .	rest	relax, sleep or do nothing
medical	connected to doctors, hospitals and medicine	stay in bed	go to bed and not get up
		a couple	two or a small number: a couple of days/weeks , etc.
		get better	feel less ill SYN improve
		keep (warm)	stay (warm)

3 Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ illness / medical D

1 virus / advice

2 should / couple

3 weak / keep

4 couple / improve

5 catch / chemist's

6 advice / caught

4 True or false? Write T or F.

▶ If you stay in bed, you can rest. T

1 If you get better, you feel weaker.

2 A couple of weeks is about four weeks.

3 You can get tablets at the chemist's.

4 If you don't sleep for a week, you feel strong.

5 A chemist's is the same as a pharmacy.

6 A doctor can give you medical advice.

7 You shouldn't keep warm if you have flu.

8 If you stay in bed, you get up.

9 You shouldn't go to work if you have a virus.

10 If you start to improve, you get better.

5 Complete the text.

Last week, I got home from travelling around Europe and I felt really ill. I probably ▶ caught a virus on the plane. I (1) in bed for a (2) of days, but I didn't (3) I was worried, so I phoned my doctor to get some medical (4) She gave me the name of some (5) and told me I (6) go to the (7) and get some. She also said I had to stay in bed and (8) as much as possible. I had hot drinks to (9) me warm. I think I'm (10) better now, but I still feel quite (11)

Send



TEST YOURSELF



I **cut** my finger and there was a lot of blood!



I fell over and now I've got a terrible pain in my leg.



My arm really **hurts**. I hit it on the table.



I **burnt** my hand when I picked up the pan.



We were in a car **accident** and I **broke** my leg – my friend also had **serious injuries**. We've been put on **drugs** for the pain.

GLOSSARY

cut <i>pt cut</i>	(see picture) cut <i>n</i>	accident	sth bad that happens, but not because you planned it
pain (in your back, leg, etc.)	the feeling that you have in your body when you are hurt or ill	break <i>pt broke</i>	(see picture) broken <i>adj</i> : a broken arm, leg, etc.
hurt <i>pt hurt</i>	feel pain	serious	very bad
hit <i>pt hit</i>	touch sth very hard SYN knock	injury	A cut finger, a broken arm, etc. are injuries to your body.
burn <i>pt burnt/ burned</i>	(see picture)	drug	medicine you take to make you feel well again

SPOTLIGHT injuries

We say:

- I **cut** my finger. (NOT I cut the finger.)
- She **hurt** her knee. (NOT She hurt the knee.)
- I **burnt** my arm. (NOT I burnt the arm.)

1 Complete the sentences.

- Did he **break** his leg in the accident?
- I hit my shoulder on the door, and it really
 - She fell off her bike and has a small on her knee.
 - Dad was driving at night in the rain and had a bad
 - I fell and hurt my ankle and the pain is terrible. I think it's probably

- She's in hospital and they're giving her a lot of for the pain.
- Joe was in a terrible accident and had a really bad to his back.
- He went to the doctor because he had a terrible in his stomach.
- He had to go to hospital because he his hand with a bread knife.
- She had a car accident, but she's OK and it's not

2 Correct one mistake in each sentence.

- He's got a **break** arm. **broken**
- She had a pain on her arm.
 - He had a serious injury.
 - I hit my head at the door.
 - I knocked in my head on the wall.

- I burnt the mouth on the hot soup.
- She cutted her foot on the broken glass.
- My arm is hurt a lot.
- The doctor gave me some drogs for the pain.
- I broken a bone in my ankle.

3 Complete the questions.

- Have you ever had a arm or leg?
- Have you ever taken for pain?
- Do you ever have bad in your back?
- When did you last cut finger or hand?
- Have you ever your hand when you were cooking?

ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

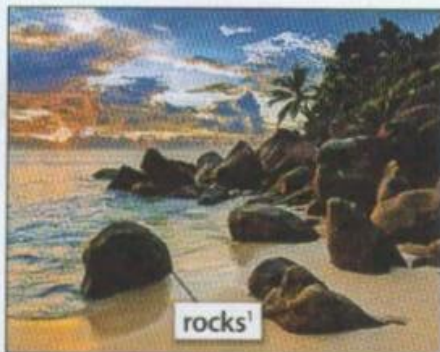
.....

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

ARE YOU GOOD at geography?



- 1 How many **islands** are there in the **world**?
1,000 / 2,000 / 3,000
- 2 Which is the largest **desert**?
the Gobi Desert / the Arabian Desert / the Sahara Desert
- 3 How old are the **rocks**¹ at the bottom of the Grand Canyon?
half a billion / a billion / two billion years old
- 4 Which is the **deepest** ocean?
the Atlantic Ocean / the Pacific Ocean / the Indian Ocean
- 5 Which **region** of the Earth has the largest area of **forest**?
Siberia in Russia / the Amazon in Brazil / Quebec in Canada
- 6 Is there **anywhere** on Earth where **humans** have never walked?
Yes, a few places. / No, **nowhere**.

GLOSSARY

island	a piece of land with water all around it
world	the Earth with all its countries and people
desert	a large, dry area of land, e.g. the Sahara
deep	Sth that is deep goes down a long way.
region	a part of a country or the world
forest	a large area of land covered by trees
human	a person human adj

SPOTLIGHT *somewhere, anywhere, nowhere, everywhere*

- Somewhere** means 'in or to a place', but you do not say or know where.
 ■ They are **somewhere** in the Sahara Desert.
- Anywhere** is used in questions and negative sentences.
 ■ Is there a house **anywhere** on the island? I can't see a house **anywhere**.
- Nowhere** means 'in no place'.
 ■ There is **nowhere** to stay in this region.
- Everywhere** means 'in every place'.
 ■ There are rocks **everywhere** on the beach.

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ▶ rock / everywhere <u>D</u> | 3 world / forest _____ | 6 somewhere / nowhere _____ |
| 1 desert / anywhere _____ | 4 desert / region _____ | 7 island / human _____ |
| 2 island / somewhere _____ | 5 desert / forest _____ | 8 human / nowhere _____ |

2 Write Yes or No.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ▶ Is the world bigger than the sun? <u>No</u> | |
| 1 Is Sicily an island ? _____ | 5 Are trees human ? _____ |
| 2 Does it rain a lot in the desert ? _____ | 6 Do you find rocks in the sea? _____ |
| 3 Are there trees in a forest ? _____ | 7 Is a river as deep as the middle of the sea? _____ |
| 4 Is a region the same as a country? _____ | 8 Is everywhere the same as somewhere ? _____ |

3 Complete the sentences with *anywhere/somewhere/nowhere/everywhere*.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ <u>Everywhere</u> in the world, there are good people and bad people. | |
| 1 Is there _____ in the forest where we can buy a coffee? | 5 There was _____ quiet in the forest; there were noises everywhere. |
| 2 Are there any seas in the desert?
~ No, _____ | 6 Ali is _____ in the forest, but I'm not sure where exactly. |
| 3 Are there any humans on the island?
~ Yes, they live _____ in the north. | 7 There isn't _____ in the region where humans live. |
| 4 The rocks are _____ under the water. I can see hundreds of them. | 8 The deepest river in the world is _____ in Africa, I think. |

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the quiz at the top of the page, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

34 The environment

A Environmental problems



Every year, we are **destroying** more and more forests. 15 billion trees are **disappearing** every year. As the world population **increases**, the **land** is being used to **build** cities, grow food and make furniture. This will be a **disaster** for **the environment** and will bring more **extreme** weather. **Governments** around the world need to work together to stop this disaster.

GLOSSARY

destroy	break sth completely so that you can't use it again or it is gone
disappear	If sth disappears , it goes away so that people can't see it.
increase	become bigger or more increase n
land	the part of the Earth that is not the sea
build pt/pp built	make sth by putting parts together: build houses
disaster	sth very bad that happens, and may hurt a lot of people
the environment	the air, water, land, animals, and plants around us environmental adj
extreme	very great or strong
government	The government is the group of people who control a country and decide what laws it will have.

1 Underline the stressed syllable. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ to increase 2 disaster 4 disappear
1 government 3 environment 5 destroy

2 Circle the correct word.

▶ Extreme weather is a disaster / land for growing food.

- The number of people in the world is **destroying** / **increasing**.
- Forests around the world are **building** / **disappearing**.
- The **government** / **environment** has to do something quickly.
- We need to **build** / **destroy** more cities for people to live in.
- Unfortunately, we are **increasing** / **destroying** more forests every year.
- People need **land** / **the environment** to build houses on.

3 Cover the glossary and complete the sentences.

- ▶ If you make something like a house or factory, you build it.
- If something gets bigger, it _____.
 - The people who are in control of a country are the _____.
 - Something very bad that happens and hurts people is a _____.
 - The place where people build homes or grow food is the _____.
 - The water, air, land, animals and plants are all the _____.
 - If something goes away and you can't see it any more, it _____.
 - If you break something and can't use it again, you _____ it.
 - In the desert, you can have _____ heat and cold.



TEST YOURSELF

B Talking about the environment



coal



petrol



electricity



gas

Word	Example	Meaning
source	<i>The forests are a source of wood.</i>	a place, person or thing that you get sth from
energy	<i>Coal, petrol, gas and electricity are all sources of energy.</i>	Energy comes from <i>gas, electricity, coal, petrol</i> , etc. and is used to make machines work and to make heat and light.
develop	<i>Scientists are developing cleaner ways to use coal.</i>	think of or produce a new idea or product, etc.
pollution	<i>There is a lot of pollution in rivers and oceans.</i>	the act of making the air, rivers, etc. dirty and dangerous
cause	<i>What is the cause of the oceans getting warmer?</i>	the thing or person that makes sth happen cause v
recycle	<i>If we recycle more, we help the environment because we don't make so many products from new materials.</i>	do sth to paper, glass, etc. so that they can be used again

4 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- polution pollution
 1 recicle _____
 2 energie _____

- 3 gaz _____
 4 cole _____
 5 petrole _____

- 6 elektricity _____
 7 develope _____
 8 cuase _____

5 True or false? Write T or F.

- You can't see electricity. T
 1 Pollution is a good thing. _____
 2 Smoking cigarettes causes illness. _____
 3 If you recycle something, you use it again. _____
 4 Coal is black and hard. _____
 5 You can see gas. _____
 6 You put petrol in cars. _____
 7 If you develop something, you destroy it. _____
 8 We use coal to get energy. _____
 9 Pollution is good for fish and animals. _____
 10 Humans are one cause of pollution. _____

6 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- We should recycle e
 1 Gas is a _____
 2 We need to develop _____
 3 We use electricity _____
 4 Pollution is the cause _____
 5 Coal is used to _____
 6 Petrol in cars causes _____
 a of serious illness.
 b a lot of pollution.
 c make a fire.
 d new types of energy.
 e more bottles. ✓
 f source of energy.
 g to keep our houses warm.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 In your home, what type of energy do you use? _____
 2 In your country, which is more expensive: gas, electricity or coal? _____
 3 Is there a lot of air pollution where you live? _____
 4 What causes pollution in your home town? _____
 5 Do you recycle a lot? If so, what do you recycle? _____



TEST YOURSELF

Where are you from?

Where do you come from?

Continents and areas in the world	Country <i>I'm from / I come from ...</i>	Nationality (and language) <i>I'm ...</i>
Europe	the Czech Republic	Czech
	France	French
	Germany	German
	Greece	Greek
	Hungary	Hungarian
	Italy	Italian
	Poland	Polish
	Portugal	Portuguese
	Russia	Russian
	Spain	Spanish
	Switzerland	Swiss (German, French, Italian)
	Turkey	Turkish
Asia	India	Indian (Hindi)
	China	Chinese
	Japan	Japanese
	South Korea	Korean
	Thailand	Thai
North America	Canada	Canadian (English, French)
	the United States (of America)	American (English)
Central America ALSO Latin America	Mexico	Mexican (Spanish)
South America ALSO Latin America	Argentina	Argentinian (Spanish)
	Brazil	Brazilian (Portuguese)
Africa and the Middle East	Egypt	Egyptian (Arabic)
	Saudi Arabia	Saudi (Arabic)
Australia	Australia	Australian (English)

The word for the language and the word for the nationality are usually the same word, e.g. *Czech*.

Jana is Czech. Do you speak Czech?

Sometimes they are different, e.g. people from *Mexico* are *Mexican*, but the language they speak is *Spanish*. Countries, nationalities and languages begin with capital letters: *Japan* (NOT *japan*).



GLOSSARY

country	e.g. France, China, Brazil
nationality	e.g. American, Swiss, French
language	e.g. German, Japanese, Arabic
continent	e.g. Asia, Europe, Africa
(Great) Britain	= England, Wales and Scotland
the United Kingdom / the UK	= England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland

SPOTLIGHT people from a country

To talk about people from a country, we often add *s* to the nationality.

■ *Italians, Brazilians, Thais, Greeks*

Some plural forms are irregular.

■ *The British, the French, the English, the Spanish, the Chinese, the Japanese, the Swiss*

1 Underline the stressed syllable for the nationalities. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| ▶ Poland / Polish | ▶ Portugal / Portuguese |
| 1 China / Chinese | 5 Japan / Japanese |
| 2 Hungary / Hungarian | 6 Canada / Canadian |
| 3 Germany / German | 7 Korea / Korean |
| 4 Italy / Italian | 8 Egypt / Egyptian |

2 True or false? Write T or F.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| ▶ Argentinians speak Spanish <u>T</u> | |
| 1 Saudis speak Arabic. | 5 Australians speak Australian. |
| 2 Mexicans speak Spanish. | 6 Brazilians speak Portuguese. |
| 3 Thais speak Japanese. | 7 Americans speak English. |
| 4 Hungarians speak Hungarian. | 8 The Swiss speak French, Spanish or German. |

3 Complete the sentences.

- | | |
|--|----------------------------|
| ▶ Northern Ireland is in <u>the UK</u> | |
| 1 Scotland is in Great | 6 Egypt is in |
| 2 Hungary is in | 7 Saudi Arabia is in |
| 3 Mexico is in America. | 8 India is in |
| 4 Africa is a | 9 Asia is a |
| 5 Argentina is in America. | |

4 Write the first letter of each word. Remember, countries and nationalities begin with CAPITAL LETTERS. Then write C (country) or N (nationality) next to each one.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ▶ <u>S</u> audi <u>N</u> | ▶ <u>B</u> ritain <u>C</u> | 11 <u> </u> reek <u> </u> |
| 1 <u> </u> Italy <u> </u> | 6 <u> </u> zech <u> </u> | 12 <u> </u> rench <u> </u> |
| 2 <u> </u> ungary <u> </u> | 7 <u> </u> gypt <u> </u> | 13 <u> </u> ermany <u> </u> |
| 3 <u> </u> exico <u> </u> | 8 <u> </u> panish <u> </u> | 14 <u> </u> ussia <u> </u> |
| 4 <u> </u> wiss <u> </u> | 9 <u> </u> razil <u> </u> | 15 <u> </u> rgentinian <u> </u> |
| 5 <u> </u> hina <u> </u> | 10 <u> </u> urkey <u> </u> | 16 <u> </u> ortugal <u> </u> |

5 Complete the text.

My name's Magda, and I'm studying ▶ En glish in London at the moment. I'm from (1) Po, and I live with two students: Silvia, who's (2) Br, and Irina who's from (3) Ru, Irina speaks (4) Ru and (5) Po, We go to a language school in the centre. Our class has many nationalities: there are two (6) Ja students, a (7) Ko man, three (8) Tu women, a young (9) It girl, a (10) Ch boy and four students from (11) Sp Our teacher is Dennis, and he's (12) Au

6 Complete the boxes with nationalities ending in these letters.

-ian	-ish	-an	-ese
▶ Italian			
.....
.....
.....
.....

7 ABOUT YOU Do you know people from any of these countries? Put a (✓) next to the country if you do. If possible, tell another student.



TEST YOURSELF

36 My country

A Geography

Brazil is **enormous**. The Atlantic Ocean¹ is in the east. The coast² is 3,000 kilometres long. In the north, south and west, there are borders³ with ten different countries. The longest river⁴ is the Amazon, and Pico da Neblina is about 3,000 metres high: it's the highest mountain⁵ in Brazil. Many of the major cities are on the coast, but not the capital, Brasilia. The most famous city is Rio de Janeiro, which has Sugarloaf Mountain and Corcovada, plus some great beaches, like Copacabana. It is very popular with tourists.



GLOSSARY

enormous	very big SYN huge	capital	a city where a country has its government
3,000 kilometres (km) long	3,000 km from one end to the other	famous	If sth is famous , many people know about it: <i>Rio is famous for Carnival.</i>
3,000 metres (m) high	3,000 m from top to bottom (A mountain is high . NOT <i>tall</i>)	beach	an area of sand next to the sea, e.g. Copacabana
major	large and important	popular	If sth is popular , many people like it.

1 Study the map of Brazil and the text, then complete the sentences.

- Brasilia is the capital.
- The Amazon is the longest _____.
 - Pico de Neblina is the highest _____.
 - Porto Alegre is on the _____.
 - Pico de Neblina is 3,000 m _____.
 - The Amazon is nearly 7,000 km _____.
 - There's a _____ between Brazil and Argentina.
 - The Atlantic _____ is on the _____ coast.
 - Sao Paulo is a _____ city.
 - The Amazon is in the _____ of Brazil.
 - Brazil is an _____ country.
 - Rio's beaches are _____ with tourists.

2 Complete the dialogues.

- Is Porto Alegre a small place? ~ No, it's a major city.
- Is Iguape _____? ~ No, most people don't know about it.
 - China's enormous. ~ Yes, it's _____, isn't it?
 - Is California on the east coast? ~ No, it's on the _____ coast.
 - Is New York in the south? ~ No, it's in the _____ of the USA.
 - Is the Pacific a sea? ~ No, it's an _____.
 - How _____ is the Nile? ~ It's 6,853 kilometres _____.
 - Is Copacabana the capital? ~ No, it's a famous _____.
 - Do people go there a lot? ~ Yes, it's very _____.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

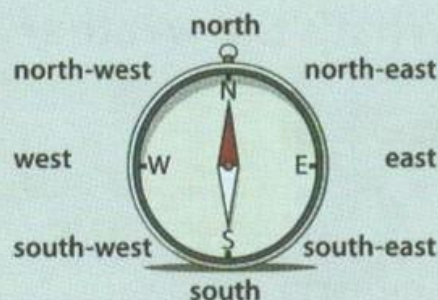
- What's the capital, and where is it? _____
- What are some of the other major cities? _____
- Does it have borders with any other countries? If so, what are they? _____
- What's the longest river? _____
- What's the highest mountain? _____
- Which are the most famous places in your country? _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Facts about places

I live in ...	
a big city	in the north-west of Poland
a town	on the coast
a small village	on the River Dee
It has a population of over / just under a million/100,000.	
Interesting facts: It's famous for ...	
its ancient buildings	
its industry (computers, cars, etc.)	
its culture	
its fantastic climate	



GLOSSARY

city	a very large town, e.g. 2 million people
town	smaller than a city, e.g. 30,000 people
village	smaller than a town, and in the countryside
population	the number of people who live in a place
over (a thousand)	more than (a thousand) OPP under
just under	a little under ALSO just over
fact	a piece of true information
ancient	very old OPP modern
industry	the work of making things, e.g. cars, electronics
culture	activities like art, music, theatre, literature, etc.
climate	the normal weather in a place

- 4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.
Use the **APP** to help you. Practise the words.

► culture / industry D

1 town / south

3 famous / ancient

5 city / culture

2 ancient / climate

4 population / culture

6 village / just

- 5 Write the phrases in the correct columns.

in the north-east ✓	on the coast	famous for its modern buildings	over two million
mobile phone industry	just under 50,000	on the River Duero	south-west of the capital
about 3,000	a large city	a warm climate	a city full of culture
		a small village	
		a small town	

SIZE	WHERE?	POPULATION	INTERESTING FACTS
	in the north-east		

- 6 Complete the text about Turin.

Turin is a large ► city, 140 km south-west (1) Milan, (2) the north-west (3) Italy. It is (4) the River Po and three other rivers. It has a (5) of about one million (in fact, it is 908,000). It is famous for one very important (6): car-making. It also has many (7) buildings, including palaces and castles. The (8) is cold in winter and hot in summer.

- 7 **ABOUT YOU** Write a similar text about your city/town/village.

.....

.....

.....



TEST YOURSELF

A What's the weather like?

What's the weather like?



It's **sunny**. The sun's shining. It's a **bright** day.



It's **windy**. The wind is blowing. *pt* blew



It's **cloudy**. There are a **lot** of grey clouds.



There's **snow** on the mountains and ice on the river. *icy adj*



It's **raining**. The roads are **wet**. There's a **lot** of rain.

SPOTLIGHT a lot (of) and a bit (of)

a lot of / a bit of + noun	verb + a lot / a bit	a bit + adjective
■ We had a lot of rain.	■ It snowed a lot .	■ It's a bit cold today.
■ There's a bit of snow.	■ It's raining a bit .	■ It was a bit windy.

We don't usually use **a bit** with positive adjectives: NOT *a bit sunny/good*.

1 Match 1-9 with a-j.

- | | | |
|---------------------|----------|--------------------------------|
| ► It's | <u>d</u> | a clouds in the sky today. |
| 1 It | ..... | b it bright and sunny outside? |
| 2 The wind | ..... | c isn't raining. |
| 3 It isn't | ..... | d cold this morning. ✓ |
| 4 The sun | ..... | e of snow on the roads. |
| 5 Is | ..... | f rain a lot here. |
| 6 There's a bit | ..... | g the weather like? |
| 7 There are lots of | ..... | h very windy. |
| 8 It doesn't | ..... | i blew my hat off. |
| 9 What's | ..... | j is shining. |

2 Rewrite the sentences keeping the same meaning.

- There was a lot of rain. It rained a lot.
- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 It isn't wet outside. It isn't | 5 Is it hot or cold today? What's the like? |
| 2 Is the sun shining? Is it? | 6 There are a few clouds. It's a bit |
| 3 We often have snow. It often | 7 Is there any ice on the roads? Is it? |
| 4 She doesn't like wind. She doesn't like weather. | 8 It's windy today. The wind is today. |

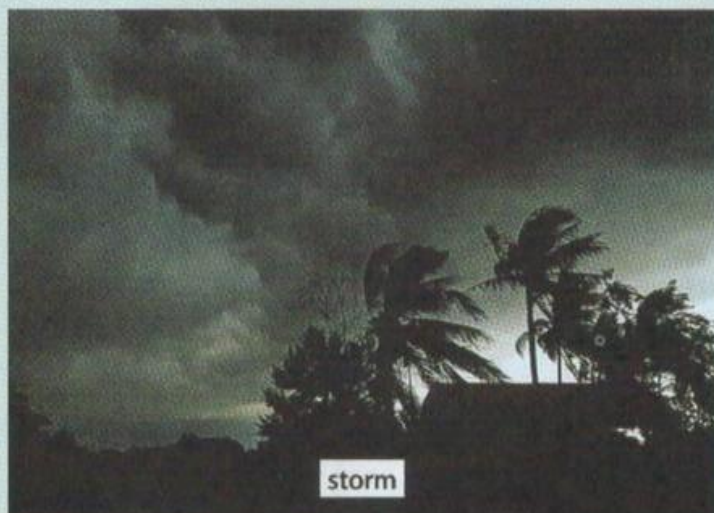
3 Write a lot, a lot of, a bit or a bit of.

- We had a lot of rain this morning, but it's good for the garden.
- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 It's wet today. | 5 It snowed last night - only two centimetres. |
| 2 There was wind this morning. I couldn't use my umbrella. | 6 It rained yesterday - I couldn't go out. |
| 3 It snows in the mountains - sometimes over twenty centimetres a day. | 7 It's not a bad day. It's cloudy but with some sun. |
| 4 There's rain, but not much. You don't need your umbrella. | 8 Don't go out in your car. There's ice on the roads. |



TEST YOURSELF

B Weather in the seasons



GLOSSARY

change	become sth different
all the time	always or very often
dry	with no rain OPP wet
shower	a short period of rain
suddenly	quickly and often in a very surprising way
storm	(see picture)
better (than)	comparative form of good (here = nicer) OPP worse (than) : The weather here is quite good, but the weather in the south is better .
strong winds	A 50 kph wind is a strong wind .
heavy rain	a lot of rain
sky	the sky is above you when you look up into the air; clear skies are blue with no clouds in them
extremely	very

In my country, the weather in spring **changes all the time**. It can be **dry** and **warm**, but we often have **showers**. It can get very hot in the cities in summer and then **suddenly** we have a **storm**. It's a lot **better** on the coast, where it's cooler. In autumn, we have **strong winds** and **heavy rain**. Winter brings clear skies and sunny days, but it's **extremely** cold.

4 Circle the correct word.

► Warm weather is very nice / uncomfortable.

1 It was very sunny between the *showers* / *storm*.

2 *Suddenly* / *Extremely*, it started raining.

3 The sky is very *warm* / *clear* this morning.

4 Showers usually last a few *hours* / *minutes*.

5 We had some very *big* / *strong* winds last night.

6 The weather *changes* / *rains* all the time.

5 Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right and the word IN CAPITALS.

► It's wet outside.

RAIN It's raining outside.

1 It rained a lot last night.

HEAVY There was _____.

2 The weather here isn't as good as Spain.

BETTER The weather in Spain _____.

3 There was a bit of rain in the afternoon.

SHOWER There _____.

4 The weather's different every day.

CHANGE The weather _____.

5 It isn't wet today.

DRY It _____.

6 We had heavy rain and strong winds.

STORM We had _____.

7 There are no clouds in the sky.

CLEAR There are _____.

8 There's snow every day in winter.

ALL THE TIME It _____.

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Does your country have ...

► storms in summer? We often have storms in summer.

1 a lot of showers in spring? _____

2 much snow? _____

3 good weather in summer? _____

4 dry winters? _____

5 heavy rain in spring? _____

6 strong winds? _____



TEST YOURSELF



lion



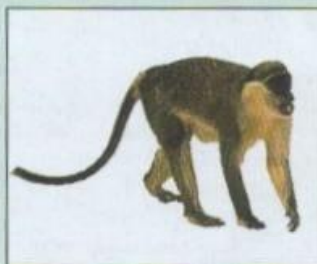
tiger



elephant



bear



monkey



snake



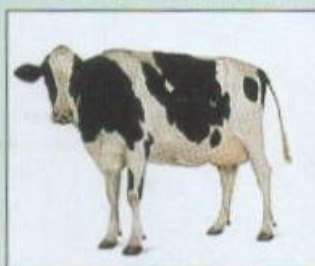
whale



bird



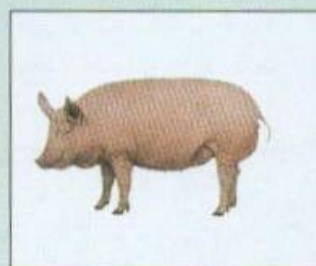
horse



cow



sheep (pl sheep)



pig



dog



cat



mouse (pl mice)



spider



fly



bee

wing

SPOTLIGHT both

Both means 'each of two'.

- Dogs and cats are **both** common in England. (= Dogs are common and cats are also common in England.)
- Do lions swim? Yes, and tigers. They can **both** swim.
- Do you like cows and sheep? Yes, I like **both of them**.

GLOSSARY

animal	any living thing that can move or feel. Animal is sometimes used to talk only about <i>cats, dogs, cows, etc.</i> and not about <i>people, birds, fish or insects</i> .
wild animal	A wild animal lives in nature, not with people, e.g. <i>a lion or an elephant</i> .
pet	an animal or bird that lives with people in their home. <i>Dogs and cats</i> are common pets in Britain.
insect	a small animal with six legs and usually wings, e.g. <i>a bee, a fly</i>
zoo	(sounds like you) a place, often in or near a town, where people can go and look at wild animals
farm	land and buildings where people keep animals and grow things. The person who does this is a farmer . <i>Pigs and cows</i> are farm animals.

1 Write the names of these animals and insects in order from big to small.

bear cat fly whale ✓ monkey sheep elephant lion mouse
big whale small

2 Put the animals in the correct column.

sheep ✓ elephant tiger cow cat fly dog horse pig bee lion bear

PETS	FARM ANIMALS	INSECTS	WILD ANIMALS
	► <u>sheep</u>		

3 Think about the pronunciation of the underlined letters, then answer the questions.
Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- Is cow the same as now or know? now 4 Is monkey the same as son or gone?
1 Is both the same as most or dog? 5 Is bear the same as hair or hear?
2 Is tiger the same as sit or lion? 6 Is elephant the same as cat or tiger?
3 Is snake the same as back or whale? 7 Is spider the same as wild or miss?

4 Complete each sentence with one word.

- Lions and tigers can both swim. 5 Birds and bees can both
1 Dogs usually live with 6 Cats sometimes catch and eat
2 People often sit on 7 Pigs live on
3 Whales live in the 8 People often see wild animals in a
4 Birds often eat 9 Flies have two

5 Complete the sentences.

- Elephants are one of the biggest animals in the world.
1 Are dogs and cats common in your country?
2 My uncle is a He has a with over 500 sheep and cows.
3 You can see lots of animals in parts of Africa.
4 Did you see a lion or tiger at the zoo? Yes, I saw of them.
5 A spider is not an because it has eight legs.
6 I've seen wild animals in the near where I live.
7 The bird had a problem with one of its and it couldn't fly.
8 I often go to the zoo with my brother: we like wild animals.

6 Which animal(s) or insect(s) has/have:


- eight legs? spider
1 four legs? 3 six legs?
2 two legs? 4 no legs?

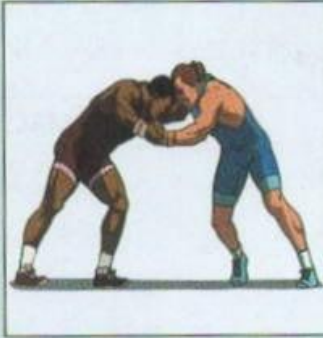
7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Do you have any pets? If so, what?
2 Have you ever seen wild animals (not on TV)? If so, where?
3 Are you afraid of any animals or insects?
4 What animals are usually used as farm animals in your country?
5 Do people often go to zoos in your country? What do you think about zoos?
6 Is there an animal or insect on the opposite page that you especially like or dislike?

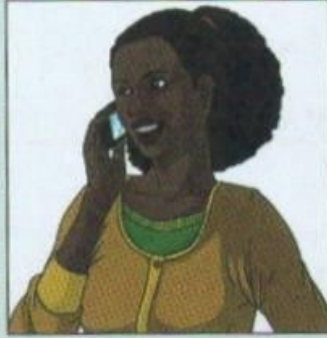


TEST YOURSELF

Here are some common irregular verbs in English, which follow similar patterns. They are all taught in different parts of the book, so use the Word List or  to help you if necessary. A more complete list is on page 198.



fight



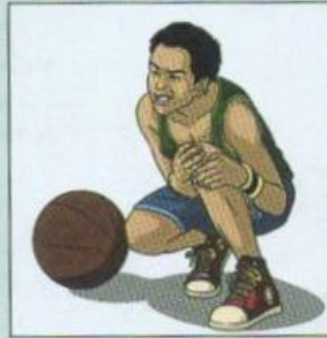
ring



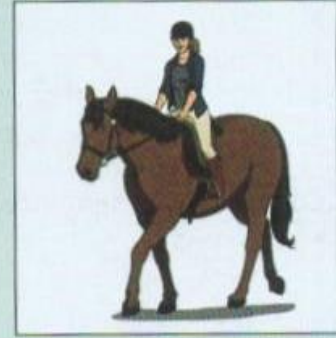
build



hold



hurt



ride

pt/pp -a/-u	pt/pp - one vowel change	pt/pp -o/-en
sing/sang/sung	get/got/got	write/wrote/written
swim/swam/swum	forget/forgot/forgotten	drive/drove/driven
ring/rang/rung	sit/sat/sat	ride/rode/ridden
drink/drank/drunk	come/came/come	break/broke/broken
begin/began/begun	hold/held/held	speak/spoke/spoken
run/ran/run	fall/fell/fallen	wake (up)/woke/woken
	win/won/won	

pt/pp -ought/-ought	pt/pp -t	pt/pp - no change
bring/brought/brought	lend/lent/lent	put/put/put
think/thought/thought	send/sent/sent	cut/cut/cut
buy/bought/bought	spend/spent/spent	hurt/hurt/hurt
fight/fought/fought	build/built/built	cost/cost/cost
pt/pp -aught/-aught	spell/spelt/spelt ALSO spelled	shut/shut/shut
catch/caught/caught	lose/lost/lost	let/let/let
teach/taught/taught	burn/burnt/burnt ALSO burned	hit/hit/hit

SPOTLIGHT *ever*

We often use **ever** (= any time before now) in questions in the present perfect (*has/have* + past participle).

- Have you **ever** bought a car? ~ No, I haven't. OR No, I've never bought one.
- Has your sister **ever** written a blog? ~ Yes, she has. (NOT Yes, she ever has.)

1 Cover the left-hand page, then write the past tense of the verbs.

- | | | |
|------------------|---------|----------|
| ▶ sit <u>sat</u> | 5 buy | 10 hold |
| 1 teach | 6 sing | 11 spell |
| 2 put | 7 spend | 12 ring |
| 3 let | 8 drive | 13 sit |
| 4 bring | 9 speak | 14 burn |

2 For each question, which two verbs ...

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ don't change in the past tense? | <u>hurt</u> / <u>fight</u> / <u>shut</u> |
| 1 change <i>i</i> to <i>a</i> in the past tense? | swim / begin / hit |
| 2 change <i>i</i> to <i>o</i> in the past tense? | write / sit / drive |
| 3 change to <i>-ought</i> in the past tense? | buy / catch / think |
| 4 change from <i>d</i> to <i>t</i> in the past tense? | hold / send / build |
| 5 don't change in the past tense? | put / forget / cut |
| 6 have one vowel change in the past tense? | get / fall / cost |

3 Answer the questions using the same verb in the past tense.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| ▶ What did Olivia sing? | ~ She <u>sang a pop song</u> |
| 1 How far did you swim? | ~ I |
| 2 What did the teacher forget? | ~ He |
| 3 What did Ava send? | ~ She |
| 4 What did Mason lend you? | ~ He |
| 5 Where did your sister put the books? | ~ She |
| 6 Where did Liam fall? | ~ He |
| 7 How much money did Isabella lose? | ~ She |
| 8 How far did the children run? | ~ They |

4 Complete the sentences with verbs in the past tense from page 82.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ My sister <u>taught</u> in a school for five years. | 7 This book only £3.99. |
| 1 I across the river. | 8 The children home at 10.00 and went to bed. |
| 2 My dad a fish in the lake last week. | 9 Darius me early this morning to tell me the good news. |
| 3 I the horse, and Ben his bike. | 10 I went shopping and a pair of shoes. |
| 4 When Esther her finger, she said it really | 11 Martina her new Italian course yesterday and really enjoyed it. |
| 5 My grandmother a car until she was 90. | 12 I at 6 a.m. because I had to get up early. |
| 6 I an email to my aunt last week to thank her for my birthday present. | |

5 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions with the past participle of verbs from page 82. Then answer the questions about you.

Have you ever ...

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| ▶ <u>got</u> ill from eating eggs? | <u>No, I haven't.</u> |
| 1 a very fast car? | |
| 2 a horse? | |
| 3 your own hair? | |
| 4 a large amount of money? | |
| 5 to a famous person? What did you say? | |
| 6 somebody because you were very angry? | |
| 7 a bone in your body? | |
| 8 from a tree? | |



TEST YOURSELF

40 have got and have

A have got and have



My brother { has got
has a small car.



His wife { has got
has a large motorbike.



They { 've got
have two daughters.



The girls { haven't got
don't have boyfriends yet.

SPOTLIGHT have got and have

You can use **have got** or **have** to talk about something that is yours (= belongs to you). You can also use **have (got)** to describe illness, relationships and appearance. **Have got** is the usual form in spoken British English.

■ **Have you got** a car? ~ Yes, I **have**. (NOT Yes, I have got.)

OR

■ **Do you have** a car? ~ Yes, I **do**.

1 Change **have** to the correct form of **have got** in each sentence.

- ▶ I have an old car.
- 1 She has blue eyes.
- 2 They have a small dog.
- 3 I don't have a smartphone.
- 4 He doesn't have any money.
- 5 Do you have any sisters?
- 6 Does she have a flat in town?
- 7 They don't have a shop now.
- 8 Do they have a big office?

I've got an old car.

2 Correct the mistakes.

- ▶ He have a car.
- 1 She got any children?
- 2 They has got a lovely garden.
- 3 Have she got long hair?
- 4 My sister no have a boyfriend.
- 5 Have you a computer?
- 6 We don't got any friends here.

He's got a car. OR He has a car.

3 Complete the questions.

- ▶ Have you got a car? If so, what kind?
- 1 Have you _____ a bike? If so, when do you use it?
- 2 _____ you have a computer? If so, what kind?
- 3 _____ your parents got a dog? If so, what's its name?
- 4 _____ your parents have a house in the country? If so, where?
- 5 _____ you got an English dictionary? If so, what's it called?
- 6 _____ you have any English-speaking friends? If so, who are they?

ABOUT YOU

Yes, I have. It's a Ford.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B have + noun

We use **have + noun** (NOT *have got*) in a number of common expressions in English.

have a wash/shower/bath (NOT <i>have got a wash</i> , etc.)	<i>I had a quick shower before I left.</i>
have breakfast/lunch/dinner (NOT <i>the breakfast</i> , etc.)	<i>We had lunch in a pizzeria.</i>
have a drink/sth to eat	<i>I had a drink with Leo last night. Let's have something to eat.</i>
have a swim/walk/run (activities you do because you enjoy them)	<i>I didn't have a run this morning. We had a nice walk yesterday.</i>
have a (great/nice/terrible) time/day	<i>We had a great time in Kyoto.</i>
have a (good/nice) weekend/holiday/journey	<i>Have a nice weekend! Have a good journey.</i>
have a look (at sth) look at sth to see it closely or read it	<i>Can I have a look at your camera?</i>
have a break stop working for a short period and relax	<i>OK, let's have a break for 10 minutes.</i>
have a rest relax and do nothing	<i>I had a rest in the afternoon.</i>

5 Cover the table above. Make four more groups of phrases with **have** from the words below.

swim	breakfast	holiday	bath	journey	rest ✓	lunch
shower	weekend	break ✓	dinner	walk	wash	run

GROUP 1	GROUP 2	GROUP 3	GROUP 4	GROUP 5
rest				
break				

6 Complete the email.

Dear Carla,

We're having a great ► time here in Parati. The hotel's nice, and we've got a lovely view of an old church from our room. Yesterday we had a (1) round the town and bought a few things. In the evening, we had a (2) in the bar you recommended. Afterwards, we had (3) in a very nice fish restaurant. We're going to spend this morning on the beach so I can have a (4) in the sea, then maybe do some more shopping this afternoon. I think we'll have a (5) after that. I hope you're enjoying yourself in Rio, and have a good (6) back to Buenos Aires on Saturday. See you in two weeks' time.

Love, Nicky

Send

7 Complete the sentences.

- I got up late and didn't have any breakfast.
- Would you like to have something to? We've got lots of food.
 - We often have a after lunch – along the river or in the park.
 - We have a twenty-minute between the lessons.
 - I want to have a round town this afternoon, maybe buy a few things.
 - Did you have a good in London yesterday?
 - Have a nice See you on Monday.
 - They had a fantastic in Mallorca. They were there for three weeks.
 - I always have a shower in the summer, but in winter I prefer to have a



TEST YOURSELF

41 make or do

A make and do: general differences

Here are two common meanings of **make**:

1 produce or create sth:

The factory **makes** cars.

I'm **making** a cake for Tom's birthday.

This shirt is **made of** cotton.



2 produce a change in sb or sth:

Chocolate **makes** you fat.

Romantic films sometimes **make** me cry.

The book **made** them laugh.



Here are two common meanings of **do** as an ordinary verb (not an auxiliary verb):

1 used about activities:

What are you **doing** this evening?

I didn't **do** much at the weekend.



2 have a job, or study sth:

What do you **do**?

~ I'm a doctor.

I want to **do** medicine at university.



1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- ▶ did / what / do / yesterday / you What did you do yesterday ?
- 1 does / his / wife / do / what ?
- 2 makes / his / software / company / programs .
- 3 make / does / you / why / English / tired ?
- 4 school / Spanish / to / I / next / want / year / do / at .
- 5 is / jumper / of / made / this / wool ?
- 6 you / night / did / do / what / last ?

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of **do** or **make**.

- ▶ The long walk made the children tired.
- 1 These shoes are _____ of leather.
- 2 She doesn't work at the bank any more. ~ Oh. What does she _____ now?
- 3 Matthew wants to _____ law when he goes to university.
- 4 Flying _____ me nervous.
- 5 I've just _____ sandwiches for lunch. Is that OK?
- 6 Cheese is _____ from milk.
- 7 What are you going to _____ next year?
- 8 My nephew wants to _____ a film about his school.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What kinds of things are made in your country? _____
- 2 Do you ever make things for other people, e.g. clothes? _____
- 3 Do films or music ever make you cry? _____
- 4 What subjects did you do at school? (or are you doing at school?) _____
- 5 What are you doing this evening? _____
- 6 What did you do last weekend? _____

4 Look at the example sentences at the top of the page. How would you translate **make** and **do** in each sentence? If possible, talk to somebody who speaks your own language.



TEST YOURSELF

B Do or make?

Both **do** and **make** are used with a number of nouns with the meaning 'perform an action'.

do + action:	make + action:
your best	the bed
exercise [U] (in the gym)	a decision
exercises (in class)	a mistake
the housework [U]	money
your homework [U]	a noise
the shopping	sense



do exercise



do the housework



do your homework

GLOSSARY

do your best	do all that you can: <i>I may not finish the work today, but I'll do my best.</i>
make a decision	choose what you want to do
make money	get money, often from work: <i>She made a lot of money when she worked in America.</i>
make a noise	make a sound, especially one that is loud and not nice
make sense	be possible to understand: <i>This sentence doesn't make sense.</i>

5 Underline the correct verb.

- I always try to do / make my best.
- 1 Have you done / made the shopping?
- 2 I make / do most of the housework at the weekend.
- 3 Don't become a teacher if you want to do / make a lot of money.
- 4 The children did / made a lot of noise last night.
- 5 We did / made a couple of grammar exercises in class.
- 6 Mia did / made a terrible mistake in her essay.
- 7 This exercise doesn't do / make sense.
- 8 I have to do / make a decision soon about the flat.

6 Match 1-5 with a-f.

- do exercise d
- 1 make sense
- 2 make a mistake
- 3 do the shopping
- 4 do your best
- 5 make a decision
- a try as much as you can
- b buy food
- c choose what you want to do
- d move your body to keep it strong ✓
- e be possible to understand
- f do something wrong

7 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions.

- Do you do many written exercises in class? No, we usually do written exercises for homework.
- 1 Do you your own bed?
- 2 Do you often mistakes with English?
- 3 Do your neighbours often a lot of noise?
- 4 Do you much housework?
- 5 Do you often the shopping?
- 6 Is it important for you to a lot of money?
- 7 Do you always try to your best?

8 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student. If possible, also explain why / why not in your answers.



TEST YOURSELF

42 get



1 In column 2, rewrite each sentence with the correct form of *get*.

► I must buy some new clothes.	<i>I must <u>get</u> some new clothes.</i>	<i>buy</i>
1 Did you receive my message?		
2 He becomes angry if you're late.		
3 We arrived home late last night.		
4 It's becoming cold.		
5 I received three letters today.		
6 Where did you buy that bag?		
7 He needs to be given a job.		
8 Do you want to travel by train?		

2 Cover sentences 1–8 in Exercise 1. Look at the sentences you wrote. What does *get* mean in each one? Write your answer in column 3.

► *I must get some new clothes.* *buy*

3 Complete the sentences in a logical way using *get*.

- There weren't any buses, so we got the train.
- 1 Could you close the window? It's _____.
- 2 What time did you _____?
- 3 Those shoes are lovely. Where did you _____?
- 4 Do you want to walk or _____?
- 5 I need a map of the town. Where can I _____?
- 6 She sent me an email but I didn't _____.
- 7 I must go now, it's _____.
- 8 I have to be at the cinema in ten minutes, so I'm going to _____.
- 9 Tom worked hard for his maths and he _____.
- 10 How many text messages do you _____?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- What time do you get home from work/college/school? *I get home from school at 5 o'clock each day.*
- 1 How often do you get the bus? _____
- 2 How cold does it get in your country? _____
- 3 How many texts do you get every day? _____
- 4 What was the last new item of clothing you got? _____
- 5 Where can you get information about your town/city? _____



TEST YOURSELF

- 1 know or notice sth with your eyes:

Can you **see** that church over there?



- 2 find out about sth by looking, asking, etc:

I'll **see** what time the train leaves.



- 3 visit or spend time with sb:

I went to **see** my parents at the weekend.



- 4 watch a film / TV programme / game:

I **saw** a film at the cinema.



- 5 understand sth:

Do you **see** what I mean?



see
pt saw pp seen

SPOTLIGHT see and watch

When you **see** something, you know about it with your eyes.

■ Can you **see** that bird in the tree? (NOT watch)

When you **watch** something, you look at it for a long time.

■ We **watched** a spider for about 15 minutes. (NOT saw)

You can **see** or **watch** a film, TV programme or game.

■ I **saw/watched** a football match in the park yesterday.

- 1 Write down the meaning (1-5) of **see** in each of the sentences.

▶ I saw them at the show last night.

1

1 I can't see the road from here.

.....

2 Martin wants to see if he can buy tickets for the concert.

.....

3 I want to see the new Spielberg film.

.....

4 We're going to see friends this evening.

.....

5 I may go, but it depends on the weather. ~ OK. I see.

.....

6 It was so dark I couldn't see.

.....

7 Did you see the news on TV?

.....

8 I can't see why he wants to leave his job.

.....

- 2 Underline the correct verb. Be careful: both verbs are correct in two of the sentences.

▶ Come and see / watch us for coffee next week.

1 I looked for Will, but I couldn't see / watch him.

2 The police know where the criminal lives, so they're going to see / watch his house.

3 Did you see / watch that new detective series on TV?

4 I must see / watch how much the tickets cost.

5 I have to see / watch the children carefully when they're in the street.

6 When are you going to see / watch the doctor?

7 I saw / watched in the paper that they're building a new theatre.

8 We saw / watched a great basketball game on Saturday.

- 3 Complete the questions with the correct form of **see** or **watch** or either.

▶ Can you see any trees from where you live?

1 Can you very well without glasses? Why? / Why not?

2 Do you ever your father when he's working?

3 Are there some programmes on TV that you always ? If so, what?

4 What was the last TV programme you ?

5 How often do you your best friend?

6 How often do you your parents?

7 Can you why get is a difficult verb for students learning English?

ABOUT YOU

Yes, I can see lots. We're opposite a park.

- 4 **ABOUT YOU** Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

44 Verbs and nouns with the same form

- Many verbs in English can be used as nouns, with the same form and a similar meaning.
*Did you **promise** to help him?* *Did you **make** a **promise** to help him?*
- When the verbs are used as nouns, you need to learn which verb to use with the noun.
*She **surprised** me.* *She **gave** me a **surprise**.*
*Could I **look** at your paper?* *Could I **have** a **look** at your paper?*
*What **caused** the accident?* *What **was** the **cause** of the accident?*



The boys were **fighting**.
The boys were **having a fight**.



I **called** Jim.
I **gave** Jim a **call**.



I **slept** well.
I **had** a good **sleep**.



Does it **smell** nice?
Does it **have** a nice **smell**?



I **dream** about Ava.
I **have** **dreams** about Ava.



She **smiled** at me.
She **gave** me a **smile**.

Here are some more examples.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p><i>Did you reply?</i>
 <i>Did they comment on your work?</i>
 <i>He can't control that dog.</i>
 <i>I emailed you yesterday.</i>
 <i>We often chat.</i>
 <i>How much did the hotel cost?</i>
 <i>Can you copy this?</i></p> | <p><i>Did you write/send Jana a reply?</i>
 <i>Did they make a comment on your work?</i>
 <i>He has no control over that dog.</i>
 <i>I sent you an email yesterday.</i>
 <i>We often have a chat.</i>
 <i>What was the cost of the hotel?</i>
 <i>Can you make a copy of this?</i></p> |
|---|---|

GLOSSARY

promise	say you will certainly do or not do sth promise <i>n</i>	control	make sb/sth do what you want control <i>n</i>
surprise	do sth that sb does not think you are going to do surprise <i>n</i>	chat (to sb)	talk in a friendly informal way to sb chat <i>n</i>
cause	be the reason why sth happens cause <i>n</i>	copy	write, draw or make sth exactly the same as sth else: We copied a list of words into our notebooks. copy <i>n</i>
comment (on sth)	say or write what you think about sth comment <i>n</i>		

1 Circle the sound that is different. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ promise surprise cause
1 comment control promise
2 promise surprise write

- 3 over comment cost
4 surprise smell cause
5 copy surprise control

2 Do you need your hands and/or your mouth? Write H, or M, or H and M.

- ▶ make a promise M
1 make a copy
2 give someone a smile
3 have a fight

- ▶ send an email H
4 give someone a call
5 send a reply
6 have a chat

3 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in the box.

control dream fight sleep surprise cost
cause promise smell comment ✓ chat

- ▶ The boss commented on your work – he was very pleased with it.
1 The hotel was expensive, but I don't know exactly how much it
2 The police caught the young men – they were outside a night club.
3 It's a very big dog, and I'm afraid my wife can't it.
4 I can't come tomorrow because I to take my children to the zoo.
5 I stopped to with a couple of friends. We talked about the game last Saturday.
6 Molly expected me at 8.00, so I arrived at 7.30 to her.
7 I could something wonderful coming from the kitchen: roast beef.
8 I was about our holiday when I woke up.
9 There was something wrong with the computer, but I don't know what the problem.
10 I went to bed early but I couldn't

4 Rewrite the sentences using the verb as a noun.

- ▶ She emailed me. She sent me an email
1 I dreamt about you. I
2 Did he comment on the report? Did he?
3 She promised to help me. She
4 Does this soap smell nice? Does this soap?
5 They surprised him. They
6 I must reply to Jilly's letter. I must
7 Did you call Mo? Did you?
8 I looked at her newspaper. I
9 Could you copy this? Could you?
10 He smiled at me this morning He

5 ABOUT YOU Write down something that ...

- ▶ you promised to do I promised to help my father at the weekend.
you sometimes dream about
costs a lot of money in your country
has a strong smell
is the main cause of problems in your country
surprises you about people in your country
the world cannot control



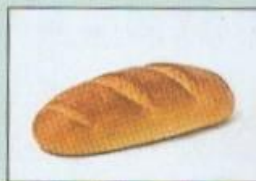
TEST YOURSELF

45 Shopping for food

A Food



milk [U]



bread [U]



butter [U]



a piece of cheese

cheese [U]



eggs



sugar [U]



a piece of cake

cake [U]



a cake



jam [U]



biscuits



olives



olive oil [U]



rice [U]



pasta [U]

SPOTLIGHT uncountable nouns

The nouns with a [U] are usually uncountable.

- **butter** OR **some butter** (NOT *a butter/butters*)
- *This bread is nice.* (NOT *These breads are nice.*)

We can use phrases to count or talk about an amount of an uncountable noun.

- **a piece of cheese** ■ **two bars of chocolate**

Some nouns can be countable or uncountable. Uncountable is for the food, etc. generally. Countable is for a small unit of it.

- *I like chocolate.* [U] ■ *Would you like a chocolate?* [C]



chocolate [U]
a bar of chocolate



a box of chocolates

- 1 Tick (✓) the answers that are right, and correct the answers that are wrong. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|-------|
| ▶ a butter | <u>butter / some butter</u> | 6 some sugar | ..... |
| 1 biscuits | ..... | 7 an olive oil | ..... |
| 2 a piece of cheese | ..... | 8 rices | ..... |
| 3 two butters | ..... | 9 a jam | ..... |
| 4 a piece of chocolate | ..... | 10 olives | ..... |
| 5 a bread | ..... | 11 a cheese | ..... |

- 2 Circle the correct word.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ▶ There <u>is</u> / are sugar in jam. | |
| 1 You make <i>cheese</i> / <i>pasta</i> with eggs. | 5 There's no sugar in <i>chocolate</i> / <i>pasta</i> . |
| 2 You can put <i>cheese</i> / <i>cake</i> on bread. | 6 I've got a box of <i>milk</i> / <i>chocolates</i> . |
| 3 There's a lot of sugar in <i>cake</i> / <i>bread</i> . | 7 <i>Butter</i> / <i>Pasta</i> comes from milk. |
| 4 You can eat <i>rice</i> / <i>biscuits</i> with meat. | 8 We have <i>olives</i> / <i>biscuits</i> with coffee. |

- 3 ABOUT YOU Look at the pictures. Which things do you: often buy? sometimes buy? never buy? Write your answers, or tell another student.

- ▶ I often buy eggs



TEST YOURSELF

B Buying food



Customer Could I have a kilo of onions, please?
Shop assistant OK. Do you need a bag?
Customer No, I've got one, thanks. And have you got any peaches?
Shop assistant Yes. How many do you want?
Customer Four, please.
 Are they ready to eat?
Shop assistant Yes, they're lovely.
Customer Great. That's all, thanks.



SPOTLIGHT *how much? and how many?*

We use **how much** with uncountable nouns and **how many** with countable nouns:

- **How much** butter do you want?
- **How many** apples do we need?

GLOSSARY

Could I have ..., please? This is a polite way of saying 'I want'.
kilogram = 1,000 **grams**. **Kilo** is short for **kilogram**.
Half a kilo = 500 **grams**.
 (see picture)
bag
Have you got any ...? = Do you have any ...? (**Any** is usually used in questions.)
ready If sth is **ready to eat**, you can eat it now.
That's all, thanks. = I don't want any more things.
need If you **need** sth, you must have it.
right OK. This means 'Yes, I understand you'.
just over (a kilo) a little more than (a kilo) **OPP just under**
That's fine. = That's OK.

4 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- | | | |
|------------------------|---|---|
| ▶ Right. | d | a a person who works in a shop |
| 1 shop assistant | | b I don't want to buy any other things. |
| 2 customer | | c OK to have it now |
| 3 that's all | | e must have something |
| 4 ready to eat | | d I understand what you mean. ✓ |
| 5 need something | | f a little less than |
| 6 just under | | g a person who buys things in a shop or on the internet |

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- ▶ all / that's / thanks That's all, thanks. / Thanks. That's all.
- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 twelve / have / could / please / eggs / I | 4 much / do / pasta / how / need / you |
| 2 need / you / a / do / bag | 5 kilo / just / half / a / over / that's |
| 3 got / French / you / cheese / any / have | 6 oranges / many / need / do / how / you |

6 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ A Yes? B I'd like six lemons, please.
- 1 A Have you any apples?
 B Yes. How would you like?
- 2 A Could I some cheese, please.
 B Sure, how ?
 A Oh, about 100 And that's , thank you.
- 3 A I have a kilo of potatoes, please?
 B Sure. That's under a kilo.
 A fine.
- 4 A These bananas don't look to eat.
 B No, they two or three more days.



TEST YOURSELF

46 Fruit and vegetables

A Fruit



banana



orange



peach



apple



pear



lemon



strawberry



grapes



pineapple



nuts

GLOSSARY

fruit [U] Oranges, pears and nuts are types of fruit: I buy my **fruit** at the supermarket.
taste If sth **tastes** of lemon, it's like lemon when you eat or drink it: This ice cream **tastes of** orange. It **tastes** sweet.
sweet tasting of sugar: These strawberries are very **sweet**.

1 Find the end of each word.

banana / grapes / lemon / nuts / strawberries / pineapple / pear / orange / peach / apple

2 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ Which fruit is green: strawberries or apples?
- 1 Which taste sweet: oranges or nuts?
- 2 Which are yellow: grapes or lemons?
- 3 Which are round: peaches or pears?
- 4 Which are big: pineapples or grapes?
- 5 Which are long: bananas or apples?
- 6 Which are hard: strawberries or nuts?

3 Complete the definitions.

- ▶ Apples can be green, red or yellow, and are round.
- 1 are long and yellow.
- 2 are like lemons but are sweet and round.
- 3 are yellow inside and have green leaves on top.
- 4 are small and dry, and hard on the outside.
- 5 things taste of sugar.
- 6 are green or red/purple, and we use them to make wine.
- 7 are small, soft and red.
- 8 are soft and round, with a big stone in the centre.
- 9 Pears and lemons are types of

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or tell another student.

Which fruit do you ...
 eat every week? eat every month?
 often eat in summer? never eat?



TEST YOURSELF

B Vegetables



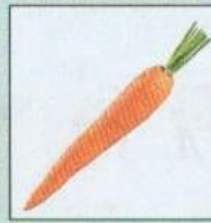
potato



beans



onion



carrot



peas



cabbage



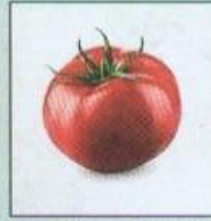
mushroom



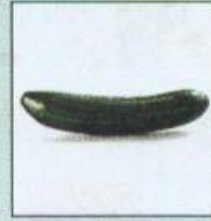
garlic



lettuce



tomato



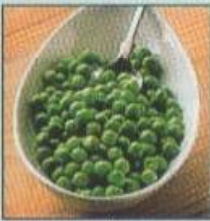
cucumber



red pepper /
green pepper



frozen



cooked



fresh

SPOTLIGHT *salad*

A **salad** can have different fresh **vegetables**. It usually has *lettuce*, and often has *tomatoes* and *cucumber*. *Red pepper*, *carrots* or *onion* are also possible.

5 Make vegetables from the letters. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ladas salad
1 sape
2 nonio
3 prepep
4 oatotp

- 5 gacabeb
6 ecultte
7 naseb
8 meuccrub

- 9 oouhmsrm
10 motaot
11 ragcil
12 ractor

6 True or false? Write T or F.

- Carrots are small and round. F
1 Potatoes and onions are vegetables.
2 Fresh peas are good to eat.
3 Lettuce is often frozen.
4 Garlic is usually cooked.
5 Mushrooms are green.

- 6 People eat frozen beans.
7 You often have tomatoes in a salad.
8 Salad is often cooked.
9 You need to cook carrots.
10 Cucumbers are long and green.

7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

Questionnaire

Do you eat these things in your country? *Yes, we do. / Yes, a lot. / Yes, but not much. / No, we don't.*

cabbage

mushrooms

red peppers

fresh tomatoes

frozen peas

cooked onions

fresh cucumber

lettuce

frozen carrots




















beans

cold potatoes

garlic



TEST YOURSELF

animal	 cow	 sheep	 lamb	 chicken	 duck	 pig
types of meat (part of the animal or bird that you eat)	 beef	 lamb	 chicken	 duck	 pork	 ham
fish	 salmon	 tuna			 bacon	 sausages
seafood	 squid	 prawns	 crab			

SPOTLIGHT saying what you eat

- I eat **meat**. = Meat is OK for me.
- I **don't eat pork**. = Pork is no good for me.
- I'm (a) **vegetarian**. = I don't eat meat or fish.

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- | | | |
|---|----------|-----------------------------------|
| ▶ Tuna is a kind of meat. | <u>F</u> | |
| 1 Vegetarians eat salmon. | ..... | 6 Prawns are smaller than crab. |
| 2 Lamb is an animal and a type of meat. | ..... | 7 Salmon and squid are both fish. |
| 3 Duck is a type of fish. | ..... | 8 Pig is a type of meat. |
| 4 You get bacon from cows. | ..... | 9 Chicken is a type of bird. |
| 5 You can make sausages from pork. | ..... | 10 You get ham from sheep. |

2 Complete the names of meat, fish or seafood.

- ▶ lam b
- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1 ..ee .. | 2 ..a .. | 3 ..un .. | 4 ..uc .. | 5 ..ra .. |
| 6 ..qui .. | 7 ..aco .. | 8 ..ausa .. | 9 ..or .. | 10 ..raw .. |

3 Which one is different? Why?

- ▶ cow sheep salmon pig Salmon, because it's a type of fish, not an animal
- 1 cow pig pork sheep, because
- 2 ham lamb sausages bacon, because
- 3 lamb pork beef tuna, because
- 4 vegetarian squid chicken tuna, because
- 5 sausage beef pork cow, because
- 6 crab salmon prawns squid, because

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

Do you eat these things? Why? / Why not?

- ▶ bacon Yes, I like bacon. / No, I'm vegetarian. / No, I don't eat bacon because I don't eat meat from pigs.
- | | | |
|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1 beef | 4 crab | 7 duck |
| 2 squid | 5 tuna | 8 lamb |
| 3 salmon | 6 prawns | |



TEST YOURSELF



- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 fork | 8 (black) pepper |
| 2 plate | 9 bowl |
| 3 knife | 10 glass of red wine |
| 4 spoon | 11 bottle of fizzy water |
| 5 bottle of beer | 12 vinegar |
| 6 dish (of pasta) | 13 oil |
| 7 salt | 14 glass of white wine |

SPOTLIGHT plural forms of nouns

For nouns ending in -sh, -ch, -s and -x, add -es in the plural.

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| ▪ dish/dishes | ▪ church/churches |
| ▪ glass/glasses | ▪ box/boxes |

For nouns ending in -f or -fe, change to -ves in the plural.

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| ▪ wife/wives | ▪ knife/knives |
|--------------|----------------|

1 Look at the picture. Write the numbers.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| ► How many glasses are there? <u>9</u> | |
| 1 How many knives are there? | 5 How many plates? |
| 2 How many bowls? | 6 How many bottles? |
| 3 How many spoons? | 7 How many large dishes? |
| 4 How many wine glasses? | 8 How many forks? |

2 Look at the picture and complete the text.

On the table, each person has a ► **knife**, (1) f.....k, and (2) s.....n.
They each have a white (3) p.....e and a (4) b.....l. To drink, there's a (5) b.....e
of (6) f.....y w.....r, and two (7) g.....s of (8) w.....e: one (9) r.....d
and the other (10) w.....e, plus a (11) b.....e of (12) b.....r. There is also some
(13) s.....t and (14) b.....k p.....r, and little (15) b.....s of (16) o.....l
and (17) v.....f.

4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Think about the things on the table, in the picture and complete the sentences.

On restaurant tables in my country, we usually or sometimes have

We don't usually have

We never have



TEST YOURSELF

49 Eating in a restaurant

A The menu

MENU

Starters

tomato soup¹cold salmon with soy sauce²

Main courses

Fried tuna³ with boiled rice and salad⁴Duck with orange sauce⁵ and boiled⁶ potatoesPizza⁷ with Italian cheese and red peppersSausages, chips⁸ and peas

Desserts

Apple pie⁹ with cream¹⁰Ice cream¹¹ with chocolate sauce

GLOSSARY

fried cooked in hot oil fry v

boiled cooked in hot water boil v

SPOTLIGHT menus

A menu is a list of food you can have in a restaurant.

The starter (or first course) is usually small. The main course is the most important part of the meal.

Desserts are sweet and come at the end of the meal.

1 Correct the mistakes.

▶ Chips aren't a start.

starter

1 It's boil rice.

2 The potatoes are fry.

3 A cheese sorce.

4 The first course was salade.

5 Did you have ice creme?

6 There was fruit for desert.

7 I had tomato soap.

8 How was the apple pea?

2 True or false? Write T or F.

▶ You eat the starter after the main course.

F

1 You eat ice cream with a knife and fork.

2 You eat the main course before dessert.

3 You can have eggs fried or boiled.

4 You eat chips in a bowl of soup.

5 The list of food to eat is called a menu.

6 The starter is the first thing you eat.

7 People often have cream on pizza.

8 Chips are fried.

9 Pasta usually has a sauce on it.

10 Apple pie is a starter.

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ I'd like fried fish.

1 Do you like cheese s_____ on pasta?

2 Could I have the apple p_____, please?

3 I don't like f_____ chicken.

4 My starter was fish s_____.

5 What's your main c_____?

6 I love ice c_____.

7 I had chicken with b_____ rice.

4 ABOUT YOU Look at the menu. Write your answers, or ask another student.

Which starter would you like?

Which main course would you like?

Which dessert would you like?



TEST YOURSELF

B Ordering the meal

- Waiter** Are you ready to order?
Customer Yes, I'll have the duck, please, but without the potatoes.
Waiter Sure. Would you like rice instead?
Customer Yes, please. And a glass of red wine, and some water.
Waiter Fizzy or still?
Customer Oh, still is fine.
(Later...)
Customer Could I have another bottle of water, please? Oh, and some more bread.
Waiter Yes, of course.
(Later...)
Waiter Was everything all right with your meal?
Customer Yes – the duck was delicious. Could I have the bill, please?
Waiter Certainly.



SPOTLIGHT *another and some more*

Say **another** (= one more) with countable nouns.

- **another** glass/biscuit/apple

Say **some more** with nouns in the plural and uncountable nouns.

- **some more** biscuits/glasses
- **some more** water/wine/bread

GLOSSARY

Are you ready to order?	= Do you know what you want to eat?	instead	in the place of sth or sb
order	ask for food or drinks in a restaurant, bar, etc.	still water	water without gas (fizzy water = water with gas)
I'll have tuna.	= I'd like/I want tuna.	all right	OK
without	<i>without sugar</i> = with no sugar	meal	Breakfast, lunch and dinner are meals .
sure / of course / certainly	These phrases all mean 'Yes, no problem'.	delicious	very good to eat
		the bill	a piece of paper that shows how much money you must pay for sth

5 Circle the correct word.

- I like like a coffee, please.
- Could I have **some more** / **another** potatoes?
 - Are you ready **order** / **to order**?
 - Do you want **another** / **some more** bottle?
 - We had a delicious **meal** / **food** last night.
 - Is everything **right** / **all right** with your meal?
 - There's no salmon. Would you like **some more** / **tuna instead**?
 - Yes, **course** / **of course**.
 - Could I have **a** / **the** bill, please?
 - I / I'll have the prawns, please.
 - Yes, **certainly** / **certain**.
 - You order from the **customer** / **waiter**.
 - Black coffee is **with** / **without** milk.

6 Complete the conversations.

Conversation 1

- W** Are you ► ready to order?
C Yes, I'll (1) _____ the chicken, please.
W And is that with or (2) _____ cream sauce?
C With, please. And a bottle of water.
W Yes, of (3) _____.
 Fizzy (4) _____?
C Fizzy, please.

Conversation 2

- C** Could I have (5) _____ more water, please?
W (6) _____. And would you like a dessert?
C Er, yes, I (7) _____ have the ice cream. Then could I have the (8) _____?
W Yes, (9) _____.



TEST YOURSELF

50 In a café

A Food and drinks

DRINKS

- 1 (white) coffee
- 2 black coffee
- 3 tea (with milk or lemon)
- 4 hot chocolate
- 5 orange juice (with ice)
- 6 a fizzy drink



SNACKS

- 7 a sandwich (white bread)
- 8 a sandwich (brown bread)
- 9 a toasted sandwich
- 10 a roll
- 11 crisps
- 12 cakes



SPOTLIGHT *café, bar, pub*

In a **café**, you can have a *drink* or a *snack*. In a **bar** or **pub**, you can have *drinks*, e.g. *juice*, but also *alcoholic drinks*, e.g. *beer* or *wine*. People go to pubs in Britain to have a drink, meet people and often eat food.

1 Find the end of each drink or snack.

You can have a ► roll/crispsnackcheesesandwichcaketoastedsandwich
 You can have a ► hotchocolate/teawithlemondrinkblackcoffeeefizzzydrinkorangejuice

2 True or false? Write T or F.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ► White coffee has milk in it. <u>T</u> | |
| 1 Ice is a drink. | 6 You can eat in a café or some pubs. |
| 2 Crisps and rolls are snacks. | 7 You can have wine in a café. |
| 3 Beer is an alcoholic drink. | 8 You can have a fizzy drink in a bar. |
| 4 Hot chocolate is a snack. | 9 Crisps are sweet. |
| 5 Cakes and orange juice are sweet. | 10 A toasted sandwich is hot. |

3 Complete the phrases.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| ► a ham <u>sandwich</u> | | |
| 1 brown | 5 black | 9 brown or bread? |
| 2 a toasted | 6 alcoholic | 10 or white coffee? |
| 3 hot | 7 drinks | 11 apple |
| 4 juice with | 8 bar, café or ? | 12 with milk |

4 ABOUT YOU Look at the drinks and snacks. Which do you like most? Which don't you like? Write a list, or tell another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Buying food and drinks

- A Hi, what can I get you?
 B I'd like a ham sandwich on brown bread and two cheese rolls, please.
 A Is that to have here or take away?
 B To have here, please.
 A Fine. Anything else?
 B Yes, can I have two coffees and an apple juice?
 A Would you like ice in the juice?
 B No, thanks.
 A Is that everything?
 B Yes, that's all, thanks.
 A OK, the food will be a couple of minutes.
 Take a seat.



SPOTLIGHT *please and thanks*

You use **please** when you ask for something politely.

■ Can I have a coffee, **please**?

Yes, please is a polite way of saying 'yes'.

No, thanks/thank you is a polite way of saying 'no'.

■ Would you like a drink? **Yes, please.** / **No, thanks.**

That's all, thanks. = I don't want anything else.

GLOSSARY

What can I get you?	a polite way to ask 'What do you want?' ALSO What would you like?
I'd like	= I would like; a polite way to say 'I want'
have	You have (= eat) a sandwich. You have (= drink) a coffee.
take away	eat in another place, not the café
fine	= OK
anything else?	= Do you want any more things? ALSO Is that everything?
Can I have ...?	a polite way to say 'I want' ALSO Can I get ...?
two coffees	two cups of coffee ALSO three teas , etc.
food	things that people or animals eat
a couple of	two or three (e.g. minutes)
take a seat	sit down ALSO have a seat

5 The same or different? Write S or D.

- Would you like a drink? / Do you want a drink? S
- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 a couple of minutes / two or three minutes | 6 That's fine. / No, thanks. |
| 2 Please sit down. / Please have a seat. | 7 Two teas, please. / Two cups of tea, please. |
| 3 Do you want some food? / Do you want something to drink? | 8 I'd like a beer, please. / I like beer. |
| 4 No, thanks. / No, thank you. | 9 Can I get a coffee, please? / Would you like a coffee? |
| 5 What can I get you? / What would you like? | 10 Anything else? / Is that everything? |

6 Put the words in the correct order to complete the conversation.

- A please / yes Yes, please
- B two / sandwiches / ham / please / toasted / like / I'd _____
- A that / have / is / here / to / away / take / or _____?
- B have / please / to / here _____
- A everything / that / is _____?
- B teas / get / can / two / I / please _____
- A be / will / a / minutes / of / it / couple _____
- please / seat / a / take _____

7 One word is missing in each line of the conversation. What is it and where does it go?

- A Hi, What / I get you? Hi, what can I get you?
- B Can I a tea with lemon, please.
- A To drink here or away?
- B To here. And a chicken sandwich, please.
- A Would you brown bread?
- B Yes.
- A OK, anything?
- B Thanks.
- A Fine. It will be a couple minutes.
- a seat, please.



TEST YOURSELF

51 Vehicles and roads

A Vehicles and public transport



car



bus



coach



van



lorry/truck



bicycle/bike



motorbike/
motorcycle



taxi



the underground

GLOSSARY

vehicle	A car, a bus, a lorry, etc. are all types of vehicles .
public transport	buses, trains, etc. that everybody can use
coach	in Britain, a comfortable bus that takes people on long journeys
truck	is more common than lorry in American English.
motorcycle	is more common than motorbike in American English.
the underground	is called the subway in America.

SPOTLIGHT verbs used with vehicles

We **drive** a car, bus or taxi, but **ride** a bike or motorbike.

We often use **go** and **take** when we say how we travel.

- I **go to work** **by** bus or **by** car. (BUT I **go to work on foot**. = walk)
- My children **take** the bus or the underground to school.

1 Underline the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.

► You don't see much if you take the bus / the underground.

- I go for / to work by bus.
- She often drives her brother's car / bike.
- He's just bought a new motorcycle / motorbike.
- Do you often go by / on foot?
- Can you ride / drive a motorcycle?
- We often use public transport / the underground.
- My uncle drives a lorry / truck.
- I went from London to Scotland by bus / coach.

2 Complete the sentences.

- When it's late, I take a taxi but they can be very expensive.
- He never _____ his bike in the winter: it's too cold.
 - I can take the train from Paris to Amsterdam but the _____ is cheaper.
 - You often see very large _____ on the motorways and other big roads.
 - I like taking the bus in big cities but the _____ is usually quicker.
 - I'm too afraid to ride a big _____.
 - I could drive, but I prefer to go on _____ – and it's good exercise.
 - All _____ can be dangerous, but especially large lorries.
 - Workmen often have _____ so they can carry everything they need for their work.

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences. If possible, ask someone else the questions.

- Can you drive? If so, when did you learn? _____
- When did you learn to ride a bike? _____
- How do you get to school, college or work? Are there different ways you can go? _____
- Can you ride a motorbike? If not, would you like to ride one? _____
- Is public transport good in your country? Is it expensive? _____
- Do you go anywhere by coach? Why? / Why not? _____



TEST YOURSELF

B On the road

Beth and Marco, who is from Italy, are talking about a journey.

- Marco** Beth, how far is it from London to Bath?
Beth Oh, about 110 miles. That's about 180 kilometres, Marco.
Marco And what's the best way to get there?
Beth I think the best way is the M4 motorway from London. Then, at exit 18, keep on the main road, the A46 – and that goes all the way to Bath. It's about ten miles.
Marco Right. And are the motorways very busy?
Beth Yes, unfortunately they are – there's a lot of traffic, especially in the rush hour, or if there is an accident.
Marco OK. And how fast can you go on motorways here?
Beth Well, the speed limit is 70 miles per hour, but lots of people go faster.

GLOSSARY

journey	an act of travelling from one place to another
How far is it?	= How many kilometres/miles is it?
get there / to a place	arrive at a place
motorway	a large and wide fast road between towns
exit	the place where you leave, e.g. a motorway, a cinema, etc.
main road	a large, important road
busy	A busy road has a lot of cars on it.
	OPP quiet
unfortunately	a word that shows you are not happy about sth
traffic [U]	all the cars and vehicles that are on a road
rush hour	the busy time when people are going to and from work
speed limit	the fastest that you are allowed to travel on a road
miles per hour (mph)	how fast sb is travelling (ALSO kilometres per hour OR kph)

4 Cover the glossary, then write your answers.

- the place where you leave somewhere such as a motorway
 1 all the cars and vehicles that are on a road
 2 a busy time when people go to and from work
 3 an important road in or around a town
 4 What does *mph* mean?
 5 the fastest you can travel on a road
 6 the opposite of a *busy road*
 7 a very large fast road between big towns and cities

exit

5 Complete the sentences.

- You can take a country road, but the motorway is quicker.
 1 It's a very _____ road in the rush _____.
 2 I saw an accident this morning on the _____ road into town.
 3 How _____ is it from Paris to Marseille? ~ It's 740 kms.
 4 Does it take long to _____ there? ~ Yes, _____ it does. It's very tiring.
 5 It's a long _____ and takes about five hours.

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Is there a lot of traffic on motorways? If so, why? _____

 2 How fast can cars travel on motorways? _____

 3 Do you use motorways a lot? Why? / Why not? _____

 4 Do you drive on the left in your country? _____

 5 What time is the rush hour in the morning and evening? _____

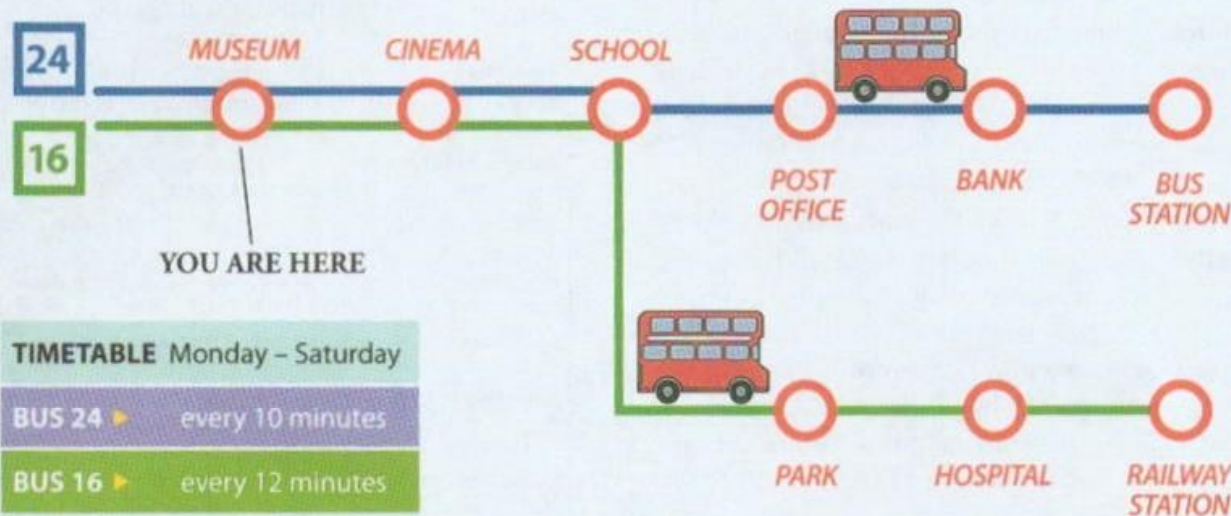
 6 What was the last long journey you went on? _____



TEST YOURSELF

52 Buses

BUS ROUTES 24 and 16



TIMETABLE Monday – Saturday



BUS 24 ▶ every 10 minutes

BUS 16 ▶ every 12 minutes

3 minutes from stop to stop

Questions	Answers
Excuse me, which bus do I get to the park?	The 16.
Does the 24 go to the railway station?	No, it doesn't.
Does the 24 stop near the bank?	Yes, it does.
Does the 16 stop outside the park?	Yes, it does.
How often does the 16 run?	Every 12 minutes.
How many stops is it to the park?	Three.
Which is the last stop for the 24?	The bus station.
Where do I get off for the cinema?	At the next stop.
How long does it take to the bus station?	It takes about 15 minutes.

GLOSSARY

route	the way you take to go somewhere. A bus route is the way a bus usually takes.
timetable	a list of times when sth happens: a bus/train timetable
excuse me	We say excuse me when we start talking to sb we don't know, especially in the street to ask a question.
get a train, bus, etc.	travel on a bus, train, etc. ALSO take a train, bus, etc.
go	travel to a place
near the bank	outside the bank
	
run	take passengers on a bus, train, etc.
every (12 minutes)	e.g. 9.00, 9.12, 9.24, etc.
(bus) stop	the place where you get on or off a bus
last stop	the bus stop at the end of the route
get off	leave the bus get on
next stop	the first stop after now

SPOTLIGHT *How long does it take?*

How long? = how much time? (NOT *how long time*?)

■ **How long does it take** (to get) to the station?

~ It takes about 10 minutes.

~ It takes a long time.

~ It doesn't take long. = It takes a short time.

- 1 Match a word or phrase from group A to a word or phrase from group B to make a new phrase or sentence.

A	bus ✓	get off	How long	the next	It doesn't	Excuse
B	the bus	stop	me	take long	route ✓	does it take?

► bus route

- 2 Write the words in the correct order to make questions.

- near / bank / stop / does / the 24 / the Does the 24 stop near the bank ?
- 1 post office / the 24 / does / outside / stop / the ?
- 2 off / do / get / I / where / cinema / for / the ?
- 3 park / the 24 / does / to / go / the ?
- 4 often / run / does / the 24 / how ?
- 5 which / stop / last / is / for / the 16 ?
- 6 stops / many / to / how / it / railway station / is / the ?
- 7 school / me / bus / which / excuse / get / I / to / do / the ?
- 8 take / the / long / how / does / to / railway station / it ?

- 3 Answer the questions in Exercise 2, using the bus information on page 104. Remember, you are at the museum.

- Yes, it does.
- 1 5
- 2 6
- 3 7
- 4 minutes. 8 minutes.

- 4 Complete the text, using the bus map information on page 104.

If you ► get a bus from the museum, there are two bus
 (1) you can take: the 24 and the 16. For the 24, the first
 (2) is the museum, and the (3) stop
 is the cinema. The (4) stop is the bus station, where
 everybody has to (5) the bus. The 16 starts at the
 museum too, but it (6) to the railway station. The
 (7) tells you how often the buses (8)
 The 24 route is very frequent: it runs (9) ten minutes. It
 only (10) two or three minutes to get from the school
 to the park, and it stops (11) the park. After that, it goes
 to the hospital. And it doesn't take (12) - only another
 three or four minutes.



- 5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

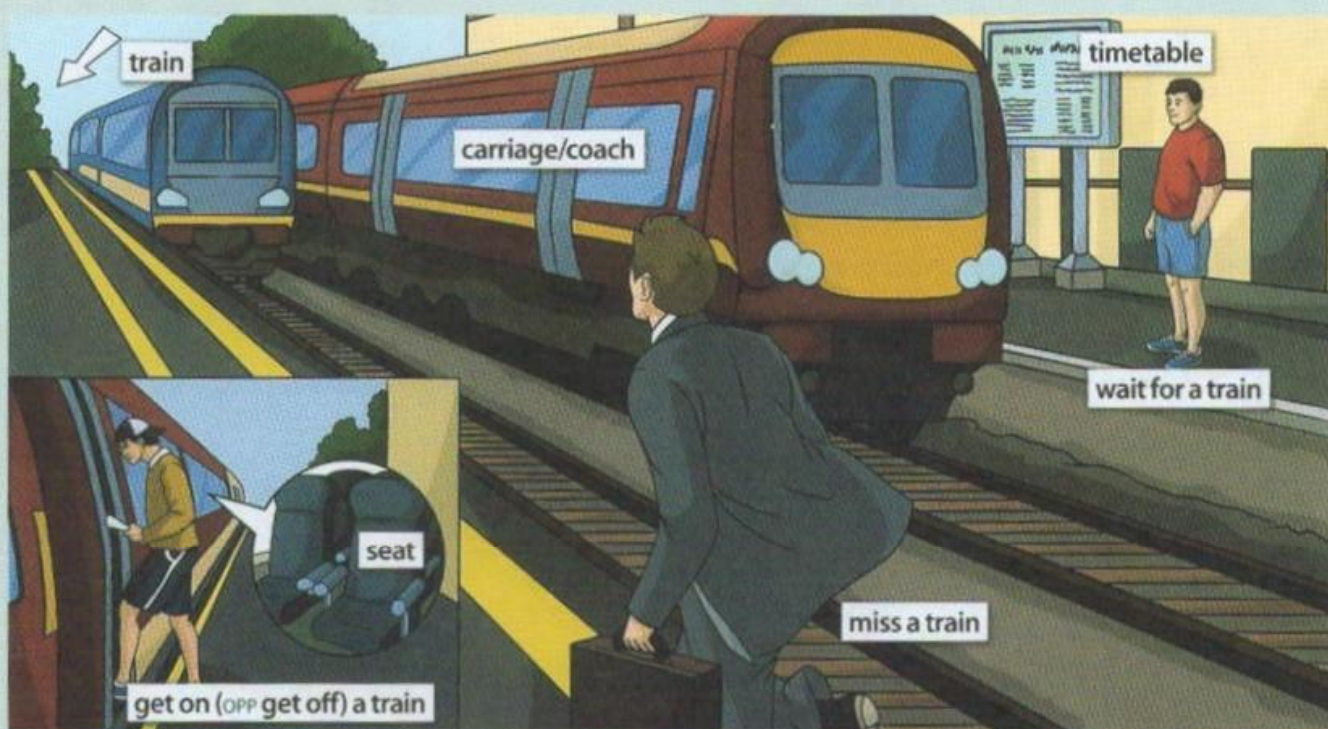
- 1 Is there a bus stop near your house? If so, where is it?
- 2 Which bus routes stop there?
- 3 Where do they go?
- 4 How often do they run?
- 5 Do you often get the bus? If so, where to?
- 6 How many stops is it?
- 7 How long does it take?



TEST YOURSELF

53 Trains

A At the station



GLOSSARY

get/take a train	travel by train
the 12 o'clock train	= the train that leaves at 12.00
journey	an act of travelling from one place to another
fare	money that you pay to travel by train, and also by bus, taxi, etc.
a fast train	a train that goes very quickly OPP a slow train
railway/train station	a place where trains stop and people get on and off. People meet at a station.

SPOTLIGHT *last*

Last has different meanings:

- 1 final: The **last** train leaves at 11.30 p.m. (= there are no trains after 11.30 p.m.)
Marseille is the **last** stop.
- 2 most recent, the one before now:
My **last** train journey was two weeks ago.

1 Answer the questions.

- ▶ What's another verb for *get a train*?
- 1 What's the opposite of *a slow train*?
- 2 What's the opposite of *get on the train*?
- 3 What do you call the money you pay to travel by train?
- 4 What's another way of saying *the train that leaves at 7?*
- 5 What do you sit on in a train?
- 6 Where do you get a train?
- 7 Where do you look for the train times?
- 8 What's another word for a *coach* on a train?

take a train

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We can get the 7.45 train.
- 1 How much was the train _____?
- 2 Our seats are in the second _____.
- 3 I'm sorry I'm late. I _____ the train.
- 4 We can _____ a train from Zug to Bern.
- 5 The _____ train is just after midnight.
- 6 Quickly, _____ the train before it goes.
- 7 We _____ for the train in the café.
- 8 Look at the _____ for a later train.
- 9 They had to wait _____ the last train.
- 10 Don't take the 7.15 – that's a _____ train.
- 11 It's long train _____ from Rome to Paris.



TEST YOURSELF

B Buying a ticket

It's now 9.30. A **passenger** is talking to someone at the **ticket office** in the station.

- Passenger** A return to Cardiff, please.
Ticket office That's £21.40.
(The passenger takes the ticket.)
Passenger Thank you ... when's the **next** train?
Ticket office There's one that **leaves** at 10.07.
Passenger OK. Do I have to **change**?
Ticket office No, it's **direct**.
Passenger That's good. And when does it **get to** Cardiff?
Ticket office 10.56.
Passenger Right. And which **platform** is it?
Ticket office Platform 6, **over there**.
Passenger OK. Thanks a lot.



GLOSSARY

passenger	a person travelling or going to travel in a train, bus, etc.
ticket office	the place where you buy tickets at a station
return (ticket)	a ticket to travel from a place and back again OPP single one way only
next	The next train is the first one after now.
leave	go away from a place or person OPP get to / arrive at (Oxford, the station, etc.)
change (trains)	get off one train and get on another
direct	A journey is direct if you don't need to change trains.
platform	the part of the station where you get on and off the train
over there	(see picture) OPP over here a place or position near you

SPOTLIGHT *book/reserve something*

If you **book/reserve a seat**, you buy a train ticket days or weeks before you travel, with a seat number on the ticket. For a hotel, you can **book/reserve a room**, and in a restaurant you can **book/reserve a table**.

3 Complete the sentences using words from the box.

direct London office change train is it ✓ there return passengers seat

- Which platform is it?
- Can I book a _____?
- Do I have to _____?
- Do you want a single or _____?
- Is the train _____?
- Were there many _____?
- When do we get to _____?
- Where's the ticket _____?
- When's the next _____?
- The ticket office is over _____.

4 Look at the timetable and complete the text.

Platform	Cheltenham	Kemble	London Paddington
2	dep 8.35	9.08	
		9.22	arr 10.45

I'm going from Cheltenham to London Paddington next month. There isn't a direct train around 8.30, so I have to (1) _____ at Kemble. The train (2) _____ Cheltenham at 8.35 from (3) _____ 2, and it (4) _____ to Kemble at 9.08. Then I have to (5) _____ the 9.22, which gets (6) _____ London Paddington at 10.45. A (7) _____ costs £22, but if I want to come back the same day, I'll get a (8) _____. I'll probably (9) _____ my seat because it will be very busy at that time in the morning.

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- When was your last train journey? _____
- Was it a single or a return? _____
- Where did you go, and why? _____
- Can you remember the train fare? _____
- Did you book a seat before you travelled? _____
- Was it direct, or did you have to change trains? _____



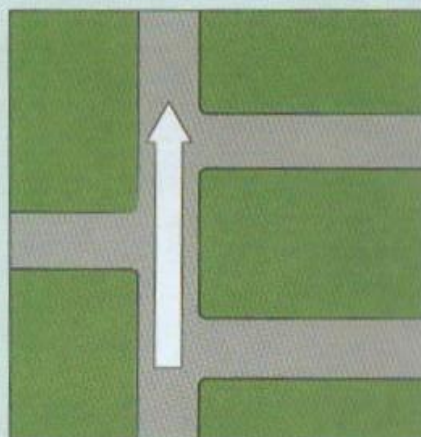
TEST YOURSELF

54 Directions

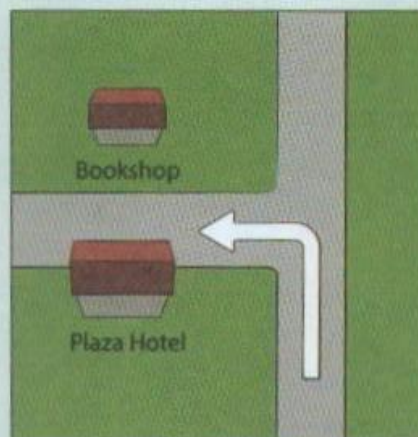


GLOSSARY

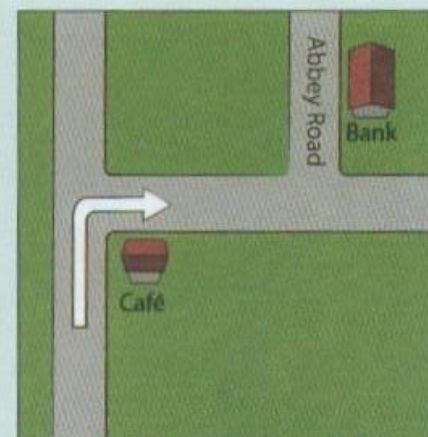
directions	words that tell you how to get to a place
excuse me	When you want to talk to sb you don't know, especially in the street, it is polite to say Excuse me.
near	not far away, close to sb or sth
nearest	the first one from where you are
way	a road that you must take to get to a place



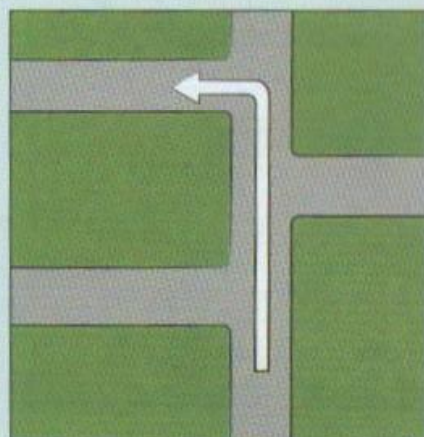
Go straight on. OR Keep going.
It's about ten minutes.



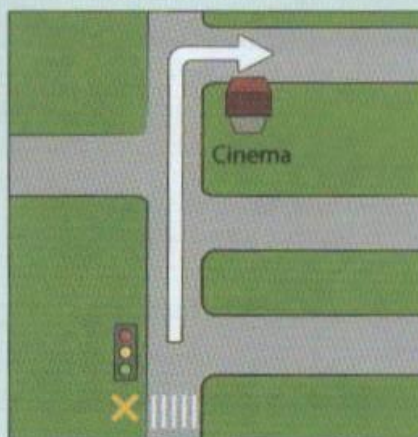
Go along here and turn left.
The bookshop is **opposite** the Plaza Hotel.



Turn right at the café, then **left** into Abbey Road, and the bank is **on your right**.



Go along here and take the **second turning on the left**.



OK. Cross the road at the traffic lights, then go straight on and it's the **third turning on the right**. There's a cinema on the corner.

1 Cross out one word in each sentence.

- ▶ Turn right into the Duke Street.
 1 The bookshop is opposite of the hotel.
 2 Go straight on and keep to going.
 3 Is there a cinema near from here?
 4 It's on your left side.
 5 Turn to left and go straight on.
 6 It's the third road turning on the right.
 7 Where's the most nearest post office?

2 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ here / there D
 1 cross / corner
 2 third / turning
 3 second / opposite
 ▶ here / near S
 4 straight / way
 5 right / opposite
 6 there / thanks

3 Make sentences from the words.

- ▶ turn / and / go / right / here / along Go along here and turn right.
 1 excuse / I / get / do / museum / the / me / how / to?
 2 here / left / along / and / turn / go
 3 post office / me / near / there / is / a / excuse / here?
 4 the / turning / it's / right / on / the / third
 5 way / the / excuse / to / know / me / do / station / the / you?
 6 traffic / the / lights / road / at / the / cross

4 Complete the phrases with a single word.

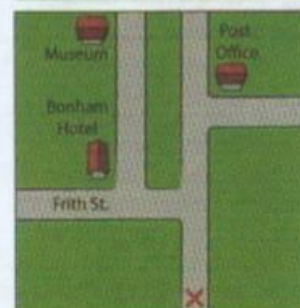
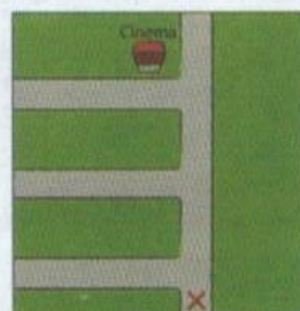
- ▶ turn left (OR right)
 1 Take the second
 2 Thanks very
 3 It's on the
 4 Excuse
 5 Cross the
 6 Keep
 7 Go straight
 8 Go along
 9 I want to go to the bank. Do you know the?
 10 Turn left at the traffic

5 Complete the dialogues. Use the maps to help you.

- 1 A Excuse me me How do I (1) to the cinema from here?
 B OK. Go (2) on, and it's the second ... no, the third (3) on the (4)
 A Thanks very (5)
 B That's OK, no (6)
 2 A (1) me. Is there a post office (2) here?
 B Yes. Go (3) here and (4) the second (5) on the (6) The post office is (7) the bank.
 A (8) very much.
 B (9) OK. No problem.

6 Look at the map. Give directions.

- 1 A Excuse me. Do you know the way to the Bonham Hotel?
 YOU Yes. Go straight on, then
 2 A Excuse me. How do I get to the museum?
 YOU
 3 A Excuse me. Is there a post office near here?
 YOU



TEST YOURSELF

55 Signs and notices



GLOSSARY

sign	a small piece of writing or a picture that tells you sth
notice	a piece of writing that tells you sth, usually information
closed	not open SYN shut
toilet	(see picture)
exit	a way to go out of a building SYN way out
sale	a time when a shop sells things for less money than usual
keep left	stay on the left ALSO keep right
out of order	broken; not working correctly
no parking	= do not leave your car here
danger	the possibility that sth bad may happen
entrance	a way to go into a building enter v
feed	give food to sb or sth
no vacancies	In a hotel window, no vacancies means that the hotel is full.
queue	wait in a line of people
mind	be careful of sb or sth: mind the step; mind your head (above a low door)
gap	the space between two things (here, the space between a train and the platform)
keep off (the grass)	do not go on (the grass)

SPOTLIGHT allow and let

If you **allow** somebody to do something, you say that they can do something **SYN let**.

- My parents **allow me to go** on holiday with friends.
- My parents **let me go** on holiday with friends.

Allow is often used in the negative.

- Smoking **is not allowed** = no smoking.

In spoken English, you can say.

- You **aren't allowed to smoke** in cinemas. (NOT ~~it's not allowed to smoke in cinemas.~~)

1 Match 1-9 with a-j.

▶ NO SMOKING

1 No parking

2 Exit

3 Please queue here

4 OUT OF ORDER

5 Mind the gap

6 SALE

7 Entrance

8 No vacancies

9 DANGER

a The hotel is full.

b It's broken.

c It's not safe here.

d You can go in here.

e Everything is cheaper at the moment.

f You can't leave your car here.

g Do not smoke here. ✓

h This is the way out.

i Be careful when you get off the train.

j Wait in a line here.

2 Where can you see these signs? Circle the correct answer.

▶ Keep left: in the underground / in a supermarket

1 No Parking: in a road / in a shop

2 Toilets: in a restaurant / in a kitchen

3 Entrance: in a school / in a house

4 SALE: in a shop window / in a restaurant

5 OUT OF ORDER: on a menu / on a drinks machine

6 No vacancies: on a bridge / in a hotel window

7 DANGER: near the sea / near a shopping centre

8 Please queue this side: in a bank / on a telephone

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ It clearly says no parking in front of the garage doors.

1 There are NO SMOKING everywhere on the underground.

2 Did you read that ? It said, dogs are not allowed on the beach.

3 There was a big sign for a in the window of that clothes shop.

4 The notice says that you aren't to walk on the grass.

5 It said CLOSED on the door, but the sales assistant me go in and buy something.

6 You have to mind the when you get off the train.

7 I'm afraid the shop is for lunch at the moment. It doesn't again until 2.30.

8 The sign says: 'Don't the ducks'. Bread is bad for them.

9 the step when you go out of the door.

10 We found the for women, but we couldn't find one for men.

4 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Can we go up on the right side?

~ No, the sign says keep left.

1 Can I leave my car here?

~ No, it says .

2 Can we go out here?

~ No, it says .

3 Can I have a cigarette?

~ No, the sign says .

4 Can we walk across the park here?

~ No, look, the sign says .

5 Can we use the machine over there?

~ No, it says .

6 Can we give this bread to the monkeys?

~ No, the sign says .

7 Can we take the dog in the park?

~ No, it says that dogs aren't .

8 Can we stand and wait over there?

~ No, it says, please .

9 Is it safe to swim here?

~ No, it says .

10 Can we walk up the left side?

~ No, it says .

5 Complete these notices.

NO <u>PARKING</u>	NO	PLEASE	MIND	MIND	KEEP
----------------------	-------------	--------------------------	------------------------	------------------------	---------------



TEST YOURSELF

A Buildings and places in a town



castle



palace



church



museum



art gallery



market



park



library



post office



tower



square



bridge

GLOSSARY

building	e.g. a shop, a church, a castle (NOT <i>square</i> , <i>park</i> , etc.)
place	a particular building, shop, town, country or area: <i>This is a good place to eat. Prague is a lovely place to visit. The park is a nice place to go for a walk.</i>

- 1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.
Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ place / park

D

1 castle / market

4 library / bridge

7 park / art gallery

2 square / park

5 palace / bridge

8 church / bridge

3 tower / post office

6 church / museum

9 market / castle

- 2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. More than one answer is possible.

▶ You can see all the main town buildings in the square.

1 You can see pictures and paintings in an

2 You can buy fruit and vegetables at a

3 You can read and study in a

4 You can learn about how people lived in the past in a

5 Children enjoy playing in the

6 You can see the city below from the top of the

7 You can buy stamps at the

8 The best place to see the river is if you stand on the

9 Some people get married in a

10 Churches, libraries and post offices are different kinds of

11 Squares, bridges and parks are different in a town.

- 3 **ABOUT YOU** Are the sentences true for you? If not, write true sentences about where you live, or tell another student.

▶ There are no bridges where I live. False. There are three bridges in my town.

1 There is one post office where I live.

2 There's a good library and I often go there.

3 There's an art gallery and a museum.

4 There are a lot of parks where I live.

5 The buildings are all very old.

6 There's a market where I live every day.

7 There's a big square where people sit.

8 It's a terrible place to live.



TEST YOURSELF

B Describing a town

Word	Example	Meaning
opinion	What's your opinion of the new bridge? ~ I think it's wonderful. In my opinion , it's too big.	Your opinion is what you think about something. SYN view
busy	It's busy in the summer when the tourists arrive.	If a place is busy , it is full of people, cars, activity, etc. OPP quiet
crowded	The bars get very crowded at night.	full of people or too full of people crowd (of people) <i>n</i>
safe	It's safe during the day, but can be dangerous at night.	If a town is safe , there is not much crime there. OPP dangerous
dirty	Some of the old buildings are very dirty .	OPP clean
pollution	There's a lot of pollution because of all the industry.	dirty and dangerous air, gas, water, etc.
there's a lot to do there's lots to do	There's a lot to do in the evening – clubs, cinemas, and so on.	= there are many activities and places to visit OPP there's nothing to do
noise	There's too much noise at night. It's impossible to sleep.	something that you can hear that is often loud and not nice noisy <i>adj</i> OPP quiet

4 Underline the correct word.

- The trains are usually crowded / *crowd* when people are going to work.
- 1 It's **noise** / *noisy* down by the station.
- 2 There's **lots** / *lot* to do in the city.
- 3 What's your **view** / *think* of the town?
- 4 In my **opinion** / *idea*, it's quite safe.

- 5 Is your town a **dangerous** / *safe* place to live?
~ Yes, there isn't much crime.
- 6 It's a **dirty** / *busy* place – there's so much paper on the streets.
- 7 **It's** / *There's* nothing to do in the village.
- 8 What do you think about the **noise** / *pollution* in the river?

5 Do the speakers like the places they're talking about? Tick (✓) yes or no.

- | | YES | NO | | YES | NO |
|--|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| ► 'The streets are very dirty.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 4 'It's always very crowded at the weekends.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 1 'I think there's a lot of pollution, don't you?' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5 'There's nothing to do at night.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 'There's lots to do during the day.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | 6 'It's so clean on the coast.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 'I always feel safe at night.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | 7 'There's very little noise at night.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| | | | 8 'It's a really dangerous city.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

6 Complete the dialogue.

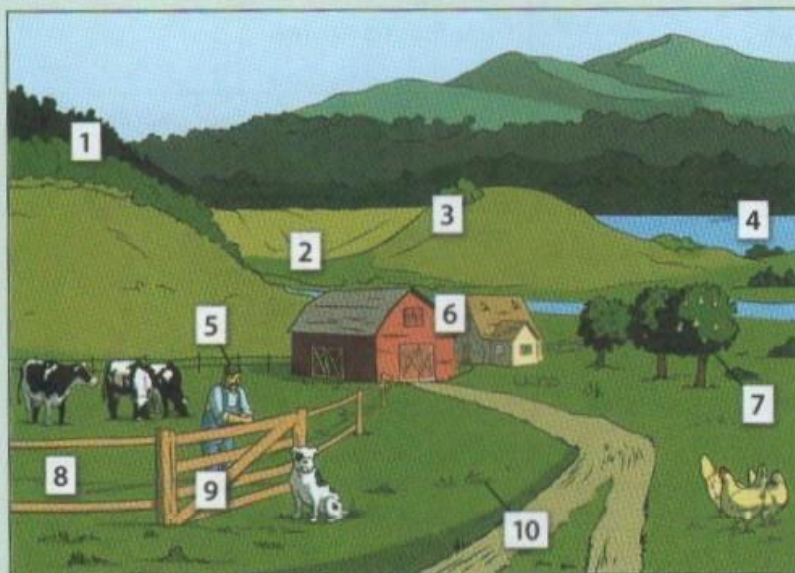
- A What's your ► **view** of Walton?
- B Well, in my (1), it's a great place to live and work.
- A Yes, but is it safe?
- B Well, every town or city is a bit (2) at night, but there's a lot to (3) here.
- A And is it very (4) in the centre?
- B There aren't so many people on weekdays, but there are big (5) of people at the weekends, mainly local people and tourists. One thing I don't like is that there is so much traffic. The air isn't very (6) because there's a lot of (7) from the cars.
- A How about outside the centre?
- B Well, there are some beautiful parks, and nice, (8) places to sit in the sun and do nothing.



TEST YOURSELF

57 The countryside

A On a farm



- 1 wood
- 2 valley
- 3 hill
- 4 lake
- 5 farmer
- 6 farm (the house and the fields)
- 7 tree
- 8 field
- 9 gate
- 10 grass

Jack Robson's family have been in **farming** for over a hundred years, and Jack now **owns** Eatwell Farm. He keeps cows and **produces** about a million litres of milk a year. He also **grows** fruit: pears and apples.

GLOSSARY

farming	managing a farm , or working on it
own	If you own sth, it is yours. The person who owns sth is the owner .
produce	make or grow sth, e.g. milk, cheese, cars
grow	Farmers grow potatoes, rice, fruit, etc. to sell.

1 Circle the verbs.

wood have valley own gate grass field produce tree farmer lake grow hill

2 Look at the picture. Are the sentences true or false? Write T or F.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ► There's a lake near the trees. <u>T</u> | |
| 1 There is nothing in the field. | 6 Some of the cows are eating grass. |
| 2 The dog's next to the gate. | 7 The owner of the farm produces milk. |
| 3 The farmer owns fruit trees. | 8 There are a lot of trees near the farmer. |
| 4 The wood is on the hill. | 9 The farmer grows vegetables. |
| 5 A dog lives on the farm. | 10 The lake's in the valley. |

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the words.

- Do you live near a w_o_o_d?
- 1 Do you live in a v__ll__y or on a h__ll?
- 2 Is there a l__k__ near your home?
- 3 Can you see any gra_____ where you are now?
- 4 Can you see a g_____e where you are now?
- 5 Are there any f_____ds near your home?
- 6 Do you ____wn a dog?
- 7 Is fa_____g very important in your area?
- 8 What do farmers gr____w or pr____d_____e in your country?

Yes, I do. There's one up the hill.

4 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B In a garden

WHY I LOVE **my garden** (Joel, 38)

My **garden** is so important to me because it's the place where I can be **creative**. I love being out there in the **fresh air**, enjoying the beauty of **nature**. In one **area** of my garden, I grow fruit and vegetables. My children love to get their fingers dirty in the **earth** when they **plant** our strawberries. They **water** the strawberry plants and **pick** the strawberries in summer. Another area is full of **flowers**, but I leave another part **wild** and **natural** to help birds and insects.



garden



plant v plant n



water v



pick v

GLOSSARY

creative	Someone who is creative has a lot of ideas or is good at making new things. create v
fresh air	clean and cool air
nature	all the plants, animals, etc. in the world, and all the things that happen in it that are not made or caused by people natural adj
area	part of a place that you use for a particular activity
wild	Plants or animals that live and grow in nature are wild .

5 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| ▶ Plants grow in <u>e</u> | a flowers. |
| 1 Don't pick the | b some beans. |
| 2 I need fresh | c a beautiful garden. |
| 3 Please water | d area in my garden. |
| 4 I've planted | e earth. ✓ |
| 5 She created | f air. |
| 6 I've got a wild | g the plants. |

6 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

water nature creative pick earth garden ✓ natural area fresh

- ▶ Do you grow fruit and vegetables in your garden ?
- You have to plants in the summer if it doesn't rain.
 - air is good for you; get as much as possible.
 - Some people like to have an where they can grow vegetables.
 - You grow plants in the; then they just need water.
 - Nowadays, people like gardens which are
 - Freida's garden is full of interesting ideas - she's very
 - The strawberries in dad's garden are ready to eat. Let's go and them.
 - My sister is very interested in : trees, plants, animals, etc.

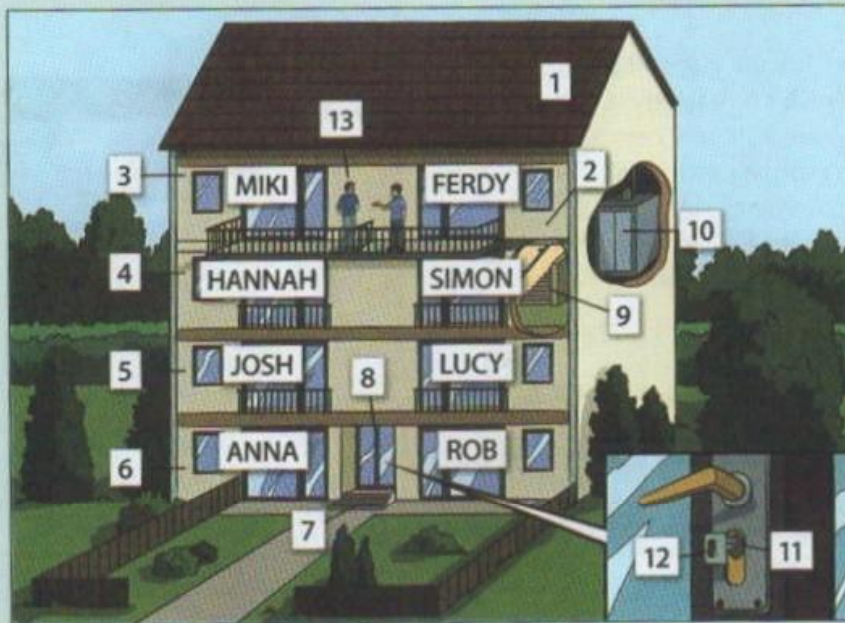
7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- Do you ever pick flowers from a garden?
- Do you ever pick fruit?
- Do you grow any plants - inside or outside your home? If so, what?
- How important are these things to you?
 fresh air the beauty of nature
 wild flowers areas in towns with plants and grasses



TEST YOURSELF

A Flats



- 1 roof
- 2 flat/apartment
- 3 (on) the top floor
- 4 (on) the second floor
- 5 (on) the first floor
- 6 (on) the ground floor
- 7 steps *pl*
- 8 front door
- 9 stairs *pl*
- 10 lift
- 11 lock
- 12 key (Put the key in the lock to open the door.)
- 13 neighbour (Miki and Ferdy are neighbours.)

1 Look at the picture. Write your answers.

► Who lives on the second floor?

Hannah and Simon

1 Who lives on the ground floor?

2 Where does Miki live?

3 Who is Josh's neighbour on the first floor?

4 Which floor does Ferdy live on?

5 What is above the top floor?

6 How many flats are there?

7 Where are the steps?

At the _____

8 What's below the top floor?

9 Where does Lucy live?

10 How does Ferdy get up to his flat?

He uses _____ or _____

11 How do you get in the front door?

2 Complete the words.

► k e y

1 l _ _ _ t

4 f _ _ _ _ t d _ _ _ r

7 r _ _ _ f

2 ap _ _ _ _ _ nt

5 s _ _ _ _ s

8 s _ _ _ _ _ s

3 g _ _ _ _ _ d f _ _ _ _ r

6 ne _ _ _ _ _ _ r

9 t _ p f _ _ _ _ r

3 Complete the words.

1 Do you live in a flat/apartment? If so, which f _ _ _ _ _ do you live on?

2 What's on the g _ _ _ _ _ floor?

3 Who are your n _ _ _ _ _ ?

4 Has the building got a l _ _ _ _ _ or just s _ _ _ _ _ ?

5 Are there s _ _ _ _ _ to the front door?

6 Do you need a k _ _ _ _ _ to open the front door?

ABOUT YOU

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Houses



BATHFORD

Modern family **home** in this quiet village with lovely **views** of the countryside. Through the **hall**¹, you come to the **living room**², **dining room**³, **study**⁴ and a **kitchen**⁵. **Upstairs** there are four good-sized **bedrooms**⁶ and a family **bathroom**⁷. **Outside** there is a large garden and **parking** for two cars.

GLOSSARY

modern	of the present time OPP old
view	what you can see from a place
upstairs	to or on a higher level in a building OPP downstairs
outside	not in a house or other building OPP inside
parking [U]	a place where you can park (= leave) your car

SPOTLIGHT *flat, house, home*

A **flat** is a number of rooms on one floor of a building.
SYN **apartment**

A **house** is a building that is made for people to live in. It can have more than one floor.

Home is where you live (in a flat or a house).

5 Find the end of each word.

study / view modern living room hall kitchen home dining room upstairs bedroom parking bathroom

6 Complete the texts.

I live in a small ► **modern** house – it's only four years old. It's got a (1) _____ room, dining room, kitchen, two bedrooms and a (2) _____. It's in the town centre, and from the living room I've only got a (3) _____ of the railway station, which is not very nice. To the left of the house, I've got a space to (4) _____ my car, and there's a beautiful, small garden, so I can eat (5) _____ when the weather is nice.

My brother's got a big house in a village near me, and from the house you can see fantastic (6) _____ of the countryside. Through the front door, you come into the (7) _____, and from there you can see the living room, dining room, large (8) _____ and a (9) _____, where my brother works. (10) _____, there are four (11) _____ and two (12) _____, so there's lots of space when I visit with friends. There's also enough (13) _____ for two cars, and a large garden. In the summer, they eat (14) _____ all the time, and I think that's better than being (15) _____.

7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

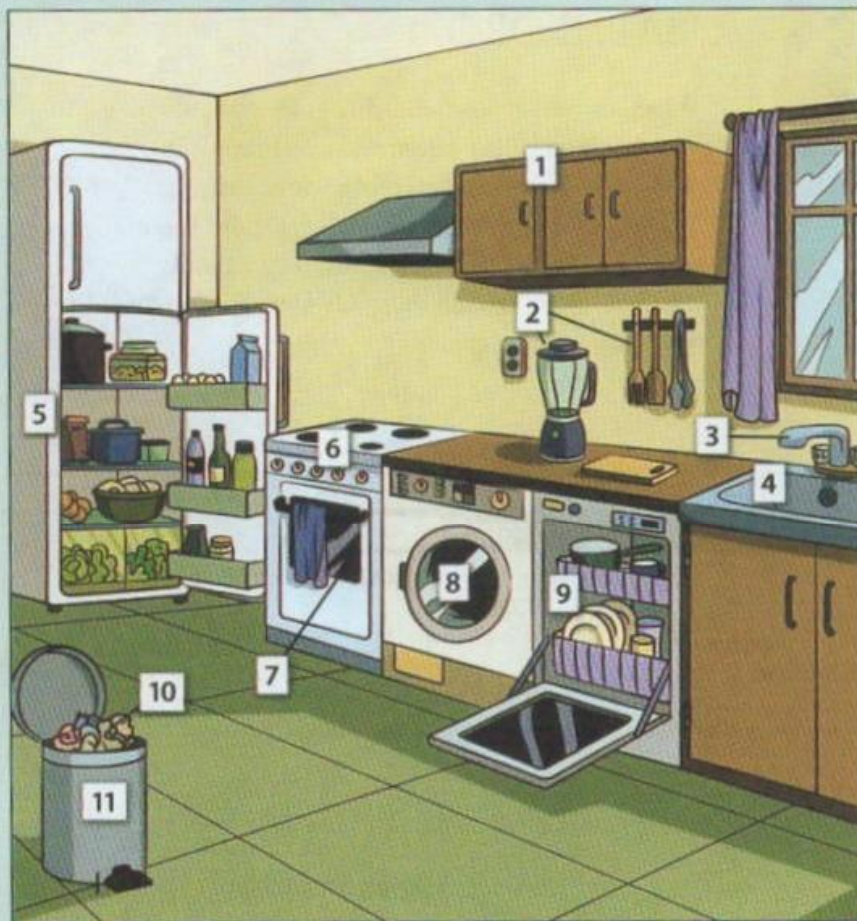
- Where you live, do most houses have two floors, or more? _____
- Do houses have the same rooms as the picture, or something different? _____
- Do they have parking? If so, inside or outside? _____
- Are most houses modern where you live? _____
- Are there more houses in towns or the countryside? _____
- Are houses more expensive if they have a good view or a garden? _____



TEST YOURSELF

59 Kitchen

A In the kitchen



- 1 cupboard
- 2 (kitchen) equipment [U]
- 3 tap
- 4 sink
- 5 fridge
- 6 cooker
- 7 oven
- 8 washing machine
- 9 dishwasher
- 10 rubbish
- 11 bin
(The bin is **full**. OPP **empty**
You need to **empty** the bin.
OPP **fill**)

SPOTLIGHT turn something on/off

You can **turn on/off** something electrical.

- **Turn the light on. Turn the dishwasher off.**
- **Turn on/off** the washing machine.

You can also **turn on/off** water and gas.

- **Turn the tap on. Turn the gas cooker off.**
(NOT *Open/close the tap/gas.*)

- 1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.
Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------------|-------|
| ▶ kitchen / <u>fridge</u> | <u>D</u> | 4 tap / <u>machine</u> | _____ |
| 1 <u>oven</u> / <u>cupboard</u> | _____ | 5 equipment / <u>empty</u> | _____ |
| 2 <u>turn on</u> / <u>rubbish</u> | _____ | 6 <u>dishwasher</u> / <u>machine</u> | _____ |
| 3 <u>cooker</u> / <u>cupboard</u> | _____ | 7 <u>cooker</u> / <u>full</u> | _____ |

- 2 Complete the sentences using vocabulary from the picture.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ Put the milk in the <u>fridge</u> . | |
| 1 Put those dirty clothes in the w _____ | 7 Is the dishwasher f _____? |
| _____ | 8 Can you t _____ the oven _____, please? |
| 2 Put the dirty plates in the d _____ or the s _____. | 9 Is the r _____ bin full? |
| 3 Put the cups and bowls in the c _____. | 10 Can you e _____ the bin, please? |
| 4 Put the empty boxes in the b _____. | 11 Could you turn the hot water t _____ off? |
| 5 Put the meat in the o _____. | 12 Have you got a lot of kitchen e _____? |
| 6 Put the dessert in the f _____. | 13 The oven is part of the c _____. |

- 3 **ABOUT YOU** Write down anything in the picture you have got or haven't got in your kitchen.

- ▶ We've got a dishwasher.
We haven't got a washing machine in the kitchen. It's in another room.



TEST YOURSELF

B Jobs in the kitchen

Everyday tasks: I have to ...

- do the housework [U]
- do the washing up¹ [U]
SYN wash the dishes [pl]
- do the washing² [U]
- do the ironing³ [U]
- clean⁴ the cooker and cupboards
- prepare and cook⁵ meals for the family
- look after the children when they come home from school
- feed⁶ the cats



GLOSSARY

everyday normal, not special

task a piece of work that you must do, often difficult and not nice

have to (do sth) used for saying that sb must do sth, or that sth must happen:
*I **have to** cook the meals / clean the house.*

do the housework [U]

do work in the house, e.g. cleaning and washing.

Be careful: **housework** = cleaning the house;

homework = work teachers give students to do after class.

prepare

make something ready: ***prepare** the lunch/dinner*

look after sb

do the things for sb that they need: *I **look after** my grandmother because she can't see very well.*

4 Circle the correct word.

► a daily task / ironing

1 I feed / prepare the breakfast.

2 I do my housework / homework on the bus.

3 I make / do the washing up.

4 I clean / feed the kitchen.

5 I look after / cook the dog.

6 I have to / have cook the dinner.

5 Complete the sentences using different words

► Do you do it daily? ~ Yes, it's an everyday task.

1 Do you give the cats their food? ~ No, I never _____ them. My mother does.

2 Do you wash the clothes? ~ No, I don't _____ the _____. My cousin does it.

3 Is it an easy job? ~ No, actually it's quite a difficult _____.

4 Do you wash the dishes? ~ Yes, my mum says I have to do the _____.

5 Do you clean the house? ~ Yes, I always _____ the _____. Nobody else does it!

6 Do you do the tasks your teacher gives you? ~ Yes, I _____ my _____.

7 Do you spend a lot of time with the children? ~ Yes, I _____ them all day.

8 Is it necessary for you to do all these tasks? ~ Yes, I _____ do them.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

WHO DOES THE MOST WORK IN YOUR HOME?

Who does the housework? _____

Who cooks the dinner? _____

Who does the washing-up? _____

Who cleans the kitchen? _____

Who does the washing? _____

Who does the ironing? _____

Who does most of the everyday tasks? Why? _____



TEST YOURSELF

60 Bedroom and bathroom

A Bedroom

Hi! I'm Kimiko and I'm living in an **international** student house where I have all I need. There's a **bed**¹ with **sheets**², and a small **table**³ and **lamp**⁴ next to the bed. There's a large **wardrobe**⁵ for my clothes, and a desk and chair, which I use all the time when I'm studying. I've put a **few pictures**⁶ on the **wall**⁷ to make it feel like home. There's **space** under the bed for my **suitcase**⁸ and boxes. The **furniture** is all **wooden** and quite nice.



GLOSSARY

international International student accommodation has people from many different countries. **National** is about one country: **national** newspapers/holidays
a few some, but not many

space [U] a place that is big enough for sth or sb to go into
SYN room [U]: There's **space/room** for you to sit here. There's **space/room** for three chairs here.
furniture [U] tables, chairs, beds, etc. A bed is a **piece of furniture**.
wooden made of **wood** (see picture)

- 1 Put the words below into the correct group, according to the pronunciation of the underlined sound. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

cat ✓	tuna ✓	national ✓	picture	seat	Portuguese	match
international	suitcase	table	nature	dictionary	sheet	furniture

GROUP A ► cat

GROUP B ► tuna

GROUP C ► national

- 2 Look at the picture. Match 1-9 with a-i.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|-------|-----------------------------|
| ► The table's | d | a made of wood. |
| 1 The lamp's | ..... | b pictures above the bed. |
| 2 The sheets are | ..... | c under the bed. |
| 3 The pictures are | ..... | d next to the bed. ✓ |
| 4 The furniture's all | ..... | e the furniture she needs. |
| 5 The wardrobe's | ..... | f on the table, by the bed. |
| 6 There are a few | ..... | g next to the desk. |
| 7 The suitcase is | ..... | h on the wall. |
| 8 Kimiko's room has all | ..... | i on the bed. |

- 3 Write the answers.

- | | |
|--|--|
| ► You sleep on it: <u>a bed</u> | 8 If something is made of wood, it's |
| 1 A place where you keep clothes: | 9 You put books or a clock by the bed on this: |
| 2 You put these on a bed: | 10 It means 'connected to just one country'. |
| 3 You put pictures on this in a room: | 11 It means 'from many different countries'. |
| 4 You put clothes in this when you travel: | 12 If you don't have many books, you only have |
| 5 You need it to read at night: | |
| 6 It means 'room to put something'. | |
| 7 A bed, a desk and a chair are all | |

- 4 **ABOUT YOU** Look at Kimiko's text about her bedroom. Write a similar text about your bedroom at home.



TEST YOURSELF

B Bathroom

- You have a wash with soap [U].
- You brush/clean your teeth with a toothbrush.
- You brush/do your hair with a brush/hairbrush.
- You have a shave with a razor or an electric razor.
- You put on make-up.



SPOTLIGHT have + noun

Notice these phrases with **have**:

- I **have a shower** every day.
- I don't **have a bath** very often.
- Do you **have a shave** every morning?
- I **have a wash** after work.

5 Circle the correct word.

► I wash / clean my teeth after eating.

1 I do / put on my hair with soap / a brush.

2 Do you have / do a bath every day?

3 She puts on / has make-up when she goes out.

4 Do you often have a shave / wash with an electric razor?

5 I brush my teeth at the toilet / washbasin.

6 I use a towel / soap after I have / make a shower.

7 I lie down in the shower / bath for fifteen minutes after work.

8 I brush / make my hair in front of the mirror / brush.

6 Complete the text.

AMELIA: When I get up in the morning, I usually have a quick ► shower, but in winter, if I have time, I like to have a (1) _____. I dry myself with a (2) _____, and quickly get dressed. Then I look in the (3) _____ and do my (4) _____. I (5) _____ my teeth standing in front of the (6) _____, and after that, I (7) _____ some make-up. I'm ready to go to work.

HARRY: I look terrible in the morning when I wake up. The first thing I do is to clean my (8) _____, and that makes me feel better. If I don't have time for a shower, I have a quick (9) _____ with soap and hot water. My hair is very short so I don't have to (10) _____ it, but I always have a (11) _____ with an electric (12) _____.

7 Complete the questions.

► How many times a week do you have a bath or shower _____?

1 Do you brush your t_____ before or after breakfast?

2 How many times a day do you do your h_____?

3 How many times a day do you look in the m_____?

4 Do you carry a b_____ in your bag?

5 If you wear m_____ - _____, do you p_____ it _____ every day or only sometimes?

6 If you shave, how often do you h_____ a shave? Do you use a r_____ or an e_____ r_____?

ABOUT YOU

I have a shower every day.

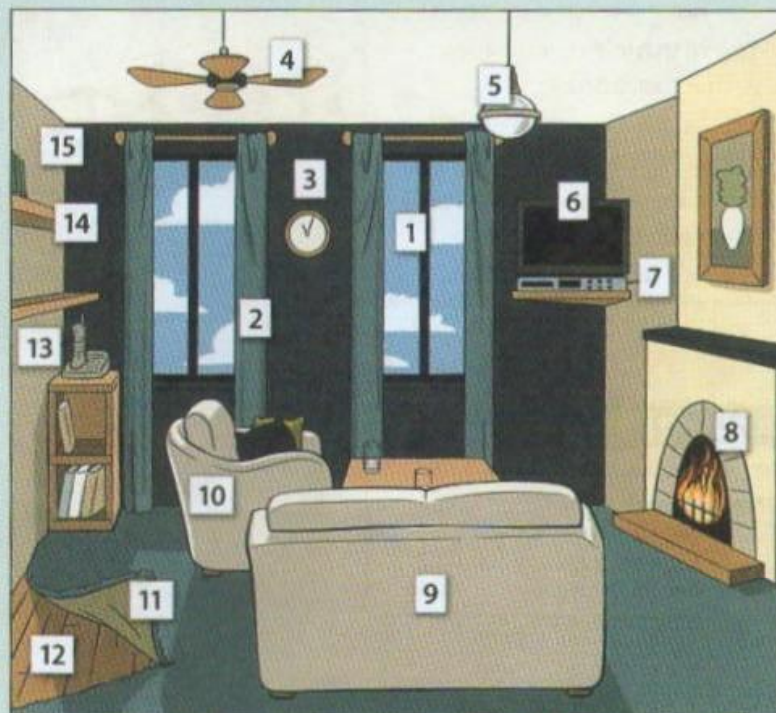
8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

61 Living room

- 1 window
- 2 curtain
- 3 clock
- 4 fan
- 5 light
- 6 TV/television
- 7 DVD player
- 8 fire
- 9 sofa
- 10 armchair
- 11 carpet
- 12 floor
- 13 telephone/phone
- 14 shelf (pl shelves)
- 15 the corner of the room



1 Complete the words.

► co _ r _ n _ e _ r

- 1 arm _ _ _ _ _ r
- 2 car _ _ _ t
- 3 f _ _ _ _ r
- 4 li _ _ _ t

- 5 wi _ _ _ _ w
- 6 f _ _ _ e
- 7 s _ _ _ a
- 8 sh _ _ _ f

- 9 te _ _ _ _ _ n
- 10 cur _ _ _ _ n
- 11 c _ _ _ _ k
- 12 te _ _ _ _ _ e

2 Look at the picture. True or false? Write T or F.

In the living room, there is only one ...

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| ► DVD player <u>T</u> | 4 clock _ _ _ _ | 8 corner _ _ _ _ | 12 carpet _ _ _ _ |
| 1 window _ _ _ _ | 5 armchair _ _ _ _ | 9 light _ _ _ _ | 13 shelf _ _ _ _ |
| 2 TV _ _ _ _ | 6 telephone _ _ _ _ | 10 curtain _ _ _ _ | 14 fire _ _ _ _ |
| 3 sofa _ _ _ _ | 7 fan _ _ _ _ | 11 floor _ _ _ _ | |

3 Complete the answers.

► You watch this in the evening:

TV/television

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 You talk to somebody on this: _ _ _ _ _ | 7 You need this when it's dark: _ _ _ _ _ |
| 2 You sit on this: _ _ _ _ _ / _ _ _ _ _ | 8 You can put a clock on this: _ _ _ _ _ |
| 3 You close these at night: _ _ _ _ _ | 9 This goes over the floor: _ _ _ _ _ |
| 4 You check the time with this: _ _ _ _ _ | 10 This is where two walls meet: _ _ _ _ _ |
| 5 You need this when it's hot: _ _ _ _ _ | 11 You look through this: _ _ _ _ _ |
| 6 You need this when it's cold: _ _ _ _ _ | |

4 ABOUT YOUR HOME Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What furniture have you got in your living room? _ _ _ _ _
- 2 Which electrical things have you got in your living room? _ _ _ _ _
- 3 Have you got these in your living room: a clock? a telephone? a carpet? If so, where are they? _ _ _ _ _



TEST YOURSELF

Are you sure you have the correct answers?
Are you a **lucky** person?
How's your brother these days?
Did you need to buy a new car?
Did you think the manager was being **rude**?
Can you get home before six o'clock?
Did you enjoy the meeting?
Is 'fall' a **regular** verb?

~ No, I'm **uncertain** about two of them.
~ I'm **lucky** with money, but **unlucky** in love.
~ Well, he smokes a lot - I think he's very **unhealthy**.
~ No, it was completely **unnecessary**.
~ Yes, I thought he was very **impolite**.
~ No, that's completely **impossible**.
~ Yes, thanks. It was quite **informal** and fun.
~ No, it's **irregular**: *fall, fell, fallen*.

GLOSSARY

uncertain	not sure OPP certain SYNS unsure/sure
lucky	If you are lucky , good things happen to you that you cannot control. OPP unlucky
unhealthy	not well, often ill OPP healthy
unnecessary	If sth is unnecessary , you don't need to do it, or you don't need it. OPP necessary
rude	not speaking or behaving in a way that is correct for the social situation SYN impolite OPP polite : In Britain, it is rude/impolite to eat with your mouth open.

SPOTLIGHT *-in-, -im-, -ir-, -un-*

Some adjectives form opposites with prefixes *in-, im-, ir-, un-*.
formal OPP **informal**
possible OPP **impossible** (*im-* before *p*)
regular OPP **irregular** (*ir-* before *r*)
Some other adjectives form opposites with the prefix *un-*.
certain OPP **uncertain** **healthy** OPP **unhealthy**

1 Correct the mistakes. Be careful: two answers are correct.

- informal informal
1 incertain
2 inlucky
3 inregular
4 impossible

- 5 innecessary
6 inhealthy
7 unsure
8 unpolite

2 Circle the correct word.

- Can you help me? I'm sure / unsure what to do next.
1 People who open the door for you in a shop are very **polite** / **rude**.
2 Words like *hi* and *yeah* are **formal** / **informal**.
3 Remember is **a regular** / **an irregular** verb.
4 We had two weeks of sunny weather for our holiday, which was very **lucky** / **unlucky**.
5 It was **necessary** / **unnecessary** to take a taxi because the hotel was very near the station.
6 If you don't say *thank you* for a present, people may think you are **polite** / **impolite**.
7 He has to decide where to go, but at the moment he is very **certain** / **uncertain**.
8 My sister watches TV all day and eats lots of cakes. She's very **healthy** / **unhealthy**.

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- I think spelling in English is impossible.
1 Where I live, the neighbours are all very p.....
2 I verbs are difficult to remember in English.
3 My English lessons are i and fun.
4 I'm very u on holiday. The weather is always terrible.
5 I'm u where to go for my holidays next summer. I just can't decide.
6 I think it's u to eat your food too quickly.
7 I think it's r to look at your phone when you're having a meal with people.
8 I think it's important to be clean, but it's u to have a shower every day.

ABOUT YOU

4 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 3 true for you? If not, write them so that they are true.

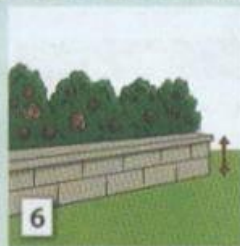
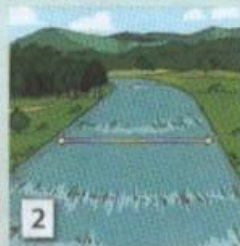
- I think spelling in English is impossible. I think it's difficult but not impossible!



TEST YOURSELF

A Common opposites 1

- 1 She's **asleep**.
OPP **awake**
- 2 The river is **wide**.
OPP **narrow**
- 3 The man is **weak**.
OPP **strong**
- 4 This is **heavy**.
OPP **light**
- 5 It feels **soft**.
OPP **hard**
- 6 It's a **low** wall.
OPP **high**
- 7 The woman is **rich**.
OPP **poor**
- 8 The bird is **dead**.
OPP **alive**



SPOTLIGHT position of adjectives

Adjectives usually go before a noun. They can also go after *be*.

■ It's a **quiet** village. The village is **quiet**.

You can't use **alive**, **awake** or **asleep** before a noun.

■ The man is **alive**. (NOT *an-alive man*)

1 Write Yes or No.

- Is a 120 kg person heavy? Yes
- 1 Is the River Nile narrow?
 - 2 Does wood feel hard?
 - 3 Is Nelson Mandela still alive?
 - 4 Are mobile phones light?
 - 5 Are elephants very strong?

- 6 Are you asleep at the moment?
- 7 Is America a rich country?
- 8 If you are walking, are you awake?
- 9 Are all the buildings in Dubai low?
- 10 Is rice soft before you cook it?

2 Write the opposite.

- The bed is **hard**. soft
- 1 His legs are **weak**.
 - 2 The dog's **asleep**.
 - 3 They're very **rich**.

- 4 The roof is **high**.
- 5 The road is **narrow**.
- 6 The cat is **dead**.
- 7 The bag was **heavy**.

3 Complete the dialogues.

- Is it safe to walk on this bridge? ~ Yes, it's very strong.
- 1 Did you sleep well? ~ No, the bed was too It was like sleeping on the floor.
 - 2 Can Rowena walk very far? ~ No, she's still after her illness.
 - 3 Has Eric got a lot of money? ~ Yes, he's very
 - 4 Has Kelly still got a dog? ~ No, it's, I'm afraid.
 - 5 Can you see over the wall? ~ No, it's too I can't see a thing.
 - 6 Can we carry that table to the garden? ~ Yes, it's quite
 - 7 Can you swim across the river here? ~ Yes, it's quite - that will be easy.
 - 8 Dan's eyes are closed. ~ Yes, I think he's He said he was very tired.
 - 9 That family lives in one room. ~ Yes, they're very
 - 10 What a lovely little baby! ~ Yes, his skin is so lovely and



TEST YOURSELF

B Common opposites 2

OPPOSITES QUESTIONNAIRE

- Is it **common** or **unusual** for you to get a cold or flu?
- Do you prefer **traditional** houses or **modern** houses?
- Do you prefer to sleep in a **dark** room or a **light** room?
- Do you and your best friend enjoy **similar** things or **different** things?
- For you, is **social media** a **positive** thing or a **negative** thing?
- On holiday, do you prefer to have **general** plans or more **specific** plans?
- Is knowing about history **useful** or **useless** in your daily life?
- Do other people think you are **lazy** or **hardworking**?

GLOSSARY

common	If sth is common , it happens often, or you find it in many places: a common name OPP unusual
traditional	If sth is traditional , it is typical of things that people have done for a long time. tradition n OPP modern
dark	with no light, or not much light OPP light
similar	the same in many ways, but not completely the same OPP different
social media	websites, e.g. WhatsApp, Instagram, where you can communicate with people who have similar interests
positive	thinking or talking about the good parts of a situation OPP negative
general	not in detail, giving only the main parts of sth OPP specific
useful	good and helpful for doing sth OPP useless
lazy	A lazy person doesn't like working hard. OPP hardworking

- 4 Tick (✓) the words with the main stress on the first syllable, like **narrow** and **tiny**. Put a cross (X) for the others. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ modern ☒ prefer ☒
 1 useless ☐ 3 different ☐ 5 general ☐ 7 unusual ☐ 9 tradition ☐
 2 common ☐ 4 specific ☐ 6 media ☐ 8 useful ☐ 10 similar ☐

- 5 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ A useful book is one that helps you to do something. T
 1 Two similar things are almost the same.
 2 You can read easily in a light room.
 3 The style of a traditional building is modern.
 4 An unusual event happens a lot.
 5 Specific instructions are clear and with a lot of detail.
 6 A useless thing will help you.
 7 If a type of car is common, you see it a lot.
 8 A lazy person works very hard.
 9 In the middle of the day, it's usually dark.
 10 If somebody is on social media, they are online.

- 6 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Do the two brothers look different? ~ No, they look very similar.
 1 Did you talk about anything specific? ~ No, it was a very conversation.
 2 Did you go to class yesterday? ~ Yes, we had a very lesson on prepositions.
 3 Is Paco's flat dark? ~ No, it's very with lovely views of the sea.
 4 Is Bythesea a common name? ~ No, it's very I've never heard it.
 5 Do you like modern architecture? ~ No, I prefer styles.
 6 Mariella seems a bit lazy to me. ~ No, that's not true. She's very
 7 Was the weather information helpful? ~ No, it was and we got very wet.

- 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in the questionnaire, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

64 Common adverbs

A Showing that something is important

Adverb	Example	Meaning
only	<i>She was only 17 when she got married. (It's unusual to get married at 17.)</i> <i>We can walk to the station - it's only five minutes. (NOT 15 or 20.)</i>	We use only to say 'no more than'.
even	<i>It's cold here, even in summer. (In most places, it's warm in the summer.)</i> <i>My older brother is 1.90 m, and my younger brother is even taller.</i>	We often use even before a fact that is surprising or difficult to believe, or to make (a comparative) another word stronger.
still	<i>After 25 years, I still love my job. (I continue to love my job.)</i> <i>Do they live in Paris now? ~ No, they're still in London.</i>	We use still to say that a fact or situation continues to be true.
especially	<i>We liked the towns in the south, especially Seville. (Seville was the best.)</i> <i>It's very hot here, especially in July and August. (July and August are the hottest.)</i>	We use especially to say 'more than others'.

1 Underline the correct answer.

- The food is good there, only / especially the fish.
- He was only / even 15 when he left school.
 - I've seen the film five times and I even / still enjoy it.
 - The students are very nice, still / especially Marcel.
 - There are even / only three bridges like this in the world.
 - It was cold yesterday, but it's even / only colder today.
 - I study hard, but my English is still / only terrible.

2 Put the word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.

- It's six kilometres to the next town. (only) It's only six kilometres to the next town.
- He's 75 and he plays tennis. (still) _____
 - It's nice there, in the morning. (especially) _____
 - There are three students in the class. (only) _____
 - He works on Sundays. (even) _____
 - She's at university. (still) _____
 - Rio is big, but Sao Paolo is bigger. (even) _____

3 Complete the sentences.

- He's ninety, but he still drives a car.
- _____ four people came to the party. It was a bit sad.
 - They have been in Singapore for ten years and they _____ like living there.
 - I love fish, _____ salmon.
 - He can't drive - he's _____ 15.
 - This question isn't difficult. _____ a child could answer it.
 - She enjoyed the book, _____ the first part.
 - He lives in Italy now, but he _____ speaks English most of the time.
 - The sign was difficult to read, _____ with my glasses.



TEST YOURSELF

B Degree

0%

100%

a bit / a little

quite/pretty/rather

very

really

extremely

a bit / a little	Use a bit or a little before an adjective or comparative adjective, but not before a positive adjective. (NOT <i>a bit good</i>) <i>The lesson was a bit boring.</i> <i>It's a little warmer than yesterday.</i>
quite pretty inf	= more than <i>a bit</i> , but less than <i>very</i> <i>The film was quite/pretty interesting.</i> <i>The town is quite/pretty big.</i>
rather	= <i>quite</i> <i>The test was rather difficult.</i> <i>She was rather tired after the journey.</i> If you use rather with a positive adjective, you are often surprised and pleased. <i>The restaurant was rather nice.</i>
extremely	= a bit stronger than <i>very</i> . You can use extremely with adjectives, but not with verbs. <i>I was extremely tired by 6 o'clock.</i> <i>We were extremely busy on Saturday.</i>
really	= <i>very, extremely</i> You can use really with adjectives and verbs. <i>The restaurant was really good.</i> <i>The weather was really terrible.</i> <i>We were really tired.</i> <i>I really liked the film.</i>

4 Circle the correct answers. Sometimes both answers are correct.

- It was quite / *a bit* interesting.
- 1 She's *pretty* / *quite* untidy.
 - 2 Her new shoes are *really* / *a bit* wonderful.
 - 3 My sister is *a bit* / *a little* untidy.
 - 4 I *really* / *extremely* enjoyed the meal.
 - 5 She was *really* / *extremely* friendly.
 - 6 Tina's flat is *a bit* / *quite* nice.
 - 7 The restaurant was *rather* / *really* good.
 - 8 The hotel's *a bit* / *really* comfortable.

5 Rewrite the sentences using an adverb with a similar meaning to the underlined words.

- The film was a bit boring. *The film was a little boring.*
- 1 He was very good. _____
 - 2 The holiday was quite interesting. _____
 - 3 She's a little unfriendly. _____
 - 4 The kitchen was extremely clean. _____
 - 5 The room was a bit small. _____
 - 6 Her new boyfriend is rather unfriendly. _____
 - 7 They're really nice people. _____
 - 8 The exam results were quite surprising. _____

6 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

- I went to bed because I was extremely tired.
- 1 The food was excellent, but the service was rather _____.
 - 2 I like Maria's new boyfriend. He's extremely _____.
 - 3 I went to see a concert last night and I really _____.
 - 4 Nobody talked to me at the party, so I felt pretty _____.
 - 5 I thought the lesson might be boring, but in fact it was rather _____.
 - 6 We waited thirty minutes for the bus, so we arrived a bit _____.
 - 7 The dog looked horrible, but in fact it was quite _____.
 - 8 People think he's hardworking, but I know he's really _____.



TEST YOURSELF

65 Adverbs of manner

CLASS 9

Monday 3.30 - 5.30

- Cora always does her homework very carefully. ✓
- Juno is clever and answers most questions correctly. ✓
- Eliane speaks very clearly. ✓
- Rocco speaks too fast; he needs to speak more slowly. ✓
- Lucas speaks too loudly, but Ines speaks too quietly. ✓
- Jan speaks English very well, but he writes badly. ✓
- Ewa always arrives late but just smiles happily. ✓
- Mahmud tries very hard, but he thinks the lessons are difficult. ✓
- Layla passes all her exams very easily. ✓

SPOTLIGHT adverbs of manner

Adverbs of **manner** are used with verbs to tell you more about the way you do something, or the way that something happens. They often end in -ly.

sad adj / **sadly** adv; **quiet** adj / **quietly** adv;
careful adj / **carefully** adv

■ He opened the door **quietly**. ■ Shona looked at me **sadly**.

A few adverbs are irregular.

fast adj / **fast** adv; **late** adj / **late** adv; **hard** adj / **hard** adv;
good adj / **well** adv

Adjectives ending in -y have adverbs ending in -ily.

happy / **happily**; **easy** / **easily**; **angry** / **angrily**

GLOSSARY

manner the way you do sth or the way that sth happens: *Jacques has a friendly **manner**.* = He acts in a friendly way.

clearly in a way that is easy to hear, understand or see

fast adv quickly: *He drives **fast**.*

fast adj: *She has a **fast** car.*

late adv after the correct time **late** adj OPP **early**

hard adv a lot: *work/try **hard***

hard adj difficult: *The test was **hard**.*

1 Write the adverb form.

- careful carefully
- 1 slow
- 2 bad
- 3 angry
- 4 late

- 5 clear
- 6 happy
- 7 good
- 8 hard

- 9 easy
- 10 quiet
- 11 correct
- 12 fast

2 Rewrite the sentence using the verb in CAPITALS and an adverb.

- Jesse is bad at playing football. PLAY Jesse plays football badly.
- 1 I have very clear writing. WRITE I
- 2 My cousin is a good singer. SING My
- 3 My boss is a hard worker. WORK My
- 4 Lola is a careful driver. DRIVE Lola
- 5 Robina's answers to the questions were correct. ANSWER Robina
- 6 Julio's pronunciation of words isn't clear. PRONOUNCE Julio
- 7 The exercise was easy for Miriam. DO Miriam
- 8 Amina is very fast at doing the work. WORK Amina
- 9 My little boy is a slow reader. READ My
- 10 She was angry when she spoke to Sam. SPEAK She

3 Complete the questions.

- Do you speak English slowly or fast ?
- 1 Do you arrive for work/classes at the right time or ?
- 2 Do people in your family speak quietly or ?
- 3 Does your teacher speak so that you can understand?
- 4 Do you drive well or ?
- 5 Do you think about what you want to say in English?
- 6 Do you relax in class, or do you work ?

ABOUT YOU

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.

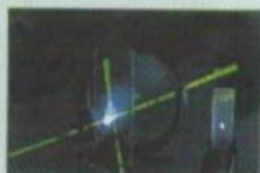


TEST YOURSELF

SCIENCE SUBJECTS



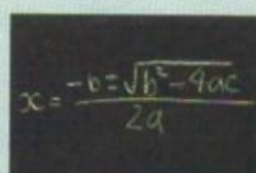
chemistry



physics



biology



maths



computer science

ARTS SUBJECTS



geography



history



literature



languages



art



PE



design and technology

GLOSSARY

subject	Physics, history, etc. are school subjects .
maths	short for mathematics
PE	sport and exercise as a school subject, short for physical education
design	(sounds like <i>fine</i>) pictures or plans that show how to make sth
technology	the science or information about how things work

SPOTLIGHT *be good at something*

If you are **good at something**, you do it well. If you are **bad at** it, you do it very badly. **syn** **terrible at sth**

■ I'm (quite) **good at** languages. ■ I'm **terrible at** maths.

- 1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **app** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------|--------------------------|-------|
| ▶ art / maths | <u>D</u> | 4 history / story | _____ |
| 1 design / physics | _____ | 5 chemistry / technology | _____ |
| 2 biology / science | _____ | 6 computer / language | _____ |
| 3 biology / geography | _____ | 7 literature / picture | _____ |

- 2 Write the name of a school subject or subjects.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|-------|
| ▶ algebra, geometry | <u>maths</u> | 7 CO ₂ , H ₂ O | _____ |
| 1 exercises in the gym | _____ | 8 Apple and Google | _____ |
| 2 Shakespeare, Tolstoy | _____ | 9 parts of a flower or animal | _____ |
| 3 wars in the past | _____ | 10 create a new product | _____ |
| 4 rivers in Africa | _____ | 11 What is light? | _____ |
| 5 Picasso, Da Vinci | _____ | 12 History and geography are | _____ |
| 6 Japanese, Arabic | _____ | 13 Maths and chemistry are | _____ |

- 3 **ABOUT YOU** Complete the sentences about yourself using the right verb form. If possible, tell another student.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 At school, I'm / I was good at _____ | 4 I don't / didn't study _____ |
| 2 I'm / I was also quite good at _____ | 5 The subject I like / liked most is / was _____ |
| 3 I'm / I was terrible at _____ | 6 And the subject I hate / hated most is / was _____ |



TEST YOURSELF

A The education system



In the **education system** in England and Wales, you **start school at the age of** four or five and **continue up to** the age of 16. At 16, you can **leave school**, and then you must **either get a job with training**, or do some training in a **college** for a particular job, e.g. working in the hotel business. The other **option** is to **stay at school** for two more years. After that, you can get a job or go to university.

GLOSSARY

education system	learning or teaching sb at a school or college
uniform	a group of things or parts that work together
start school	special clothes that children wear at school
at (the age of) five	go to a school for the first time
continue	= when you are five (years old)
up to	not stop happening or doing sth
leave school	SYN carry on
job	until; as far as
training	stop going to school
college	the work that you do for money
option	get a job find a job
stay at school	more work or practice to get ready for a job or sport
	a place where you can go to study after you leave school
	a thing you can choose; a possibility
	= continue at school

SPOTLIGHT *either ... or ...*

We use **or** to show there are two things/people you can choose, and we use **either ... or ...** to make this contrast stronger.

- After 16, you can **either do arts subjects or science subjects**.
- Either you go to university, or you get a job.**

1 Put the story in order.

- He then went to a local college
- He carried on up to the age of 16,
- When Tom was five,
- and finally he got a job in a local hairdresser's,
- when he decided to leave school.
- where he trained to become a hairdresser,
- he started school.

1

2 Complete the text with words from the glossary.

► At the age of 16, French students can (1) _____ school and (2) _____ a job, but around 65% (3) _____ at school for another two years. They then have two (4) _____: they can (5) _____ go to a *lycée général* (6) _____ go to a *lycée technique* or *lycée professionnel*. At the *lycée général*, many students go on to university. At the other types of school, students do some (7) _____ in order to prepare for a particular job.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Complete the questions, but don't write answers.

ABOUT YOU

- At what age do children start school?
- Do they usually wear a _____?
- At what age can they _____ school?
- At this age, do they _____ a job or do more _____?
- Do many students _____ at school after 16?
- What can they do when they leave school _____ 18?
- What did you do? OR What are you going to do?

4 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Exams

When I was at school, I went to all the lessons and **did my homework**, but I didn't **work very hard**. So, when I **took exams** at 16, my **results** weren't fantastic. I **passed** six, which was good, but I **failed** physics. It was my **worst** result- I got a **grade F**, which was terrible. After that, I went to a college where I worked hard and **did well**. I passed all my exams at 18 and went to university. That's where I am now.



Seth

GLOSSARY

lesson	a period of time (e.g. 45 minutes) in school when you learn/teach
do homework [U]	do work the teacher has given you at home (NOT <i>homeworks</i>)
work hard	work a lot
result	the grade or mark you get in an exam, e.g. A or 9/10
(the) worst	superlative of bad OPP (the) best superlative of good
grade	You get a grade , e.g. A or B, or a mark , e.g. 15/20, in a test or an exam.
do well	be good at sth and get better at it OPP do badly

SPOTLIGHT *exams*

Exam is short for **examination**. It's an important test at the end of a period of study. We say:

take/do an exam sit down and write your answers in the exam

pass an exam take an exam and do well, e.g. grade A / a mark of 85%

fail an exam take an exam and do badly, e.g. grade D / a mark of 35%

5 Look at Rafael's exam results on the right and answer the questions.

- How many exams did he take? 7
- 1 Did he take an exam in chemistry?
- 2 How many did he pass?
- 3 How many did he fail?
- 4 What was his best grade?
- 5 What was his worst grade?
- 6 What did he get in English?

EXAM	GRADE
	A, B, C = pass / D, E = fail
French	B
IT	C
Geography	D
Biology	A
English	C
History	B
Maths	E

6 Complete the sentences.

- Six out of ten isn't a very good mark.
- 1 I have to an English exam tomorrow.
- 2 Did you your homework last night?
- 3 Paula did very in her German exam; she got a good
- 4 I got my exam yesterday. I passed all of them.
- 5 Andre is very unhappy at the moment. He's doing at school, and last week he an important maths exam.
- 6 Maths is my subject. I'm terrible at it.

7 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences about yourself using the right verb form, then write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- 1 How long are / were your lessons at school?
- 2 Do / Did you work hard at school most of the time?
- 3 At what age do / did you take important exams?
- 4 How many did / will you take?
- 5 Did / Will you pass all of them?
- 6 What's your best subject?



TEST YOURSELF

A A university degree

I started university two years ago when I was nineteen, and I'm **doing a degree** in Spanish and French. The **course** **lasts** four years, and there are three **terms** a year. I work in the **library** a lot because I have to **write** lots of **essays**. I also have to take exams, and last term I failed one and had to take it **again**. I got the result two weeks ago - **fortunately** I passed this time. When I've got my degree, I want to **do research**.



Seth

GLOSSARY

do a degree (in sth)	study a subject or subjects at university. You do a degree in a subject.
course	a number of classes on a subject, e.g. an English course
term	a period of study, usually about ten weeks
library	a place where you can read and borrow books (Be careful: a bookshop is a place where you buy books.)
write an essay	do a piece of writing on a subject
again	one more time
fortunately	We say fortunately when we start talking about sth good. OPP unfortunately
do research	study a subject for a long time (usually after a first degree) to learn new information about it

SPOTLIGHT *How long does it last? / How long does it take?*

Last means 'continue for a period of time'.

- A university term **lasts** ten weeks.
- My French course **lasts** a year.

We use **take** (often with *it*) to talk about how long we need to do something.

- It **took me** three years to do my research.
- He **took** two days to write the essay. It **took him** two days to write the essay.

1 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ She did an English course / term.
- 1 I want to **do** / **make** a degree in maths.
- 2 A **term** / **degree** lasts about ten weeks.
- 3 I have to **learn** / **write** essays.
- 4 Most lessons **take** / **last** an hour.
- 5 I study a lot in the **library** / **bookshop**.
- 6 I want to **do** / **make** some research.
- 7 **Fortunately** / **Unfortunately**, I failed the exam.
- 8 **Before** / **After** a degree, some people do research.
- 9 It **takes** / **lasts** a long time to do a degree.

2 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ How long does the term last ? ~ About twelve weeks.
- 1 Are you doing a _____ ? ~ Yes, _____ Medicine.
- 2 Are you planning to do _____ ? ~ Yes, when I've got my first degree.
- 3 Did he get his exam results? ~ Yes, _____ he passed.
- 4 Can he take the exam _____ if he fails the first time? ~ Yes, in September.
- 5 Did she have to write an _____ ? ~ Yes, and it _____ her a long time.
- 6 How long does the course _____ ? ~ It's only one term.
- 7 Did you buy that new dictionary? ~ Yes, I got it in the college _____.
- 8 Did Miriam pass all her exams? ~ No, _____ she failed two subjects.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

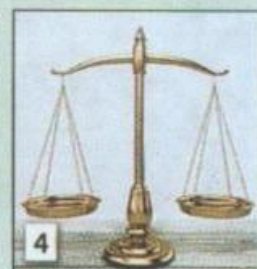
- 1 How long do you need to study for a degree in Medicine? _____
- 2 What percentage of young people do a degree? _____
- 3 Do many students go on and do research? _____
- 4 How long does a university term last? _____
- 5 If you fail your exams, can you always take them again? _____



TEST YOURSELF

B University subjects and people

	Degree Subject	Person
1	medicine	a doctor
2	architecture	an architect
3	engineering	an engineer
4	law	a lawyer
5	business studies	a businessman/woman
6	journalism	a journalist OR a reporter
7	computer science	e.g. software designer, IT manager



SPOTLIGHT teacher, lecturer, professor

A **teacher** is a person who teaches for a job, usually in a school (NOT a professor). In the UK, a person who teaches in a university is a **lecturer**, and they give **lectures** (NOT lessons). A **professor** in a university is a lecturer of the highest level.

- 4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------|-------|
| ► design / <u>medic</u> ine | <u>D</u> | 4 computer / <u>woman</u> | ..... |
| 1 <u>law</u> / <u>four</u> | ..... | 5 <u>lawyer</u> / <u>boy</u> | ..... |
| 2 computer / <u>doctor</u> | ..... | 6 science / <u>design</u> | ..... |
| 3 business / <u>journalist</u> | ..... | 7 <u>teacher</u> / <u>architect</u> | ..... |

- 5 Complete the sentences. Use the word on the right to help you.

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| ► He always wanted to be a <u>teacher</u> | TEACHING |
| 1 She wants to be a | MEDICINE |
| 2 When did Tom become an | ENGINEERING |
| 3 Emily is studying to become an | ARCHITECTURE |
| 4 My sister is a | LAW |
| 5 Edward now works as a | LECTURE |
| 6 After his degree he became a software | DESIGN |
| 7 Is it difficult to become a | JOURNALISM |
| 8 I knew he'd become a | BUSINESS STUDIES |

- 6 Complete the words in the sentences.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| ► He wants to be a hospital <u>doctor</u> | 6 My degree was in b..... studies. |
| 1 My uncle is a university p..... | 7 I studied journalism to be a r..... |
| 2 It's not easy to get a place to study I..... | 8 I enjoyed my e..... degree. |
| 3 My friend got a job as an IT m..... | 9 She wants to do computer s..... |
| 4 He's a j..... for a national paper. | 10 She's a b..... now. She works |
| 5 I don't go to all my university l..... | for a large company. |

- 7 **ABOUT YOU** Take six jobs from this unit and put them in order from 1) a job I would like, to 6) a job I would not like. If possible, talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

69 Jobs

What do you do?

What's your job?

I'm ...



a police officer/
policeman/policewoman



a businessman/
businesswoman



a secretary
in a company



a dentist



a model



a shop assistant/
sales assistant



a nurse



a fashion designer



a soldier



a pilot



a builder



a teacher



a chef



a cleaner



a lorry driver



a hairdresser

(ALSO a train/bus/taxi driver)

GLOSSARY

- job** the work that you do for money:
*I've got a **job** as a waiter (NOT as-waiter.)*
- work** [U] the job that you do: *I need **work**.*
(NOT a **work** OR **works**) **work** v
- boss** a person who tells people what to do in their job
- career** the work you do for many years: *I want a **career** in teaching. His **career** is very important to him.*

SPOTLIGHT *employ*

If you **employ somebody**, you pay somebody to work for you.

- The factory **employs** 800 people.

A **company** is a group of people who work together and make or sell things. A person or company who does this is the **employer**, and the person who works for somebody is the **employee**.


- We have 800 **employees** in the company.

If you are able to work but don't have a job, you are **unemployed**.

1 Circle the correct answer.

- A lorry driver / chef works in a kitchen.
 1 I'm looking for a work / job.
 2 A shop assistant / bus driver sells things.
 3 A model / nurse works in a hospital.
 4 A career is work that you do for a short / long time.
 5 A fashion designer designs clothes / furniture.
 6 An unemployed person has / hasn't got a job.
 7 If you are an employer / employee, you work for other people.
 8 A boss / hairdresser tells people what to do.
 9 A pilot / dentist looks after people's teeth.
 10 Models / Secretaries are usually very tall.
 11 A builder / cleaner works outside a lot.
 12 You can have a career in the police / when you stop work.

2 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the  to help you. Practise saying the words.

- fashion / assistant D
 1 pilot / dentist
 2 pilot / driver
 3 business / builder
 4 police / model
 5 teacher / chef
 6 work / nurse
 7 designer / driver

3 Complete the sentences with jobs from page 134.

- You have to walk a lot if you are a nurse, a police officer or a soldier.
 1 You probably have to go to university to be
 2 You need to work with your hands to be
 3 You may need to be good at maths if you are
 4 You have a lot of free time if you are
 5 You usually have to wear a uniform if you are
 6 You work in an office a lot of the time if you are

4 Complete the dialogues.

- Does he work in a shop? ~ Yes, he's a sales assistant.
 1 Do you work for the boss? ~ Yes, I'm her
 2 Does he work for British Airways? ~ Yes, he's
 3 Does Lisa cut people's hair? ~ Yes, she's
 4 Does he tell people what to do? ~ Yes, he's
 5 Do you see her clothes in magazines? ~ Yes, she's
 6 Is her picture in fashion magazines? ~ Yes, she's
 7 Does your brother work in a school? ~ Yes, he's
 8 Does Fergus work in that restaurant? ~ Yes, he's
 9 Hashem sells computers, doesn't he? ~ Yes, he works for a very big

5 ABOUT YOU Think about your family and people you know. Do you know anybody who does these jobs? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- a nurse My neighbour, Mrs Petrova, is a nurse.
 a soldier I don't know anyone who's a soldier.
 1 a secretary
 2 a chef
 3 a hairdresser
 4 a teacher
 5 a taxi driver
 6 a dentist
 7 a businessman or businesswoman
 8 a boss



TEST YOURSELF

70 Describing jobs

A Basic information

Where does he work?

He works in an office¹ / a factory² / a hospital³.

What does she do?

She's a **manager**.

She manages a company.

She works as a secretary.

She's in advertising / in the army.

Who does he work for?

He works for

a car company. (e.g. Toyota, Mercedes)
an airline. (e.g. Cathay Pacific, KLM)

What hours does she work?

She works

from nine to five.
long hours.
12 hours a day.

How much does he earn?

He earns a lot. His salary is \$100,000 a year.



1



2



3

GLOSSARY

manager	a person who controls an organization, e.g. a company or shop
manage v	
advertising	the business of telling people about things to buy
army	a large group of soldiers who fight on land
earn	get money for the work that you do
salary	money you get every month/year for the work that you do

1 Complete the sentences with words and phrases from the box.

an office an American airline a factory she work ✓ hours a day work for
long hours earn much a year ten to six advertising does he earn

► Where does she work?

1 She works _____.

2 I work in _____.

3 He works in _____.

4 Who do you _____?

5 How much _____?

6 I work eight _____.

7 She works for _____.

8 She doesn't _____.

9 He earns €50,000 _____.

10 I work from _____.

2 Complete the sentences.

► Who does he work for?

1 She's a doctor in the local _____. Her husband works _____ a factory.

2 I work for a computer _____, and my _____ is now €60,000 _____ year.

3 He doesn't work _____ hours: he only works _____ 9.00 _____ 3.00.

4 She's a nurse, so she doesn't _____ much money.

5 My brother is a soldier _____ the _____.

6 Who do you work _____? ~ I'm a pilot. I work for a Spanish _____ called Air Europa.

7 TV gets a lot of money from _____.

8 He _____ a large company in France. He has worked there for 15 years and he has been the _____ for the last five.

3 ABOUT YOU If you have a job, write your answers. If not, ask someone with a job, or write about somebody in your family.

1 What do you do? _____

2 Who do you work for? _____

3 Where do you work? _____

4 What hours do you work? _____

5 Do you think people in your job earn a lot of money? _____



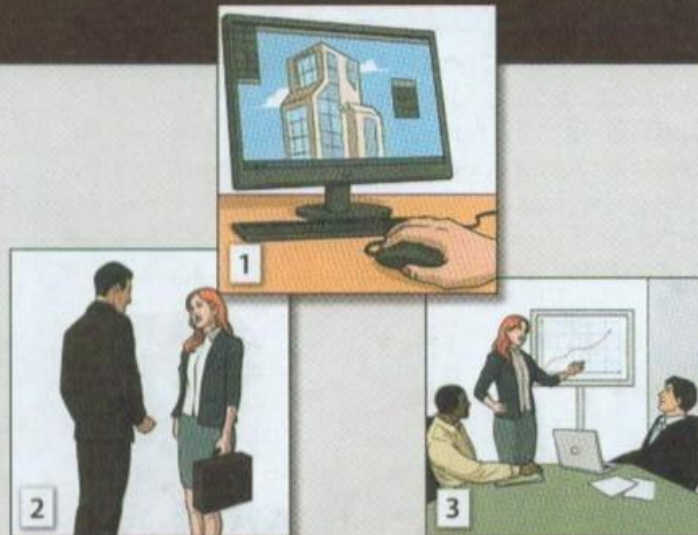
TEST YOURSELF

B What does it involve?

Daniela Alessi, architect

My job **involves** many things:

- I **design** buildings¹, mostly big **projects**.
- I **meet**² **clients** and **discuss** problems with them.
- I **organize** meetings³ with **colleagues**.
- I **send** hundreds of emails.
- I write **reports**.
- I **spend a lot of time** talking to people.



GLOSSARY

involve	have sth as a part: <i>The job involves using a computer.</i>
project	a big plan to do sth, e.g. <i>a project to build a new airport</i>
client	a person who pays an architect, lawyer, etc. for their work
discuss	talk about sth seriously (NOT <i>discuss about</i>)
organize	If you organize a meeting, you find a time and a place when everybody can go to it.
colleague	a person who works with you
send	You write a letter or email, then you send it to sb.
report	a piece of writing that gives information about your work
spend time doing sth	do sth for a period of time

SPOTLIGHT *meet and meeting*

Meet has different meanings:

1 see and speak to somebody for the first time:
*I haven't **met** my boss's wife.*

2 come together, usually because you planned it: (see picture 2)

A **meeting** is a time when people come together, usually to talk about something (see picture 3).

4 Match 1-5 with a-f.

- | | | |
|--------------|-------|------------------------|
| ► spend time | c | a problems |
| 1 meet | _____ | b emails |
| 2 organize | _____ | c making phone calls ✓ |
| 3 send | _____ | d bridges |
| 4 discuss | _____ | e clients |
| 5 design | _____ | f meetings |

5 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ► I have sended the letters. <u>sent</u> | 4 Could you organizate the meeting? _____ |
| 1 We discussed about our problems. _____ | 5 My job involves to use a computer. _____ |
| 2 I have a meet this afternoon. _____ | 6 I knew her for the first time last week. _____ |
| 3 She spends a lot of time travel. _____ | |

6 Complete the text.

I work for Daniela's company as her secretary. I often ► meet many of her (1) _____ when they come to her office to (2) _____ work. At the moment, we have a big (3) _____: Daniela is (4) _____ a new department store for the town centre. My job (5) _____ doing other things as well: I (6) _____ meetings with different people about the project; I receive and (7) _____ lots of emails, and sometimes I write (8) _____ about the project for Daniela. Fortunately, I am not alone. I have two other (9) _____ in the office with me. We work hard but we also (10) _____ time talking to each other.



TEST YOURSELF

71 Job interview

Two months ago, I saw an **advertisement** online for a job working with young people in the **community**. You needed a university degree, but no **experience**, so I decided to **apply**. I **filled in** the **form** and **posted** it, and two weeks later I went for an **interview**. I was very nervous and the **interviewer** asked some difficult questions, but they **offered** me the job, by email. The money is not bad and I will get a lot of **training**, so I **accepted**. I'm starting next week.



GLOSSARY

advertisement	a notice, picture or film telling people about a job, product or service ALSO advert/ad
community	all the people who live in a place; the place where they live
experience	knowing about sth because you have seen it or done it
apply (for sth)	write to ask for sth
form	a piece of paper or a document with questions and spaces for you to write answers fill in a form write answers on the form
post	send a letter
interview	a meeting when sb asks you questions to decide if you will get a job. The person who does this is the interviewer . interview v
offer	say you will give sth to sb, e.g. a job or help, if they want it offer n
training	the activity of learning how to do a job
accept	say yes to sth

1 Put the story in order.

- She offered me the job.
- I went for an interview.
- I posted it.
- I decided to apply.
- I saw an advertisement for a job.
- I accepted the job.
- I filled in the form.
- The interviewer asked me questions.

1

2 Complete the sentences.

- Life in a small fishing **community** is different from life in a big city.
- 1 My boss was very busy, so I _____ to help her.
- 2 Don't _____ the form. You should email it instead.
- 3 My brother has an _____ for a job next week. I hope he gets it.
- 4 The company asked me to _____ in a form.
- 5 I have a friend who is doing a lot of _____ in his new job at the bank.
- 6 At the moment I'm _____ for a place at university. I want to go next year.
- 7 It's easy to get a job in a shop, but you need more _____ to become a manager.
- 8 The job they offered me wasn't very interesting, so I didn't _____ it.
- 9 I saw a funny _____ on TV last night for a new Italian car.
- 10 I was surprised at some of the questions the _____ asked me.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Have you applied for any jobs? If so, what are they? _____
- 2 Do you have experience of interviews? If so, what? _____
- 3 Have you had training for a job? If so, what? _____
- 4 What forms have you filled in this year? _____
- 5 Would you like a job working in the community with young people? Why? / Why not? _____



TEST YOURSELF

72 First day at work

My first day **at work** was **surprising**. I was nervous when I **entered** the building, but everyone was **so** friendly **that** I didn't need to **worry**. I was **part of** a small **unit** (six of us), and it was our job to **support** local **charities** in the community. Caroline, my boss, introduced me to the rest of the group, and I spent the **whole** day watching and listening. It was **such** an **amazing** day.

GLOSSARY

at work	This shows where you are. ALSO at school/home , etc.
surprising	If sth is surprising , it is different from what is normal or usual.
enter formal	come or go into a place
worry	think or feel that sth bad will happen worry n
part of sth	some but not all of sth
unit	one complete thing or group that may be part of sth larger
support	If you support sb, you are there to help them if they need it.
charity	an organization that collects money to help people who need it
whole	all of sth
amazing	If sth is amazing , it is difficult to believe, and usually very good. SYN incredible

SPOTLIGHT **so and such**

So and **such** are used before words to make them stronger. You use **so** before an adjective without a noun, and **such** before an adjective with a noun.

- My job is **so** interesting.
- I've got **such** an interesting job.
- I'm **so** busy **that** I can't go.
- I've got **such** a busy day **that** I can't go.

1 Answer the questions. Write Yes or No.

- ▶ If something is surprising, is it what you think it will be? No
- 1 Does a charity help people?
- 2 If you worry about something, are you happy?
- 3 Does the whole day mean all of the day?
- 4 If something is amazing, is that good?
- 5 If you enter a building, are you leaving?
- 6 Is a unit a complete thing?
- 7 If something is *so good*, is that more than good?
- 8 Does *amazing* mean the opposite of *incredible*?

2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in CAPITALS. The meaning must stay the same.

- ▶ He's got such a quiet voice. SO His voice is so quiet.
- 1 He's in the office today. WORK He
- 2 This book is so good. SUCH This is
- 3 Stand up when she comes into the room. ENTER Stand up
- 4 It was such a long film. SO The film
- 5 She's one person in a small group. PART She's
- 6 This job is so difficult. SUCH This is

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ This book has 100 units.
- 1 She always that she won't have enough money.
- 2 Last month I spent the time working with Caroline.
- 3 I left the job because the money was bad.
- 4 You can the building at the front or the back.
- 5 It was an interesting job - I loved it.
- 6 There are a number of that help people in poor of the world.
- 7 It's important to people who are very young or new in a job.
- 8 It's difficult working with these children, and I think she does an job with them.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What was your first day at work like?
- 2 Did you worry about anything before starting?
- 3 Did your colleagues support you?
- 4 Were you part of a unit?

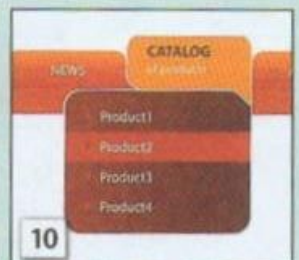


TEST YOURSELF

73 Computers

A Devices

- 1 PC (personal computer)
- 2 printer
- 3 screen
- 4 mouse
- 5 keyboard
- 6 laptop
- 7 window
- 8 tablet
- 9 program
- 10 menu



SPOTLIGHT keep

Keep means to put something in a place so that you know where it is.

- I **keep** my laptop in a bag in my office.
- Where do you **keep** your tablet?
- I **keep** it in my handbag.

1 Complete the words.

▶ k e e p

1 k _ _ b _ _ _ d

4 m _ _ _ u

7 sc _ _ _ _ n

2 w _ _ _ _ w

5 t _ _ _ _ t

8 p _ _ _ _ r

3 l _ _ _ _ p

6 m _ _ _ _ e

9 p _ _ g _ _ m

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ You type information using the keyboard.

1 A small computer you can carry is called a _____.

2 You read your e-mails on the _____.

3 A list on the screen that shows what you can do is a _____.

4 You can make a paper copy of something using a _____.

5 A very small computer you use where you touch the screen is a _____.

6 A set of instructions that we put into a computer is a _____.

7 On a computer, you can open or close a _____.

8 You can move things on the screen using the _____.

9 You can _____ pictures on a computer, tablet or laptop.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

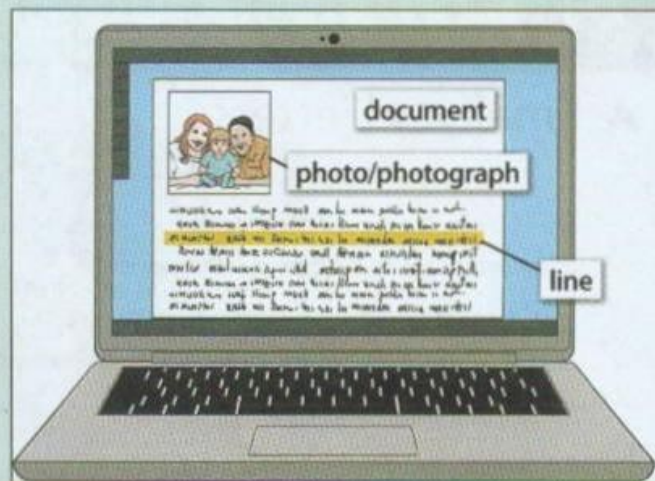
- 1 Have you got a PC? If so, what kind is it? _____
- 2 Have you got a printer? If so, how often do you use it? _____
- 3 Have you got a laptop or tablet? If so, where do you keep it? _____
- 4 Do you keep photos on your computer? If so, what kind of photos? _____
- 5 Which is better for you: a PC or a laptop? Why? _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Working on a computer

For homework, our teacher asked us to write a short **text** about our families. I **opened** a new **document** on my laptop, and **typed** ten lines about my husband and son. Then I **moved** a **photo** from my personal files into the document. It didn't look good, so I **cut** it and **replaced** it with a different photo. I read the text **carefully** to see if it was all correct. Then I **saved** it and **printed** a **copy** to give to my teacher.



GLOSSARY

text	a piece of writing	replace sth (with sth)	put a new or different thing in the place of another: I replaced my old computer with a new laptop.
open	start sth: open a document/file close	carefully	If you do sth carefully , you think about what you are doing so that you don't make mistakes. careful <i>adj</i>
type	write sth using a keyboard	save	You must save a document before you close it, or you will lose it.
move	take sth and put it in another place	copy	a thing that is exactly the same as another thing: make/print a copy ; copy <i>v</i>
file	information that is stored on a computer with a particular name: I must save that file on my computer.		
cut	take text or pictures away from a document		

4 Circle the verbs.

open carefully save move photo type remove line replace file close text document

5 Put the sentences in the correct order.

- a I saved the text. ☐
- b I printed a copy. ☐
- c I didn't like it, so I removed it. ☐
- d I moved a photo into the document. ☐
- e I typed a text. ☐
- f I read the text carefully. ☐
- g I closed the document. ☐
- h I opened a document. ☐

6 Complete the sentences.

- I opened a new document and started typing.
- 1 The text has about 15 _____ in it.
- 2 I have to be very _____ when I'm typing in English.
- 3 I always make two _____ of my work: one for me, and one to give to my teacher.
- 4 I keep my letters to the doctor in a medical _____ on my PC.
- 5 Can you _____ a copy of the letter for me, please?
- 6 Remember to _____ your work before you close a document.
- 7 I'm going to _____ my old laptop _____ a new one.
- 8 I wasn't happy with the second paragraph in the text, so I _____ it.
- 9 Her fingers are painful so she _____ very slowly.
- 10 She opened the email, started reading it and quickly _____ it when her father came in.



TEST YOURSELF

A Email and letters

Have you checked your messages today?

No, I haven't got wifi or the internet where I'm staying.

What's your email address?

It's lucy@gmail.com

Can you email the documents to me, please?

Oh, but I've already sent them by post.

Oh no! The post is very slow here, and letters often get lost.

Have you received Donna's email?

Yes, I have. I'll reply this evening.

GLOSSARY

email	= electronic mail a message that is written on one computer and sent to another email v
check	look to see if sth is there
message	words that one person sends to another
the internet	the international computer system: <i>I saw it on the internet.</i>
send	make a letter or email go somewhere
post [U]	the system for sending and receiving letters, parcels, etc: <i>send sth by post;</i> post v
letter	a piece of writing on paper sb sends to another person
get lost	If sth gets lost , you don't know where it is.
receive formal	get sth that sb has sent to you
reply (to sb)	say or write sth as an answer to sb reply n

SPOTLIGHT saying email addresses

@ = at . = dot
We say jo.xi@gmail.com like this:
'jo dot xi at gmail dot com'.

1 One word is not correct. Cross it out.

- ▶ send a **letter** / ~~post~~ / **message**
- 1 **get** / **send** / **reply** a message
- 2 **reply to** the internet / a letter / an email

- 3 send something by **post** / **email** / **document**
- 4 check **your emails** / a **reply** / **your messages**
- 5 get a **letter** / the internet / a **message**

2 One word is missing. What is it, and where does it go?

- ▶ I got an / from Luisa this morning.
- 1 Did you the email I sent you yesterday?
- 2 The letter lost in the post - it never arrived.
- 3 Have you to Juan's letter yet?
- 4 I can't email you because I'm not the internet here.
- 5 My email address is 'jamie gmail dot com'.
- 6 Could you me the information, please?
- 7 I need to my emails before I go out.
- 8 Did you give Zach the letter, or send it by?
- 9 Email me at 'sue 1 at gmail com'.

email
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

3 Complete the dialogues.

- A A Hi, Arun. Have you ▶ checked your messages this morning?
- B Yes, I have. Malu (1) me an email with some documents from our lawyer.
- A Oh? I thought the lawyer sent you a (2) with the documents, not an email.
- B I didn't get them. I think they got (3) in the post.
- B A Did you (4) the email I sent you last night?
- B Yes, I'm sorry I haven't had time to (5) yet.
- C A I emailed the information to Jesse, but I haven't had a (6) yet.
- B He's camping this week, so he probably isn't (7) the (8)

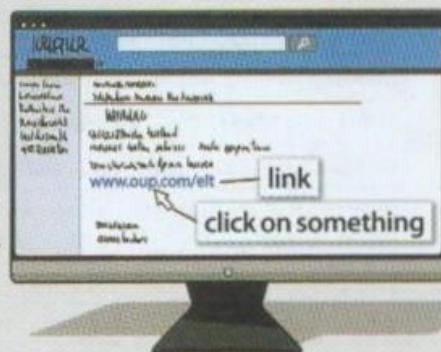


TEST YOURSELF

B The internet

STAY SAFE online

- When you **shop online**, only use **websites** which you know or **recognize**.
- If you get an email with a **link**¹ in it, don't **click on**² it if you don't know the person who sent it. It could **contain** a **virus**.
- Make sure your children are safe online. Only let them go online and **search for** information and look at **blogs** and **videos** when you are at home with them.
- Never tell anybody your **passwords**.



GLOSSARY

online	using a computer or the internet shop online buy things on the internet
website	a place on the internet that you can look at to get information about sth ALSO site
recognize	know sb or sth because you have seen them or heard of them before
contain	have sth inside: <i>The website contains the information you need.</i>
virus	a program that enters your computer and stops it working correctly
search (for sth)	use a computer to look for information
blog	a personal record that sb puts on their website saying what they do or what they think about things
video	a short film made digitally that you can watch on the internet
password	a secret word that allows you to start using a computer

- 4 Circle the words which contain the same vowel sound as in **buy, right, wine**. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

link like website contain video virus recognize click online

- 5 Is the meaning the same or different? Write **S** or **D**.

- | | |
|---|----------|
| ▶ click on something / search for something | <u>D</u> |
| 1 a website / a site | ..... |
| 2 search for something / look for something | ..... |
| 3 a video / a blog | ..... |
| 4 recognize somebody / meet somebody | ..... |
| 5 contain something / click on something | ..... |
| 6 password / passport | ..... |
| 7 a link / a virus | ..... |
| 8 online / on the internet | ..... |

- 6 Complete the questions with words from the box.

websites passwords blog virus click
recognize online ✓ videos search contains

- ▶ What kinds of things do you buy online ?
- 1 Do you watch many on YouTube?
- 2 Do you ever tell people your ?
- 3 Have you ever written a ?
- 4 Which do you use a lot?
- 5 Has your computer or tablet ever had a ?
- 6 Do you use Google to for information on the internet?
- 7 Do you on a link if you don't the person who sent you the email?
- 8 What do you do if you think an email a virus?

ABOUT YOU

Mostly books and things for the house.

- 7 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

A Phone vocabulary

PHONE NUMBERS	What's your phone number?	~ It's 245731.
	What's your mobile number?	~ It's 07700 900154.
PHONE VERBS	call/phone/ring (pt rang) somebody	speak to sb by phone ALSO make a (phone) call
	answer the phone	pick up the phone when it rings and speak
	message somebody	send sb a message / text (message)
	take a message	take information during a call and give it to sb else
	leave a message	give information to sb on the phone, who then gives it to another person
PHONE PROBLEMS	The line is busy.	The person you phoned is speaking on the phone already.
	It's the wrong number.	You make a mistake with the number.



mobile phone
smartphone (= with internet)



landline

SPOTLIGHT saying phone numbers

Say each number.

■ 245731 is: **two four five, seven three one.**

Say **double** when two numbers are the same.

■ 33 = **double three.**

For '0', say **oh** or **zero**.

■ 602448 is: **six oh/zero two, double four eight.**

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

► What's your *landline* / *mobile* number? D

1 He *phoned* / *rang* his sister.

2 He's got *a smartphone* / He's got *a landline*.

3 six two *four four* / six two *double four*

4 I *messed him* / I *sent him* a text.

5 She *made a call* / *answered the phone*.

6 Please *call* / *ring* me later.

7 *four oh seven nine* / *four zero seven nine*

2 Complete the words in the dialogues.

1 Did you ► ring Jo this morning? ~ Yes, but she was out, so I left a m.....
I r..... her mobile too, but she didn't a..... the phone.

2 What's your phone n.....? ~ It's 345489.

3 Did you c..... Sue last night? ~ Yes, but the line was b..... I'll p..... her later.

4 Hello, can I speak to Charlie, please? ~ Sorry, you've got the w..... number.

5 Did you speak to Lisa? ~ I tried to call her but she was on the p....., so I m..... her and I'm waiting for a reply.

6 Can you come to the meeting? ~ Yes, but I just need to m..... a call first.

7 Can I speak to Riccardo? ~ I'm sorry, he's busy. Can I take a m.....?

8 What's your m..... number? ~ It's zero d..... seven double oh, nine double oh, one six nine.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What's your phone number and mobile number? (Write it in words.)

2 Who do you ring most often?

3 Do you send a lot of texts? If so, who to?

4 What do you say when you answer the phone?

5 Do you often get the wrong number?



TEST YOURSELF

B Phone conversations

- A Hello?
 B Is that Mia?
 A Yes, speaking.
 B Oh, hello. This is Laura, Laura Freebairn.
 A Hi, Laura, how are you?
 B I'm fine thanks. Is Jessica in, please?
 A Yes, just a moment - I'll get her for you ...
- C Hello?
 D Oh, hello, can I speak to Mr Ellis, please?
 C I'm sorry, but he's out at the moment. Who's calling?
 D It's Leo Jackson from Delta Electronics.
 C Right. Do you want to leave a message for him?
 D Yes, please. Can you tell him I'll ring him back after lunch?
 C Of course, no problem.
 D Thanks very much. Goodbye.

GLOSSARY

Is that Isabella?	(NOT Are you Isabella?)	get sb	go and find sb and bring them to the phone
speaking	You say speaking when you are the person sb on the phone has asked to talk to.	at the moment	now
This is Laura.	OR It's Laura. (NOT I am. / Here is Laura.)	Who's calling?	This is a polite way of asking 'Who are you?'.
in	at home OPP out	phone/call/ring sb back	phone sb again
just a moment	wait a minute	goodbye	short form: bye inf

4 Tick (✓) the correct answers.

- Can I speak to Martyn Ellis, please?
 1 Hello? ~ He's not in at the moment. ☒ / He's not in just a moment. ☐
 2 Can I speak to Lia Ponte, please? ~ Speaking. ☐ / Oh, hello, is that Jackie? ☐
 3 Hello, is that Gosia? ~ Just a moment ... ☐ / It's Natasha. ☐
 4 Hello, this is Jamie Little. ~ Oh hello, this is Carla. ☐ / Speaking. ☐
 5 Hello, can I speak to Alfonse, please? ~ Oh, hello, how are you? ☐ / Who's calling? ☐
 6 Mohammed's not here at the moment. ~ I'm sorry, he's out. ☐ / I'm sorry, he's in. ☐
 7 See you this evening, Dmitri. ~ OK, I'll call back later. ☐ / OK, I'll get him. ☐
 ~ Yes, bye. ☐ / Speaking. ☐

5 Complete the conversations.

- 1 A Hello?
 B Hello. ► Is that Marisa?
 A Yes, (1) _____
 B Oh, hello. (2) _____ Alice.
 A Oh, hello, Alice.
 B Is Mikki (3) _____, (4) _____?
 A I'm sorry, he's out (5) _____. Can I take a message?
 B Yes, please. Tell him I'll (6) _____ him _____ after lunch.
 A OK, (7) _____
- 2 A Hello?
 B Oh, can I (8) _____ Ben, please?
 A Yes, (9) _____ moment. I'll (10) _____ him for you.
- 3 A Hello?
 B Oh, hello. (11) _____ Joanna?
 A Yes, (12) _____
 B Hello, Joanna, (13) _____'s Luke.
 A Hi, Luke. How are you?

- 6 **ABOUT YOU** Look at the conversations again. Think about the way people answer the phone in English, and the phrases they use. Is it very different in your language? If possible, talk to somebody who speaks your language.



TEST YOURSELF

It is common in English to add **-er**, **-or** or **-r** to a verb to describe the person who does the action of the verb.

Teachers are people who **teach** as a job.

Visitors are people who **visit** a place, often as tourists.

Here are more examples.

A **driver** is a person who **drives**, often as a job: a bus/taxi **driver**.

Workers are people who **work**, especially in a particular kind of work: office/farm/factory **workers**.

The **listener** is the person who is **listening**, e.g. to the radio, the **speaker** is the person who is **speaking**, e.g. to an audience, and the **reader** is the person who is **reading**, e.g. a book.

An **owner** is a person who **owns** something:

I'm the **owner** of that car. I bought it last week.

An **actor** is a person who **acts** as a job: a TV/film **actor**.

The **winner** is the person who **wins** something, e.g. a **competition** or a **race**.

Travellers are people who are **travelling**:

Rail **travellers** often have difficult journeys.

An **instructor** is a person who **instructs** people.

GLOSSARY

winner	the person who is the best or the first in a game, competition or race
competition	a game or test that people want to win: a painting competition
race	In a race , people run, drive, ride, etc. in a competition to see who is fastest.
instructor	a person who teaches you how to do sth: a driving instructor

1 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ A person who teaches is a teacher.
- 1 A person who owns something is the
- 2 A person who visits somewhere is
- 3 A person who travels is a
- 4 A person who wins something is a
- 5 A person who instructs people is an
- 6 A person who drives is a
- 7 A person who acts on television is a
- 8 A person who works in a factory is a

2 Make six phrases using a word from each box.

radio
office

film
air ✓

bus
English

driving

travellers ✓
listener

instructor
teacher

worker
actor

driver

- ▶ air travellers
-

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ My cousin has been a film actor for a few years.
- 1 The museum gets a lot of every year.
- 2 Mr Jacobs is the of that big house on the corner of the road.
- 3 He was the winner of the last year.
- 4 I have a neighbour who is a taxi
- 5 The farm employs about ten
- 6 The BBC Radio morning programme has about five million
- 7 Some always want books to have a happy ending.
- 8 I often have to ask the to repeat what they said.
- 9 My brother came second but I don't know who the was.
- 10 Our English explains things to our class very well.



TEST YOURSELF

77 *-ing* forms

In English, we often add *-ing* to a verb to describe an activity in these situations:

1 As the subject of a sentence: *Reading English is easier than writing.*

2 After prepositions: *I'm not very good at spelling.*

3 After certain verbs: *I love driving.*

These words with *-ing* are also called gerunds.

Other common *-ing* forms include:



camping¹ spending a holiday in a tent:
Camping is great fun when the weather's good.

understanding knowing about something:
Understanding computers is not easy.



painting² *I used to enjoy painting at school.*

shopping buying things from shops:
I don't mind shopping.



sightseeing³ visiting interesting places as a tourist:
I don't enjoy sightseeing.

flying travelling in a plane:
I'm frightened of flying.

smoking having a cigarette:
Smoking is bad for you.

working the activity of work:
Working for a bad boss is terrible.
teaching working as a teacher:
Teaching is a great job, but not very well paid.

1 What activities are described here?

▶ looking at words and understanding them reading

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 travelling in a plane | 5 visiting interesting places as a tourist |
| 2 buying things | 6 knowing about something |
| 3 spending a holiday in a tent | 7 helping students in a classroom |
| 4 writing a word in the correct way | 8 controlling a car, bus, etc. |

2 Do you agree or disagree? If you disagree, say why.

▶ Smoking is bad for you. Agree ▶ Learning English is easy. Disagree. Learning English is really difficult.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Swimming is good for you. | 5 Camping is good fun. |
| 2 Running is good fun. | 6 Teaching is a job I would like. |
| 3 Reading English is easier than speaking. | 7 Shopping is boring. |
| 4 English spelling is easy. | 8 Working is something you must enjoy. |

3 Make phrases with the *-ing* form of a verb from the first box and a word or phrase from the second box.

write	paint	sleep	run ✓	listen to	play	learn	buy	cook
football	clothes	in a tent	English	languages	meals	music	for miles ✓	pictures

▶ Running for miles

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 ABOUT YOU Write sentences that are true for you, using the phrases in Exercise 3. Compare with another student if possible.

▶ Running for miles is not something I do



TEST YOURSELF

A Nouns ending in -ion

Can you **predict** the result of a football match?

No, it's very hard to make a **prediction**.

Someone's **invented** a way to clean plastic from the oceans.

That's a great **invention**!

Do you always **celebrate** your birthday?

Yes, I often have a small **celebration** with friends.

I have to **organize** my son's wedding.

Well, that will need careful **organization**.

Can you **describe** the criminal?

Yes, I can give the police a good **description**.

How do we **solve** the population problem?

I've got no idea. There's no easy **solution**.

We have to **decide** where to live.

That's a very important **decision**.

GLOSSARY

predict	say what you think will happen (make a prediction <i>n</i>)
invent	make, design or think of sth for the first time (invention <i>n</i>)
celebrate	do sth to show that you are happy for a special reason, or because it is a special day (have a celebration <i>n</i>)
organize	plan or arrange sth (organization <i>n</i>)
describe	say what sb or sth is like, or what happened (give a description <i>n</i>)
solve	find the answer to a question or problem (solution <i>n</i>)
decide	choose sth after thinking about the possibilities (make a decision <i>n</i>)

SPOTLIGHT suffix -ion

Many verbs form nouns by adding a suffix, and -ion/-tion/-sion/-ation are very common.

predict/prediction **celebrate/celebration**

Sometimes the ending of the noun changes.

solve/solution **decide/decision**

Stress can also change. Use the **APP** to check the sounds and the stress.

1 Underline the main stress in each word. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ **invent** ▶ **solution**
 1 **celebrate** **celebration**
 2 **describe** **description**

- 3 **predict** **prediction**
 4 **decide** **decision**
 5 **organize** **organization**

2 What words are being defined here?

- ▶ choosing something after thinking
 1 something somebody has made for the first time
 2 a time when you enjoy yourself for a special reason
 3 words that tell what somebody or something is like
 4 an answer to a problem
 5 a statement about what you think will happen
 6 planning or arranging something so that it is successful

decision

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word from this unit.

- ▶ Can you describe what happened when the car hit the tree?
 1 It wasn't easy to make a _____, but in the end, we _____ to sell the car.
 2 We have to _____ the traffic problems quickly. The _____ is probably to have better trains and buses.
 3 I didn't see the man, so I couldn't give a good _____ of him.
 4 After the exams, the students go out and _____ all night.
 5 I think it was Tim Berners Lee who _____ the World Wide Web.
 6 My boss is _____ tomorrow's meeting. He's very bad at
 7 The government has _____ that business will get better next year.
 8 The mobile phone is one of the most important _____ of the last fifty years.



TEST YOURSELF

B Other noun endings

Verb / Noun	Example	Meaning (verb)
discover v discovery n	Herschel <i>discovered</i> the planet Uranus. Herschel <i>made an important discovery</i> .	find a place or thing that nobody knew about before
succeed v success n	They want the discussions to <i>succeed</i> . They want them to be a <i>success</i> .	do or get what you wanted to do or get
complain v complaint n	You need to <i>complain</i> to the manager. You should <i>make a complaint</i> .	say you do not like sth or are unhappy about sth
choose v choice n	I had to <i>choose</i> a gift for my sister. I <i>made a bad choice</i> .	decide which thing or person you want
think v thought(s) n	I was <i>thinking</i> about our next holiday. I <i>had a few thoughts</i> about our holiday.	have an opinion or idea about sth
arrange v arrangement n	I have <i>arranged</i> to see Jo tonight. I have <i>made an arrangement</i> with Jo.	make a plan for the future
argue v argument n	We mustn't <i>argue</i> about money. We mustn't <i>have an argument</i> .	talk angrily with sb because you do not agree
move v movement n	Something <i>moved</i> behind me. There was a <i>movement</i> behind me.	change place or position

SPOTLIGHT suffix -ment

The suffix **-ment** is also common in English: **advertise v / advertisement n** **improve v / improvement n**

4 Complete the table.

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
move	<u>movement</u>	discover	.....
.....	success	.....	thought
arrange	.....	argue	.....
choose	.....	complain	.....

5 Circle the correct answer.

- When you dance, you make movements / *complaints* with your body.
- 1 She had *an argument* / *a movement* with her boyfriend last night.
 - 2 Did you make a *complaint* / *choice* to the waiter about the cold soup?
 - 3 I had a *discovery* / *thought* about the business: I think we should sell it.
 - 4 They thought the plan would fail, but in fact it was a great *success* / *arrangement*.
 - 5 The *arrangements* / *successes* for the wedding were really good – it went very well.
 - 6 They have made an important *discovery* / *thought* about the crime.

6 Complete the questions.

- Have you ever complained about bad service on buses or trains?
- 1 Have you ever made a c..... about noise to a neighbour?
 - 2 In a restaurant, do you c..... what to eat quickly?
 - 3 At school, did you have a c..... of different subjects?
 - 4 Do you a..... a lot in your family?
 - 5 Have you ever had an a..... with a shop assistant?
 - 6 Would you like to s..... in business?
 - 7 Is s..... the most important thing in life?
 - 8 Do you often have t..... about what to do in your future?

ABOUT YOU

Yes, often!

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

79 Compound nouns

A What are compound nouns?

This is common in English: word + word = new word. For example:

police + officer = **police officer** phone + number = **phone number**
bath + room = **bathroom** art + gallery = **art gallery**

- We write some compound nouns as one word, e.g. **bathroom**, but many are two words, e.g. **phone number**.
- Many compound nouns are easy to understand when you know the other words, e.g. **railway station**, **address book**, **first floor**, **dining room**, **bus stop**, **dishwasher**. Sometimes they are less easy to understand, e.g. a **disc jockey** (usually called a **DJ**) is a person who plays music on the radio and in clubs.
- You will meet many compound nouns as you learn English: **past tense**, **past participle**, **phrasal verb** (see Unit 99); **capital letter**, e.g. **ABC**; **full stop** (at the end of a sentence); **question mark** = ?
- With compound nouns, the main stress is usually on the first word, e.g. **phone** number, but sometimes it is on the second word, e.g. full **stop**.

1 Underline the main stress on these compound words. Use the to help you. Practise saying the words.

► art gallery ► full stop bathroom railway station first floor address book
bus stop phone number dishwasher capital letter police officer

2 What do we call these places or things? Use a compound noun to label each picture.



1



2



3



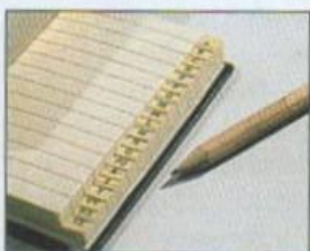
4



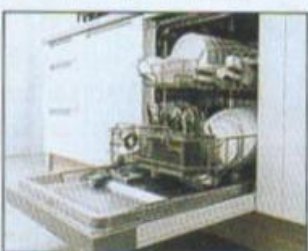
5



6



7



8

3 Complete the sentences.

- I'd like to visit that art gallery.
- My phone _____ is 07897 493321.
 - I found a police _____ and spoke to him.
 - My brother would like to be a disc _____ on the radio.
 - If it's a question, don't forget the question _____.
 - What's the past _____ and past _____ of forget?
~ That's easy. *Forgot* and *forgotten*.
 - My parents live on the first _____ of the building.
 - I waited at the bus _____ for about twenty minutes.
 - Get on* and *get off* are both _____ verbs.
 - You have to put a _____ stop at the end of the sentence.
 - A new sentence always begins with a _____ letter.



TEST YOURSELF

B In the town centre

... just after the **traffic lights**, we found a **car park**. Millie went to the **sports centre** to use the **swimming pool**, while Dan and I went to the **department store** in the new **shopping centre** to look at **washing machines**. We didn't buy one, but we had a very helpful **sales assistant**. After that, I did some shopping in the **high street**, and Dan went to the **ticket office** at the theatre. We came home after that, but Millie stayed and came back on **public transport**.



GLOSSARY

car park	an area or a building where you can leave your car
sports centre	a large building where you can play different sports
swimming pool	a place that is built for people to swim in
shopping centre	a large building or area with a lot of shops
sales assistant	a person who serves you in a shop ALSO shop assistant
high street	the main street in a town or city where the shops are
ticket office	a place in a railway station, cinema, etc. where you can buy tickets

SPOTLIGHT *centre and card*

One word often forms part of several compound words, e.g. **sports centre**, **shopping centre**, **town centre**. Another example is **card**: you give people a **birthday card** when it is their birthday; an **identity card** is a card with your name, photo, etc. on it; a **credit card** is a plastic card you use to buy things and pay for them later.

4 Find eight compound words using a word from each box.

car ✓
ticket
credit

department
traffic
public

sports
swimming
high

office
lights
pool

transport
park ✓
store

street
card
centre

car park

5 Complete the sentences.

- Matt uses the gym in the sports centre.
- I don't travel much on _____ transport these days.
 - Do you normally use your _____ card to buy expensive things?
 - Did you remember to send Tia a _____ card? She was 21 last week.
 - A police officer asked to see my _____ card yesterday. I was very surprised.
 - There are lots of cafés now in the _____ street. They're replacing shops.
 - The _____ lights were red when that car went through.
 - By 10.30 there are very few spaces in the car _____.
 - I need to buy a new washing _____.
 - They had to go to the ticket _____ to collect the tickets.
 - We had a terrible _____ assistant in the _____ store yesterday.

6 Complete the sentences.

- How often do you use public transport?
- Do you have an _____ card? What information is on it?
 - Do you go to a sports _____? If so, what do you do there?
 - Do you have a _____ card? If so, what do you buy with it?
 - Do you use a local swimming _____? If so, how often?
 - How many _____ cards do you buy and send every year?
 - Do you often shop in a department _____? If so, what do you buy there?

ABOUT YOU

Quite a lot. I use the buses every day.

7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to Exercise 6, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

A Love it or hate it?

1 I love football.



2 I really like it.

3 I like it.



4 I quite like it.

5 I don't mind it.

6 I don't like it very much.

7 I don't like it.



8 I hate it.
I don't like it at all.

SPOTLIGHT love/like/hate + -ing

After **love**, **like**, **hate** and **don't mind**, use a noun, a pronoun, or an -ing form:

- I love / like / hate / don't mind { football, it.
 - I love / like / hate / don't mind playing football.
- Like** and **dislike** can also be nouns: We all have different **likes** and **dislikes**.

1 Who is more positive (+)? Who is more negative (-)? Complete the answers with A or B.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| ▶ A loves coffee. | B likes coffee. | A is more positive. |
| 1 A likes tea. | B quite likes tea. | _____ is more positive. |
| 2 A likes chocolate. | B loves chocolate. | _____ is more positive. |
| 3 A really likes sport. | B doesn't mind it. | _____ is more positive. |
| 4 A doesn't like sport. | B doesn't like it at all. | _____ is more negative. |
| 5 A hates pop music. | B doesn't like pop music very much. | _____ is more negative. |
| 6 A doesn't like studying. | B doesn't mind studying. | _____ is more negative. |

2 Correct the mistakes.

- ▶ Do you like watch tennis?
1 I hate it chocolate.
2 They don't like to doing homework very much.
3 He doesn't like very much speaking English.
4 I like quite shopping.
5 She doesn't like drive.
6 I'm not mind working at night.

Do you like watching tennis?

3 Complete the sentences with one word.

- ▶ I don't like swimming very much.
- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 I _____ going to the cinema – it's my favourite hobby. | 5 I _____ writing emails – it's so boring. |
| 2 I don't like classical music at _____. | 6 I don't _____ watching TV very much. |
| 3 I don't _____ shopping – it's OK. | 7 Most people hate housework, but I _____ like it. |
| 4 I _____ like driving. I find it exciting. | 8 I don't like talking on the phone _____ all. |

4 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 3? Write your ideas, or ask another student.

- ▶ I really like swimming, and I go swimming a lot in the summer.



TEST YOURSELF

B My favourite things

meetpeopleontheweb.com

NAME Mirko Zitec
 WORK I work for a TV company. It's a **wonderful** job – I love it.
 STUDY I'm learning to play the guitar. It's good **fun** and my teacher's **incredible**.
 SPORTS My **favourite** sport is tennis, but I also **enjoy** playing football.
 TV/CINEMA I don't watch TV – it's very **boring**, but I'm **interested in** old films from the 1960s. In fact, I **prefer** old films to **modern** ones.
 MUSIC I think **jazz** is really **interesting** – I go to a jazz club every Friday.



GLOSSARY

wonderful very good **SYNS** **incredible, amazing**
fun If sth is **fun**, it makes you happy.
favourite Your **favourite** thing or person is the one you like most.
enjoy doing sth If you **enjoy doing sth**, you like it a lot and it makes you happy. **enjoyable** *adj*
boring **OPP** **interesting**
old made or bought a long time ago **OPP** **new** OR **modern**
prefer (X to Y) like sb or sth more than another person or thing
jazz a kind of music, e.g. Louis Armstrong, Duke Ellington

SPOTLIGHT *boring/bored, interesting/interested, etc.*

'The film was **boring**' means the same as 'I was **bored** by the film'.

(NOT *The film was bored.*)

It is the same with **interesting** and **interested**: 'I think modern art is **interesting**' has the same meaning as 'I'm **interested in** modern art'.

(NOT *I'm interesting in modern art.*)



He's boring. She's bored.

5 Write eight more sentences using words from 1, 2, and 3.

	1	2	3	
▶	It's ✓	not interested	boss.	It's a wonderful city.
1	I	the party	city. ✓	
2	I'm	favourite	watching TV.	
3	My	enjoy	film is <i>Star Wars</i> .	
4	She	amazing	enjoyable.	
5	He's an	a wonderful ✓	in politics.	
6	Was	is	programme.	
7	It's	prefers reading	good fun?	
8	Singing	a boring	to writing.	

6 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions, using the words in the box.

interesting fun interested modern enjoy
 prefer favourite incredible enjoyable ✓

- ▶ Do you think flying is enjoyable ?
 1 Is learning English good _____ ?
 2 Do you _____ meat to fish?
 3 What's your _____ city?
 4 Are you _____ in jazz?
 5 Do you think history is _____ ?
 6 Do you _____ walking in the countryside?
 7 Do you know a restaurant where the food is _____ ?
 8 Do you like old houses, or do you prefer _____ houses?

7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

81 Free time

A Common activities

What do you do in your free time?

I go ...	I play ...	I like ... I do (quite) a lot of ...	
 camping	 the guitar	 travelling	 I collect stamps, coins, etc.
 fishing	 golf	 drawing and painting	 I go out with friends.
 to the gym	 computer games	 cooking	 I watch TV and films.

1 Can you do these things inside your home? Write Yes or No.

- watch TV Yes
 go fishing
 play computer games
 do a lot of drawing
- go to the gym No
 do some travelling
 go out with friends
 go camping
- collect stamps
 play golf

2 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- do e
 1 go
 2 collect
 3 do some
 4 go out
 5 play
 6 watch
- a painting
 b football magazines
 c the guitar
 d television
 e a lot of travelling ✓
 f with my brothers
 g camping

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of do, go, collect, watch, play or make.

- I often go to the gym.
 1 Jojo a lot of cooking.
 2 My brother old clocks.
 3 I'd like to the guitar.
 4 Do you often camping?
 5 I don't much travelling now.
- 6 She out every night to a club.
 7 Do you golf?
 8 He too much TV.
 9 They fishing every weekend.
 10 She quite a lot of painting.

4 ABOUT YOU Look at the table again. Make a list of the activities you do now, the activities you would like to do, and the ones you aren't interested in.



TEST YOURSELF

B Hobbies

Favourite hobbies in Russia

Russian people have many **hobbies**. Older people enjoy **gardening**, fishing, and **repairing** cars. For younger people, there are **various clubs** in and outside school where children learn a lot of activities. **Popular** hobbies include sport, the arts, computers, listening to music, and collecting different things.

NATASHA: I like listening to **rock music**. I also like playing football with my friends, and I do a lot of drawing and reading. But my favourite hobby is **dancing**¹ (you can see me in the photo), and I'm quite **good at** it.

KOLYA: I play the guitar, and I can **sing** Russian and English **songs**. I often sing in the shower! I'm **good at** swimming and skiing. I also like travelling very much.



GLOSSARY

hobby	an activity that you like doing in your free time	popular	If sth is popular , many people like it.
gardening	working in your garden	rock music	music by, for example, The Rolling Stones and Bruce Springsteen
repair	make sth work when there is a problem, e.g. cars, bikes	good at sth	able to do sth well (NOT <i>good in sth</i>)
various	some that are different: <i>There are various places to go.</i>	sing	make music with your voice: <i>Ed Sheeran is a singer. He sings songs.</i>
club	a group of people who do sth together, or the place where they meet		

5 Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- rock / club S
- 1 repair / various 3 gardening / sing 5 hobby / song
- 2 good at / shooting 4 various / popular 6 rock music / club

6 Look at the text again. Tick (✓) the true sentences, and correct the false sentences.

- Natasha doesn't like rock music. False. She likes rock music.
- 1 Older people enjoy gardening.
- 2 Natasha is a good singer.
- 3 Kolya plays the piano.
- 4 There are no clubs in schools.
- 5 Kolya has various hobbies.
- 6 Natasha is very good at dancing.
- 7 Computers and collecting things are not popular hobbies.
- 8 Younger people like repairing cars.

7 Complete the sentences.

- Do you go to any sports clubs? If so, what kind?
- 1 What's your favourite h?
- 2 What hobbies are p with younger people?
- 3 Do you have v hobbies, or only one or two?
- 4 Are you a good s?
- 5 Write the name of one s you can sing.
- 6 Write down something you are good
- 7 Are you good at r things, e.g. a broken cup?

ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

8 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the questions, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

A Games and sports



football/soccer



baseball



basketball



swimming



American football



tennis



table tennis



ice hockey



running



motor racing



skiing



team player

SPOTLIGHT verbs with games and sport

We **play** a game:

■ I **play** football and tennis.

We usually **do** a sport, especially when it is a lot or a bit:

■ I **do** a lot of swimming. ■ She **does** a bit of running.

We also use **go** with -ing forms:

■ I often **go** swimming.

1 Combine words to find five more games or sports.

ice base ✓ motor tennis ► baseball
 football table basket ball ✓
 ball American racing hockey

2 Complete the sentences.

- People who play basketball are usually very tall.
 1 I watched a fantastic _____ of ice hockey on TV last night.
 2 Do you need a lot of snow for _____?
 3 Do you think motor _____ is dangerous?
 4 The children sometimes _____ swimming in the sea.
 5 My husband and I _____ a lot of swimming in the lake near our home.
 6 I want to do a _____ of running this summer.
 7 You need 11 _____ for a football _____.
 8 We went to the game and watched it from behind the _____.

3 Which sports in the photos can you do inside a building?

INSIDE A BUILDING	OUTSIDE A BUILDING
<u>swimming</u>	<u>baseball</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Which games do you play, and how often? _____
 2 Which other sports do you do? _____
 3 Which games and sports do you watch on TV? _____
 4 Which sports do people do a lot in your country? _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Football

ITALY	Played	Won	Drawn	Lost	Goals for	Goals against	Points
Juventus	34	24	9	1	63	22	81
Inter Milan	34	24	4	6	75	27	76
AS Roma	34	22	5	7	61	26	71

On Friday, Juventus **won** their important **match against** Inter Milan. Cuadrado **scored** the only **goal** in the 70th minute. This means they are still **top** and now **lead** Inter **by** five points. On Saturday, Sampdoria was only able to **draw** their match **with** Torino. At Napoli, Roma were leading two goals to **nil** at **half-time**, but then Napoli played much better in the second half to make the **final score** 2-2. Lazio **beat** Genoa 3-1, while Fiorentina **lost** 2-1 to Milan.

GLOSSARY

goal	what you get in football when the ball goes into the goal
point	sth that you win in a game or sport: <i>The team has six points from three games. He needs another point to win the game.</i>
match	a game between two teams
against	One player or team plays against another player or team.
score	win goals, points, etc. in a game score <i>n</i>
top	the highest of the teams
lead	be in front of others in a game or sport
nil	the number 0, especially when it's used in games such as football
half-time	a period of rest between the first half and the second half
final score	the number of goals at the end of a game, e.g. 2-1

SPOTLIGHT Irregular verbs

- win** *pt won* be the best or first:
 ■ We **won** 2-1.
beat *sb pt beat* win against sb:
 ■ We **beat** Sampdoria 2-1.
draw *with/against sb pt drew* end a game with the same number of goals:
 ■ We **drew** 3-3 **with/against** Roma.
lose *to sb pt lost* not win against sb:
 ■ We **lost** 1-2 to Milan.

5 Correct the underlined mistakes.

- Fiorentina draw with AS Roma. drew
 1 Lazio have a play next Saturday.
 2 Inter are playing with Parma.
 3 Genoa lost 3-1 with Fiorentina.
 4 Messi did two goals.
 5 Parma won by two goals to zero.
 6 Cagliari beated Sampdoria.
 7 Milan win their game last week.
 8 Did they drew the match?
 9 Milan won 3-1 with Roma.

6 Complete the sentences.

- They scored in the first minute.
 1 It's an important next week.
 2 We are playing Valencia.
 3 Seville 1-2 to Barcelona.
 4 Bilbao 2-2 Villareal.
 5 It was 0-0 at half-
 6 They have 24 from 13 games.
 7 On Sunday, Espanyol Real Betis 2-1.
 8 Ronaldo the goal.
 9 We our last match 4-1.
 10 They were 1-0 at half-time.
 11 What was the final ?

7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Find the football scores this weekend. Write down the final scores in English, and the people who scored the goals.

- Boca Juniors beat River Plate one nil. Cristian Pavón scored the only goal.



TEST YOURSELF

83 Music

A Classical music



audience

orchestra

concert

The **orchestra** is playing a **piece of music** by Haydn.



violin

violinist Vanessa Mae

She's playing a **concerto** by Vivaldi.



piano

pianist Lang Lang

He's playing music by Gershwin.



opera singer

Jonas Kaufmann is **performing**.

GLOSSARY

concert	a public performance of music
classical music	Western classical music includes music by Bach, Beethoven and Stravinsky. musical <i>adj</i> a single thing: a piece of music
a piece	
(musical) instrument	A piano and a violin are musical instruments .
perform	do sth in front of an audience, e.g. act in a play, sing, etc. performance <i>n</i>

SPOTLIGHT *by*

We say a book **by** Tolstoy, a song **by** Beyoncé, a painting **by** Picasso, a film **by** Martin Scorsese, etc.

1 Make music words from the letters.

- ▶ lioniv violin
- 1 onctecr _____
- 2 choartser _____
- 3 tiaspni _____
- 4 deniacue _____
- 5 froeprn _____
- 6 rapoe grisne _____
- 7 refrancepom _____

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Last night we went to a concert at the Royal Albert Hall.
- 1 Beethoven wrote _____ music.
- 2 A person who plays the piano is a _____.
- 3 A person who plays the violin is a _____.
- 4 A large group of people who play classical music together is called an _____.
- 5 A piano and a violin are types of _____.
- 6 A concert is a public _____ of music.
- 7 The people who listen to a concert are the _____.
- 8 The orchestra _____ some music by Mozart. It was wonderful!
- 9 Bach wrote some wonderful _____ of music.
- 10 *La Bohème* is an opera _____ Puccini.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Do you go to classical music concerts? If yes, when was the last time? _____
- 2 Can you think any of pieces of classical music that you like? _____
- 3 Did you ever learn the piano or the violin as a child? If yes, do you still play? _____
- 4 Do you play a different musical instrument? _____
- 5 What is your favourite musical instrument? _____

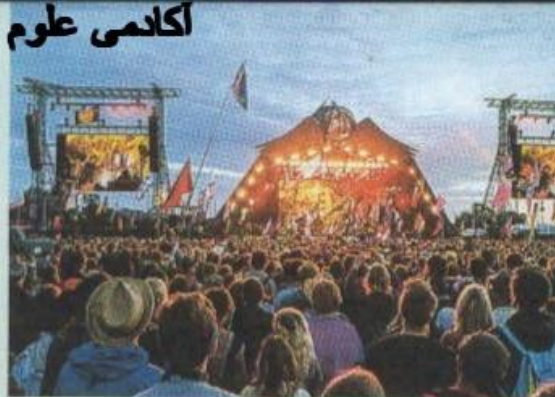


TEST YOURSELF

B Pop and rock

In the past, **bands** recorded an **album** onto a **CD**, people bought the album, and the **performers** made money. Now, most people **are able to download** music onto their computers and phones. This is good for listeners, but not so good for **musicians**, because most of them do not get much money from music streaming websites.

So, many performers are now going **back on tour**, travelling around the country (and the world), playing **live** concerts and at music **festivals** to earn more money. And audiences seem to love this opportunity to see their favourite singers and **groups** performing all their **hit records** live.



SPOTLIGHT *record something and a record*

If you **record something**, you put music or film on a CD. A **record** (note the different pronunciation) is a song, or sometimes an album.
 ■ David Bowie made his last **record** only days before he died.

GLOSSARY

band	(ALSO group), e.g. Coldplay, Guns N'Roses	musician	a person who plays a musical instrument
album	a number of songs, often about ten, on a CD or record	on tour	travelling to many different places to play live concerts
CD	(see picture)	live	(sounds like <i>five</i>) If sth is live , you see it or hear it at the same time as it happens.
performer	sb who performs music, or acts in the theatre	festival	a big event, e.g. concerts or shows, in one place
be able to	If you are able to do sth, you can do it; you have the knowledge you need. ability <i>n</i>	hit	a thing that a lot of people like: <i>The song was a hit in the US. a hit record</i>
download music	copy music from the internet onto a computer, phone, etc.		

4 What can you remember? Underline the correct answer.

- ▶ Bands record albums onto a hit / CD.
- 1 In the past, performers made / didn't make money from albums.
- 2 Downloading music is good / not good for most performers.
- 3 Downloading music is more expensive / cheaper than buying CDs.
- 4 Bands go / don't go on tour to make more money.
- 5 Groups are able to / aren't able to perform at music festivals.
- 6 People like / don't like seeing groups live.

5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Metallica are still a very famous band/group.
- 1 Coldplay are planning to go on _____ again next year.
- 2 I once saw Beyoncé _____ at Carnegie Hall in New York. She was amazing.
- 3 *Sergeant Pepper* is still the most famous _____ by the Beatles.
- 4 *You Belong With Me* was a big _____ for Taylor Swift.
- 5 I bought three _____ last week.
- 6 Paul McCartney is a great _____. He plays guitar and piano.
- 7 Adele was the first _____ that I ever saw live.
- 8 I saw Radiohead and the Foo Fighters at a summer _____ in 2017.
- 9 David Bowie _____ his last album, *Blackstar*, shortly before he died.
- 10 With a computer or smartphone, you have the _____ to download music.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Who's your favourite group/band? _____
- 2 Do you buy their CDs or download their music? _____
- 3 Have you ever seen them live? _____
- 4 What's their best album? _____
- 5 Do they often go on tour? _____
- 6 Do they have many hit records? Why? / Why not? _____



TEST YOURSELF

84 Films

A Describing films



A thriller is often exciting.



A comedy is funny.



A war film is often violent.



A love story is romantic.



An action film
(ALSO an adventure film)
is exciting.



A horror film is scary.



A cartoon is often funny.



A science fiction film
(ALSO sci-fi) can be scary.

SPOTLIGHT What kind/type/sort of ...?

- What **kind of** film is it? ~ It's a thriller.
- What **type of** music do you like? ~ Rock music.
- What **sort of** films are exciting? ~ Action films.

- 1 Tick the words with the same pronunciation as the underlined letters in *buy*, *fly*, *like*.
Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

describe ✓ fiction science film
violent exciting scary crime

- 2 Complete the kinds of films.

► wa r fi lm

1 th ler

2 c m

3 ct n f

4 sc n f t n

5 c t n

6 l v st

7 h r f

- 3 Complete the sentences.

► Was the film a thriller?

~ Yes, and quite violent.

1 What s of film is it?

2 I went to see an a film.

3 What k of films do you like?

4 Do you like r films?

5 It was a very scary h film.

6 Was it a good comedy?

~ Yes, it was f .

7 The film was a t of thriller.

- 4 Write one adjective to describe each picture.



► exciting



1



2



3



4



TEST YOURSELF

B What's on?

- A What's on at the cinema?
 B There's a film on called *Pacific Rim Uprising*.
 A What kind of film is it?
 B It's a sci-fi movie. It's about people from another planet who arrive on Earth. It's had brilliant reviews.
 A OK. Who's in it?
 B It stars John Boyega – he's the hero.
 A Oh, I like John Boyega– he's a good actor. Who's the director?
 B Stephen DeKnight. I've never heard of him, actually.
 A And where's it on?
 B The Odeon.
 A OK. Well, let's go and see it.



GLOSSARY

What's on?	= What films can we see?	star	be one of the main actors in a film/programme. The person is a star .
cinema	a place where you see films	hero	the most important man in a book or film. A woman is a heroine .
movie	film	actor	e.g. Idris Elba or Meryl Streep. A female actor can also be called an actress .
It's about ...	the subject is ...	director	a person who makes a film, e.g. Alfred Hitchcock
planet Earth	where we live. Mars and Venus are also planets .	Where's it on?	= Where can we see the film?
brilliant	inf very good	let's	used for making a suggestion for sth to do
review	an article about a film in a newspaper or on the internet		
Who's in it?	= Which actors are in the film?		

5 True or false? Write T or F.

- A film is a movie. T
 1 Antonio Banderas is an actress. _____
 2 The star is the main actor in a film. _____
 3 A review is a kind of article. _____
 4 Mars is a planet. _____
 5 The heroine is a man. _____
 6 The Earth is round. _____
 7 Steven Spielberg is an actor. _____

6 Complete the conversation.

► What 's on at the cinema? ~ An old film called *Dark Star*.
 Oh, what sort of film is it? ~ It's a sci-fi movie, but it's also funny.
 What's it (1) _____? ~ I'm not sure, but it's had (2) _____ reviews.
 OK, and who's (3) _____ it? ~ It (4) _____ Dan O'Bannon, who plays the (5) _____.
 Oh, I like him. He's a good (6) _____.
 Who's the (7) _____? ~ John Carpenter. He's great.
 OK. And where's it (8) _____? ~ At the ABC cinema.
 OK. (9) _____ go and see it tonight. ~ Fine.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What kind of films do you like? _____
 2 What was the last film you saw? _____
 3 Where was it on? _____
 4 Who are the stars of the film? _____
 5 Who's the director? _____
 6 What's it about? _____



TEST YOURSELF

85 The media

A Media questionnaire

- What do you **watch** on TV / the internet?
 - ☐ the news
 - ☐ crime drama
 - ☐ films
 - ☐ nothing
- Why do people read a **newspaper** or look at the news online?
 - ☐ to **find out** what has **happened**
 - ☐ because it has interesting **articles**
 - ☐ for the sports results
 - ☐ for the business **news**
- What do you **listen to** on the radio?
 - ☐ the news
 - ☐ music **programmes**
 - ☐ something else
 - ☐ nothing
- Do you **believe** what you read or hear in the news?
 - ☐ yes, **all** of it
 - ☐ **most** of it
 - ☐ **some** of it
 - ☐ no, **none** of it

GLOSSARY

the news [U]	a TV or radio programme about important things happening in the world. News [U] is information about things that have just happened.
crime drama	a police story on TV
newspaper	e.g. <i>The Times</i> , <i>The Washington Post</i> ALSO paper
find out	get information or facts about sth
happen	take place: <i>We don't know what will happen tomorrow.</i>
article	a piece of writing in a newspaper or magazine, or on the internet
on TV / on the radio	(NOT <i>in TV</i> / <i>in the radio</i>) ALSO in the (news)paper
programme	a TV/radio show, e.g. the news, a comedy
believe	think that sth is true
all (of sth)	100%
most (of sth)	80%
some (of sth)	30-50%
none (of sth)	0%

SPOTLIGHT *watch, see, listen, hear*

We **watch** TV, but we **see** or **watch** a programme, a film, etc.

We **listen to** the radio, but we **hear** a programme or **listen to** a programme.

1 Circle the correct answer. – means that no word is needed.

- See ☐ to the film.
- Read an article **on** / **in** the paper.
- Let's listen to **the** / **a** news.
- Watch a programme **in** / **on** TV.
- Find – / **out** what has happened.
- I heard it **in** / **on** the radio.
- See the **programme** / **article** on TV.
- Did you hear – / **to** the sports results?
- I heard all – / **of** it.
- I bought **a newspaper** / **the news**.
- I watched most – / **of** it.
- There's a new **crime** / **news** drama.

2 Complete the dialogues.

- I always **read** _____ a paper at the weekend. ~ But do you read **all** _____ of it?
- Did you _____ TV last night? ~ Yes, I _____ a programme about dogs.
- I read the story but I don't _____ it's true. ~ No, _____ of it is true. It's completely false.
- Have you heard the _____? ~ No, what's _____?
- Did you _____ to the radio this morning? ~ Yes, I _____ the 8 o'clock news.
- What's in the _____ this morning? ~ I don't know – I never buy one.
- What did you watch _____ TV? ~ A new crime _____. It was good.
- What did you listen _____? ~ Oh, nothing interesting.
- Did you see anything on Saturday? ~ Yeah, a _____ about climate change.

3 ABOUT YOU Read the questionnaire again. Tick (✓) your answers, or write a different answer. If possible, ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Media vocabulary

Word	Example	Meaning
media	The media often write about famous people.	TV, radio, newspapers, magazines and the internet
magazine	Do you read women's magazines ?	something you can buy every week or month, e.g. <i>Time</i> , <i>National Geographic</i>
opinion	What's your opinion of this story?	what you think about sth
report	Journalists report the news from all over the world.	give information on the news. The person is a reporter/journalist .
event	The Olympic Games is a very big event .	something important that happens. It can be good or bad.
die	Nobody died in the accident.	stop living
war	The two countries were at war for ten years.	fighting between countries or groups of people. When a war ends, there is peace .
disaster	The tsunami was a terrible disaster .	something very bad that happens, often when a lot of people die
celebrity (pl celebrities)	There were a lot of celebrities at the first night of the film.	a famous person, usually from TV, film or sport
advertisement (ALSO advert/ad inf)	There are too many adverts on TV and in the papers.	text, a picture or a short film which tries to sell you sth

4 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- What do the media say about him? / What does the newspaper say about him? D
- 1 There is peace between the two groups. / There is war between the two groups. _____
- 2 What's your opinion of the news? / What do you think of the news? _____
- 3 It was a great event. / It was a great advertisement. _____
- 4 I read a magazine article. / I read a newspaper article. _____
- 5 He is reporting from Seoul. / He is a journalist working in Seoul. _____
- 6 I saw it in an ad. / I saw it in an advertisement. _____
- 7 She's a TV celebrity. / She's on TV a lot. _____
- 8 Where did he live? / Where did he die? _____
- 9 She's a good reporter. / She's a good journalist. _____

5 Complete the text with words from the table in the correct form.

The ► media is TV, radio, newspapers, (1) _____ and the internet. The media (2) _____ important (3) _____ from around the world, for example, (4) _____ like the Asian Tsunami, or (5) _____ between different countries. As well as reporting the news, the media give their (6) _____ of events round the world. And, of course, (7) _____ also like to write about (8) _____ such as Taylor Swift and Usain Bolt, and so on.

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What has happened in the news this week? _____
- 2 What has been an important event in the last five years? _____
- 3 Do you usually get news from TV, radio, newspapers or the internet? _____
- 4 Can you think of a popular TV advert now? _____
- 5 Can you name a famous TV news reporter? _____



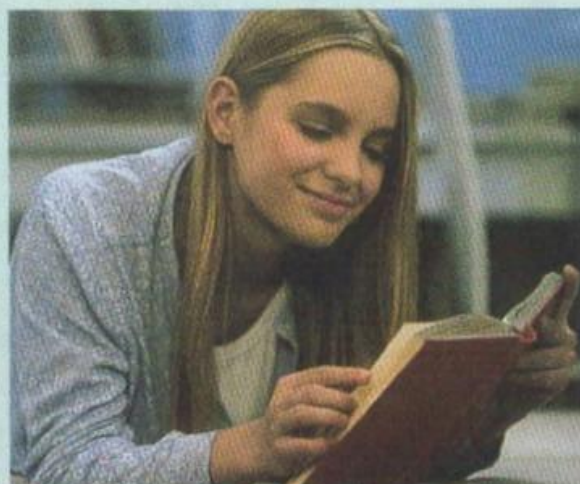
TEST YOURSELF

A Fiction

J.K. Rowling is a famous British **author**. She has written a **series** of **novels** in which the **main character** is a young boy called Harry Potter, who is always **in trouble**. Rowling has also **created** a number of novels about a private **detective** called Cormoran Strike. He's also in trouble a lot because, like Harry Potter, he doesn't like **rules**. But in the end, like Harry, he **solves** the crime or the problem.

GLOSSARY

fiction	stories that sb writes that are not about real events OPP non-fiction
author	a person who writes books or stories SYN writer
series	a number of things of the same kind that come one after another: a TV series
novel	a book of fiction
main character	the most important person in a book, film, etc.
create	make sth new happen or be
detective	a person who tries to find out who did a crime; usually a police officer
rule	sth that tells you what you must or must not do: school rules . If you break a rule , you do sth you mustn't do.
solve	find the answer to a question or problem solution <i>n</i>



SPOTLIGHT **trouble**

Trouble (often singular) means difficulty, problems or worry:

■ I **had** a lot of **trouble** **finding** a job.

If you **are in trouble**, you are in a situation which is dangerous or where you have problems, often with parents, the police or a boss.

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ A series is more than one. **T**
- 1 **Non-fiction** and **fiction** are the same thing.
- 2 An **author** is a **writer**.
- 3 A **detective** is often a policeman.
- 4 If you are **in trouble**, that's good.
- 5 The **main character** in a book is the most important person.
- 6 **Rules** are things that you must do and follow.
- 7 A **novel** is a book of real events.
- 8 If you **solve** something, you find an answer to a problem.
- 9 If you **create** something, you break it.
- 10 A **solution** to a problem is an answer.

2 Complete the text.

Adrian McKinty is an Irish ▶ **author** who has written a (1) _____ of crime (2) _____. The main (3) _____ in these stories is a (4) _____ called Sean Duffy, but he isn't a typical policeman. McKinty has (5) _____ a character who often breaks (6) _____, and because of this, he's often in (7) _____ with his bosses. But in the end, of course, he always (8) _____ the crime.

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- 1 A famous author from your country who writes novels.
- 2 A novel that this person has written.
- 3 A popular series on TV in your country.
- 4 One of the main characters in this TV series.
- 5 The name of a famous detective in fiction.
- 6 A rule that you sometimes break or have broken.



TEST YOURSELF

B Fact and fiction

Mary Shelley is a famous English writer from the 19th century. **In the past**, she was **mostly** famous for the novel *Frankenstein*, but in **recent** years, people have **realized** that she **achieved** much more. **In fact**, she wrote a **variety** of books, **including** novels, short stories, travel books and biographies (stories about other people's lives). During her life, she also **tried** to **publish** work written by her husband, Percy Bysshe Shelley, who died when he was only 29.

GLOSSARY

in the past	in the time before now
mostly	almost all: <i>My students are mostly Japanese.</i> SYN mainly
recent	that happened or began only a short time ago
realize	understand and know something: <i>I studied law, but I realize now that it was a mistake.</i>
achieve	do sth well after trying hard: <i>She achieved a lot in her life.</i>
in fact	often used for introducing more information
variety	a lot of different things
including	with: <i>There were 12, including me. (= 11 plus me)</i>
try	If you try to do sth, you work hard to do it: <i>I tried to call Clara yesterday, but she was busy all day.</i>
publish	prepare a book so you can sell it



4 Circle the two words that have the same sound underlined. Use the to help you.

Practise saying the words.

► past / arm / at

1 mine / same / mainly

2 mostly / hot / home

3 fit / realize / fine

4 achieve / child / receive

5 pull / butter / publish

6 man / variety / another

7 blue / run / including

8 recent / red / see

5 Circle the correct answer.

► In the past is around / before now.

1 Including you is with you / without you.

2 If you realize something, you know it / don't know it.

3 If you achieve something, that's bad / good.

4 A variety is one thing / lots of different things.

5 If you publish a book, it is / isn't ready to sell.

6 If something is recent, it happened a long / short time ago.

7 I mostly work means the same as I possibly / mainly work.

8 You use in fact to give more information / an example of something.

6 Complete the sentences.

► The book isn't difficult. In fact _____, it's a very easy book to read, and also quite short.

1 In the p _____, bookshops were closed on Sundays, but now they are m _____ open.

2 I've got ten books in English, i _____ this one.

3 I wanted to buy a dictionary, but I r _____ I didn't have enough money.

4 The company p _____ Maria's first book last year, and it is selling very well.

5 You will find a wide v _____ of books on cooking in this shop.

6 He t _____ many times to write a novel. Finally at the age of 36, he a _____ it. Now he's a famous author.



TEST YOURSELF

87 Arranging a holiday

A Things you need to do

Things you might do or arrange before you go on holiday:

- * book the flight
- * book the accommodation
- * check your passport¹
- * get foreign money
- * pack your suitcase



GLOSSARY

arrange	plan and organize sth
holiday	a period of rest from work or school
(go) on holiday	If you go on holiday or are on holiday , you are not at work and you are usually away from home.
book	arrange to do or have sth, e.g. a table at a restaurant
flight	a journey by plane fly v pt flew pp flown
accommodation [U]	a place to stay, e.g. a hotel
check	look at sth to see it is right, good or safe
foreign	of another country
pack	put clothes in a suitcase
suitcase	a large bag you put your clothes in when you travel

SPOTLIGHT *might* + verb

Might means 'it is possible that / perhaps'. **Might** is the same in all forms.

- You **might** be ill on holiday. = It's possible that you will be ill.
- He **might** forget his passport. ■ He **might** be on holiday now.

1 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- | | | |
|---------------|-------|---------------------|
| ► fly | e | a on holiday |
| 1 book | ..... | b the accommodation |
| 2 get foreign | ..... | c your passport |
| 3 pack | ..... | d money |
| 4 arrange | ..... | e to Rome airport ✓ |
| 5 go | ..... | f your suitcase |
| 6 check | ..... | g a flight |

2 Complete the text.

I'm going on ► holiday for two weeks this Saturday. I finally decided to go to Turkey, so I booked the (1) with Turkish Airlines. I needed (2) too, so I looked on the internet for hotels in Izmir. I found a nice one and (3) to stay there for the first week. After that, we're not sure but we (4) go and stay near the beach. I also got some (5) money. I'm very organized, so I have already (6) that my passport is OK, and I have also (7) my suitcase. I'm ready to go. Unfortunately, my husband is not so organized. He never looks at his passport and won't pack his (8) until the night before we travel.

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

When you go on holiday ...

- do you arrange it yourself, or does somebody else do it? I don't do it. My wife does. She usually arranges everything.
- 1 do you usually book a flight a long time before you travel? Why? / Why not?
- 2 do you usually need to book accommodation? Why? / Why not?
- 3 do you usually get foreign money before you travel?
- 4 do you always pack your suitcase yourself?
- 5 do you often check your passport?



TEST YOURSELF

B Booking accommodation

A Hotel Metropole. How can I help you?

B Oh, good morning. I'd like to book a room for next Friday please, that's the 24th.

A OK. Yes, we have rooms available.
Single or double?

B A double room, please.

A OK. A double room is £90 a night, and all our rooms are en suite.

B Good. And is breakfast extra?

A No, breakfast is included.

B OK, great. How about parking?

A I'm afraid we don't have parking at the hotel.

B Oh dear!

A But there's a car park very near.

B OK, well it doesn't matter. Yes, I'll take the room.

A Fine. Could I just take a few details then ...



double room



single room

GLOSSARY

available	ready for you to use, have or see
(£90) a night	= (£90) for one night ALSO (£90) a week/a month
en suite	a bedroom with a bathroom
extra	more than is usual: You pay an extra £20 for a large room.
include	have sth or sb as part of sth else: The meal will be about £30, but that includes service.
parking	a place to leave a car
I'm afraid	= I'm sorry (NOT I'm afraid-but) I'm afraid not = I'm sorry but no.
Oh dear!	used for showing that you are surprised or unhappy about sth
it doesn't matter	= it isn't important
details	information, e.g. your name, address, phone number

4 Is this good news? Write Yes or No.

- There is parking. Yes
- 1 I'm afraid ...
- 2 The room's en suite.
- 3 Breakfast is extra.

- 4 There are rooms available.
- 5 Oh dear!
- 6 Breakfast is included.
- 7 I'm afraid not.

5 Match 1-5 with a-f.

- Breakfast c
- 1 book
- 2 I'm afraid
- 3 It doesn't
- 4 Oh
- 5 £100
- a matter.
- b dear!
- c is included. ✓
- d a room
- e a week
- f not.

6 Complete the dialogue. Write one word in each space.

- A Regent Hotel, can I ► help you?
- B Oh, hello. Do you have any rooms (1) _____ for this weekend?
- A Would you like a (2) _____ room or a (3) _____?
- B A double, please.
- A OK. All our rooms are (4) _____.
- B Good. Is that with a bath and shower?
- A Just a shower.
- B Oh (5) _____ - I prefer baths. Oh well, it doesn't (6) _____. A shower's OK.
- A And a double room is €75 (7) _____ night.
- B That's fine. And does that (8) _____ breakfast?
- A No, I'm (9) _____ not. Breakfast is (10) _____.
- B Right. And what about (11) _____?
- A Yes, there is a car park at the hotel. Is there anything else?
- B No, that's great. I'd like to book the room.
- A Fine. Could you just give me a few (12) _____, please?



TEST YOURSELF

A Describe a hotel

travel blog

Atlanta Hotel (VILNIUS Lithuania)

When we **went on a trip** to Lithuania, we **stayed** at this hotel near the Old Town. The bedrooms were good, and the **service** was **excellent**: everyone was friendly and very **helpful** with all the information that **tourists** need. There was also a café bar where we could meet and **chat** to other **guests**. I would **definitely recommend** both Vilnius and the Atlanta for a short **stay**.



GLOSSARY

trip	a journey to a place and back again: <i>go on a trip</i>	tourist	sb who goes to a place on holiday tourism <i>n</i>
stay (at a hotel)	live for a short time (in a hotel) stay <i>n</i>	chat	talk in a friendly informal way to sb chat <i>n</i>
service [U]	the work that sb does for guests in a hotel, customers in a shop or restaurant, etc.	guest	a person staying in a hotel or your home
excellent	very good: <i>an excellent student/musician</i>	definitely	for sure; 100% SYN certainly
helpful	wanting to help	recommend	tell sb that a thing or a person is good

1 Circle the correct answer.

- We lived / stayed at a hotel for our holiday.
- 1 We went on / made a trip to India last month.
- 2 It was lovely – I recommend / don't recommend it.
- 3 The dinner was excellent / helpful.
- 4 A lot of tourists / guests visit our city.
- 5 It was great, so I definitely / possibly want to go again.
- 6 We had a short service / stay in Budapest last year.
- 7 I think service / tourism is important to Lithuania.
- 8 We often stay / chat to other guests in the hotel in the evening.

2 Complete the text.

Last month we had a short ► stay in Amsterdam. We were at quite a small hotel, but all the people who worked there spoke (1) _____ English, and they were very (2) _____. They told us about the best places for (3) _____ to visit such as the Van Gogh Museum, and they also introduced us to other (4) _____ who were (5) _____ at the hotel. If you are thinking of going to Amsterdam, I would (6) _____ this hotel, and you should (7) _____ go to the Van Gogh Museum while you are there.

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions.

- What was the last hotel you stayed at _____ ?
- 1 How long did you _____ there?
- 2 Was the _____ good?
- 3 Did you _____ to other guests in the hotel?
- 4 Would you _____ this hotel to other people?
- 5 Was the place popular with _____ ?

I stayed in the Hotel Victoria in Turin.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B In a hotel

A hotel guest might ask these questions:

Could I have my **key**, please?

It's room 402.

When do you **serve** breakfast?

Could I **pay my bill**, please?

Can I **change** money here?

Can I **leave** my luggage here?

Could you **call** a taxi, please?

Do I **have to** pay now?



The hotel receptionist might say or ask:

Could you just **sign** here, please?

You can **collect** your passport later.

You **have to check out** of your room by 10 o'clock.

Breakfast is served **until** 9.30.

GLOSSARY

key



serve

give food or drink to sb

pay

give sb money for work or services

bill

a piece of paper that shows how much money you must pay, e.g. in a hotel or restaurant

change

(money)

If you give sb pounds (£), and they **change** them **into** dollars, they give you dollars for the pounds.

leave sth

somewhere

let sth or sb stay in the same place **leave the door open**

call

phone sb (make) a call n

sign

write your name on a form or letter

collect

go and get sth from a place

check out

pay the bill and leave a hotel **check in**

until

up to a certain time **SYN till**

SPOTLIGHT have to + verb

Have to is used for saying that somebody must do something or that something must happen.

■ You **have to** pay the hotel bill when you leave.

■ **Do I have to** pay for breakfast? ~ No, breakfast is included.

■ You **don't have to** work on Sunday, but you can if you want.

5 Match 1-6 with a-g.

► change c

1 call

2 pay

3 sign

4 leave

5 serve

6 collect

a the bill

b food

c money ✓

d a bag in the hotel

e a ticket from the station

f a form

g a taxi

6 Complete the sentences.

► If you want to get in your room, you need a key.

1 If you write your name on a form, you it.

2 If your room is hot at night, you can the window open.

3 If you want to get somewhere quickly, you can a taxi.

4 If you're leaving a hotel or restaurant, you have to the bill.

5 If you give food and drink to people, you them.

6 If you have pounds (£) and want euros (€), you need to some money.

7 If you go to a place to get a key, you it.

8 When you arrive at the hotel, you in at reception.

7 Complete the dialogues.

► I'm leaving now, so could I pay the bill? ~ Yes, of course.

1 Can I have my, please? ~ Of course. What's your room number?

2 Do the shops close at 5.30? ~ No, they're open 7.30.

3 Excuse me, what time do you lunch? ~ From 12.00 to 2.00.

4 Will I to get a taxi to the airport? ~ No, you don't to. There is a bus from the hotel that will take you to the airport.

5 When do I have to leave my room and pay? ~ You have to check by 10 a.m.

6 I'd like to go to the train station. Could you a taxi for me? ~ Yes, of course.



TEST YOURSELF

A Check-in



Some passengers buy a ticket online and **print** a **boarding pass** 24 hours before they fly. Some passengers print a **boarding pass** at a **ticket machine** when they **reach** the airport. Some get one at the **check-in desk**. You need to **check in** if you have a lot of **luggage** (e.g. suitcases and bags), but you can take some **hand luggage** on the plane with you. After check-in, you can go through **security**, then look for the **gate** number where your flight leaves from and wait to **board** the plane.

GLOSSARY

print	put words or pictures onto paper using a machine
boarding pass	a card that you must show when you get on a plane or ship SYN boarding card
reach	arrive somewhere
check-in n	(see picture) check in v: You check in at the check-in desk .
hand luggage	a bag you can take on the plane with you
security	the place in an airport where people check you and your hand luggage
gate	in an airport, the place near your plane where you wait to get on
board	walk onto a plane, ship or bus

SPOTLIGHT airports

An **airport** is a place where people get on and off **planes/aeroplanes**. An **airline** is a company that takes people by plane to different places.

1 Complete the words.

- ▶ p a s senger 3 b _ _ _ d _ _ _ g c _ _ _ d 6 h _ _ nd l _ _ gg _ _ ge
1 b _ _ _ rd 4 ae _ _ _ pl _ _ _ 7 a _ _ _ l _ _ _ e
2 ch _ _ _ _ i _ _ 5 a _ _ _ p _ _ _ t 8 s _ _ c _ _ _ it _ _

2 Make five more phrases from the words in the box.

airline ✓ boarding desk board check-in pass
ticket company ✓ luggage machine the plane hand

- ▶ airline company _____

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We flew in a large aeroplane.
1 There were a lot of _____ waiting at the _____ desk.
2 If we hurry, we'll _____ the airport by 3.30.
3 I printed my _____ card at home, and I only had hand _____, so I didn't need to _____ in when I got to the airport.
4 I went to _____ 7, but I sat there for half an hour before we could _____ the plane.
5 Heathrow and Charles de Gaulle are very busy _____.
6 If you don't have a boarding pass, you can _____ one at the ticket _____.
7 I had a lot of _____: a large suitcase and a heavy bag as well.

4 ABOUT YOU Are these sentences true for you?

- ▶ I travel by plane a lot. No, I don't travel by plane very much.
1 I usually use the same airline when I fly. _____
2 I usually print my boarding pass at home. _____
3 When I reach the airport, the first thing I do is have a coffee. _____
4 I want to go through security very quickly. _____
5 I like to be one of the first people to board the plane. _____
6 I like to sit at the front of the plane. _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Departure and arrival



You get on / board the plane.



You fasten your seat belt.



The plane takes off.



Flight attendants provide food and drinks.



The plane lands and passengers get off.



Somebody checks your passport.



You collect your luggage and leave the airport.

GLOSSARY

departure	leaving a place
arrival	coming to a place: <i>There's always someone to meet me on arrival.</i>
arrive v	
provide	give sth to sb who needs it
check	look at sth to see if it is correct or good: check your ticket (NOT control your ticket)
collect	go and take sth from a place

5 Cover the pictures and put the phrases in order. Write numbers in the boxes.

You collect your luggage.

The plane lands.

You get on the plane.

You leave the airport.

You get off the plane.

The plane takes off.

You fasten your seat belt.

Flight attendants provide drinks.

Someone checks your passport.

6 Complete the text.

I don't like sitting in airports, and now you often have to ► arrive at the airport two hours before

(1) _____, which is terrible. When I (2) _____ the plane, the first thing I do is

(3) _____ my seat belt. I then sit nervously until the plane (4) _____. Fortunately, the

(5) _____ attendants are usually very kind, and always (6) _____ food and drinks, but I'm so

nervous I can't eat anything. I only feel safe when the plane has (7) _____. On (8) _____,

I'm very happy when someone has (9) _____ my passport, so that I can (10) _____ my

luggage and (11) _____ the airport with my brother, who usually meets me.

7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

► What's the first thing you do when you get on a plane? I fasten my seatbelt.

1 How do you feel when the plane takes off? _____

2 Do you always eat the food the airlines provide? _____

3 How do you feel when the plane lands? _____

4 Do you usually need to collect luggage, or do you travel with hand luggage? _____

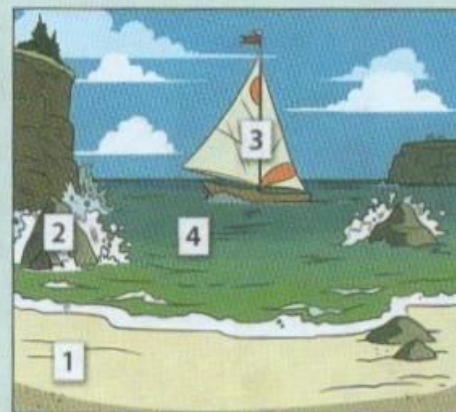


TEST YOURSELF

90 Types of holiday

A A beach holiday

For many years, we **used to** go to Hyères – a **typical** little town by the sea in the south of France. We used to **fly** to Nice, then get a bus to Hyères, where we stayed in an apartment. In the mornings, I was happy to sit on the **beach**¹ near the **rocks**² and read and write **postcards**, while my husband used to go out on a **boat**³ or go swimming – the **sea**⁴ was lovely and warm. We usually had lunch in the apartment, then **relaxed** for a **couple** of hours. In the evening, there were nice restaurants near the beach where we could have dinner.



GLOSSARY

typical	Something that is typical is a good example of its kind.
fly <i>pt flew pp flown</i>	travel by plane
postcard	a card with a picture on one side. You write on the other side and then send it by post.
while	at the same time as: <i>Max watched TV while I cooked dinner.</i>
relax	do nothing and enjoy yourself
a couple of (hours/days, etc.)	two or maybe three (hours/days, etc.)

SPOTLIGHT *used to + verb*

We use **used to + verb** to talk about something that happened often or was true in the past, but not now.

- *I **used to live** in New York, but now I live in London.*
- *My father **used to be** a police officer; now he works in a bank.*

1 Write five more things that the wife, the husband, or both of them used to do on their holiday.

- ▶ *They used to fly to Nice.* 3 _____
1 _____ 4 _____
2 _____ 5 _____

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Bournemouth is a *typical* place for a beach holiday in England.
1 We stayed there for a _____ of weeks.
2 We just sat on the _____ and looked at the sea.
3 I would like to go on a _____ on the river.
4 We sat on the _____ at the back of the beach. You could see more from there.
5 My idea of a perfect holiday is to _____ and do nothing.
6 We _____ from London to Rome, then took a train for the rest of the journey.
7 My cousin didn't like beach holidays. He _____ to go to the mountains every year.

3 One word is missing in each line of the text. What is it and where does it go?

- ▶ We had lovely / in France when *holidays*
I was a child. We to stay in Cassis 1 _____
usually for a couple weeks. Every 2 _____
morning I to swim a lot, but I also 3 _____
played with my dad, my mum 4 _____
wrote lots of to family and friends. 5 _____
That was a day. 6 _____

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- ▶ Where did you go for holidays as a child? *We used to have beach holidays in England or Spain.*
1 Did you go to several places or the same place? _____
2 How long did you usually go for? _____
3 Did you ever go on a boat? _____
4 Do you enjoy relaxing on holiday, or do you do many things? _____



TEST YOURSELF

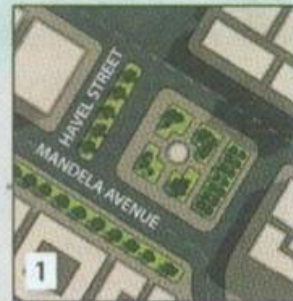
B A sightseeing holiday

Tourist questionnaire

When you **go sightseeing** on holiday do you:

- | | |
|--|----------|
| * buy a map ¹ of the town? | Yes / No |
| * buy a guidebook ? | Yes / No |
| * go on a guided tour with a guide ? | Yes / No |
| * prefer to go sightseeing on your own? | Yes / No |
| * visit museums and art galleries? | Yes / No |
| * like to look round ? | Yes / No |
| * take lots of photos ?? | Yes / No |
| * often get lost ? | Yes / No |

What is your **ideal** place for a sightseeing holiday?



GLOSSARY

go sightseeing	go as a tourist to look at interesting buildings and places	prefer to do sth	like to do one thing more than another
guidebook	a book that describes a place for tourists	visit	go to see a person or place for a short time
tour	a short visit around a town or building; go on a guided tour visit a place with a person who tells you about it	look round	visit a place
guide	a person who gives a guided tour and tells tourists about places	get lost	If you get lost or are lost , you don't know where you are.
		ideal	the best or exactly right SYN perfect

5 Circle the correct word.

- prefer to go / go
- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 go / have sightseeing | 5 guide / guided tour |
| 2 a guide map / guidebook | 6 make / take photos |
| 3 go on / make a tour | 7 look round / about a place |
| 4 visit / go a museum | 8 a guide / an ideal holiday |

6 Complete the sentences with one word.

- We went on a guided tour.
- She took a lot of _____ of old buildings in the town centre.
 - We _____ on a tour of the town, and the _____ was interesting and very funny.
 - I _____ lost because I didn't have a _____.
 - We went _____ the day after we arrived. It was quite tiring.
 - I don't like _____ tours of places – I _____ to visit places on my own.
 - You get a lot of useful information in a _____.
 - Do you want to go on on a guided _____?
 - I want to _____ the Science Museum when I'm in London.
 - My sister can never find her way – she often _____ lost.
 - I like to look _____ a place and _____ lots of photos.
 - A beach holiday is _____ for families with young children.
 - When you're on holiday, do you prefer to _____ round on your own?

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the tourist questionnaire, or ask another student.



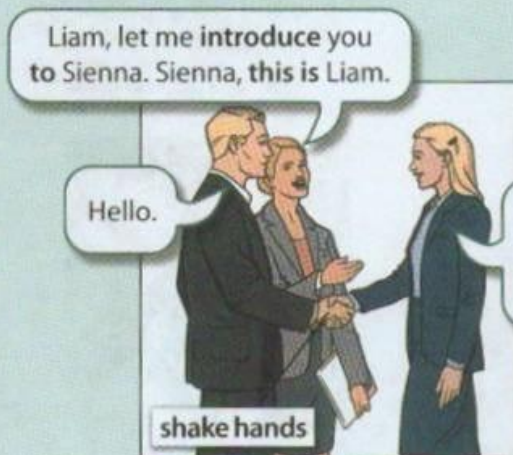
TEST YOURSELF

91 Meet and greet

A Introductions

Liam and Sienna meet for the first time ...

... and two hours later ...



GLOSSARY

greet	say hello when you meet a new person or a friend	greeting <i>n</i>
introduce sb (to sb)	bring people together for the first time and say their names	introduction <i>n</i>
This is ...	When we introduce people, we say this is Liam, etc. (NOT <i>he/she is</i> OR <i>here is</i>)	
hi	<i>inf</i> hello	
welcome	If sb is welcome , you are happy to see them: Welcome to our home! welcome <i>v, n</i> : He welcomed us. They gave us a warm welcome .	
bye	a short form of <i>goodbye</i>	
hope to (see you again)	used for saying that you want sth to happen	

SPOTLIGHT introductions

You often use **Nice to meet you** or **Good to meet you** when you meet people for the first time, and when you say goodbye after the first time you meet them.

How do you do? was common in the past, but is now very formal and not used very much.

1 Make correct sentences from the words.

- ▶ do / how / do / you How do you do ?
- 1 meet / nice / hello / you / to _____
- 2 this / Max / Emma / is _____
- 3 again / hope / you / bye / to / see _____
- 4 you / goodbye / to / nice / meet _____

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Bye is just a short form of goodbye.
- 1 When we _____ somebody to another person, we say: 'This is (Sophy)'.
- 2 We often _____ hands when we meet people for the first time.
- 3 When we _____ friends, we usually say *hello* or *hi*.
- 4 _____ and greetings are often different in other countries and languages.
- 5 When we visit my aunt and uncle, they always give us a warm _____.
- 6 *Hello* and *Hi* are common _____ in English.

3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 LUCY Emma, ▶ this is Alex.

EMMA _____

ALEX Hi, _____ to _____ you.

- 2 EMMA Goodbye, Alex. Hope to see you _____.

ALEX Yes, _____.

- 3 MAX Lucy, _____ is Dan.

LUCY Hi, Dan. Good to _____ . And _____ to Cambridge.

DAN Thank you.

- 4 LUCY Bye, Dan. _____ to see you again. Have a good journey.

DAN Thanks, _____.

B Meeting a friend



Matt meets his friend Tess in a café.

Matt Hi, Tess. How are you?

Tess Fine, thanks. And you?

Matt Yeah, very well.

Tess Good. And how's Sarah?

Matt She's in bed, actually.

Tess Oh! What's the matter?

Matt Flu, I think.

Tess Oh dear!



An hour later they say 'goodbye'.

Tess Anyway, Matt, I've got to go now. See you later.

Matt Yeah. About 7.00?

Tess Yes, that's fine.

Matt Good. See you then.

Tess Sure. And give my love to Sarah. Hope she gets better soon.

Matt Yes, I will.

GLOSSARY

How are you? You say this to a friend when you meet. ALSO **How are things?**

fine OR **very well** OR **good** OR **not bad** are common replies to 'How are you?'. (NOT **very fine**)

oh! used for showing a strong feeling, e.g. when you're surprised or afraid

What's the matter? = What's the problem?

Oh dear! sth you say if you are surprised or sad

anyway a word you can use when you start to talk about sth different

have got to do sth have to do/must do
Have got to is more informal than **have to**. It is usually contracted, e.g. **I've got to go**.

give my love to sb say a big, warm hello to sb

will You use **will** when you agree or promise to do sth.

SPOTLIGHT see you ...

We say this when we know we will meet someone again.

See you later is usually the same day. Other common expressions are: **see you soon**, **see you** (next Saturday, etc.), **see you then**, etc.

4 Complete the phrases.

► H o w a r e y o u ?

1 S_____ you tomorrow.

2 He's v_____y w_____l.

3 Wh_____ the m_____?

4 S_____ you l_____.

5 S_____ you s_____.

6 H_____r_____th_____s?

7 G_____ my l_____ to Suki.

8 I've g_____t_____go n_____w.

9 Th_____s f_____n_____.

5 Replace the underlined words with another word or words that have the same meaning.

ROB Hello. ► Hi _____ How are you? _____

FINN Good. And you? _____

ROB Hmm, not great.

FINN What's the problem? _____

ROB I have to work all weekend. _____

FINN Oh no. _____

ROB Yes, so I can't come on Sunday. But say hello to Elle. _____

FINN Yes, I promise. _____

6 Cover the conversations above and complete the dialogues. Don't use the same word more than once.

1 JIM Hi, How ► are you _____?

SAM I'm very _____. And you?

JIM Yeah, _____.

And _____ your wife?

SAM She's _____.

2 JIM _____, Sam, I _____.

_____ go now.

SAM OK. See you _____.

JIM Sure. What time?

SAM 6.30.

JIM Yeah, _____ fine. See you _____.



TEST YOURSELF

A About people

Who do you live with, Tracey?

And what's your brother like?

And your boyfriend - what does he do?

How long have you known him?

And you're learning Spanish. How often do you study?

And why Spanish?

Whose idea was it to live in Spain?

OK. But what do you think?

What kind of work can you do in Spain?

~ My parents, and my younger brother.

~ He's OK - he's quite funny.

~ He works for an airline company.

~ About two years.

~ Twice a week.

~ Because we want to live in Spain.

~ My boyfriend's.

~ Yeah, I think it's a good idea.

~ I can probably get a job in a restaurant.

GLOSSARY

twice (a week/ month, etc.)	two times every week/month, etc.
idea	a plan or a new thought: <i>It was a good idea to arrive early.</i>
yeah inf	yes
kind (of sth)	a group of things or people that are the same in some way SYNS sort/ type : <i>What kind/sort/type of books do you read?</i>

SPOTLIGHT *whose and belong to someone*

Whose money is that?	~ It's mine . = It's my money.
Who does that money belong to?	~ It belongs to my brother.
Whose is this bag?	~ It's Ben's. = The bag belongs to Ben.
Who does this bag belong to?	~ It's Ben's.

1 Make correct questions from the words.

- ▶ for / do / work / who / you
- 1 you / often / there / go / how / do
- 2 like / what / music / do / sort of / you
- 3 he / does / what / do
- 4 have / lived / how long / there / you
- 5 type of / do / watch / what / films / you
- 6 this / to / belong / does / who
- 7 his / like / what's / flat
- 8 like / you / why / her / do

Who do you work for?

.....?

.....?

.....?

.....?

.....?

.....?

.....?

.....?

2 Find the right question in Exercise 1 for these answers.

- ▶ Because she's very kind. **g**
- a Ten years.
- b I like romantic movies.
- c It's small but very nice.
- d Twice a year.
- e It's mine.
- f He's a doctor.
- g Rock and pop.


3 Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

- ▶ Why did you leave your job? ~ Because I didn't like it.
- 1 How do you go to Italy? ~ a year.
- 2 jacket is this? ~ It's I bought it yesterday.
- 3 's Alicia like? ~ She's very nice.
- 4 Do you speak German? ~, a bit.
- 5 Who does this to? ~ I think it's Mark's.
- 6 What of animal is it? ~ I think it's a horse.
- 7 Do you want to go out this evening? ~ Yeah, that's a good
- 8 How have you worked there? ~ Six months.



TEST YOURSELF

B About places



How long is it open?
(= how many hours?)

What do you recommend?
(= What do you think is good?)

What time / When does the palace close/shut?
(open)

How far is it to the river?
(= how many metres?)

Where's the nearest bank?
(= Where's the first bank from here?)

How many places can we visit with this ticket?
(= what number?)

Is the castle worth seeing?
(= Do you recommend the castle?)

How much are the tickets?
(= How much money?)

Which restaurant do you recommend?

SPOTLIGHT *which or what?*

Use **which** when there is a small number of possibilities.

- We have a double room or a single. **Which** would you like? (There are only two possibilities.)

In other situations with more possibilities, use **what**.

- **What's** the address of the hotel? (NOT *Which is the address?*)

4 Circle the correct answer.

- When time What time does it close?

- 1 Which / What is your address?
- 2 How long / long time do you need?
- 3 What hour / time does it open?
- 4 How many / much places did you visit?

- 5 Where's the next / nearest café?

- 6 Is the museum worth to see / seeing?

- 7 There are two films. What / Which do you prefer?

- 8 How far / long is it to the museum?

5 Complete the questions.

- When does the post office open?

- 1 How _____ is it to the station?
- 2 It opens at 8.00, but when does it _____?
- 3 How _____ places did you go to?
- 4 Is it _____ going to see Angkor Wat?

- 5 We've got two or three types of pen.

_____ one do you want?

- 6 Where's the _____ underground station?

- 7 _____'s the phone number of the bank?

- 8 There's a lot to see. What do you _____?

6 ABOUT YOUR TOWN Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Where do you live? _____
- 2 How long have you lived there? _____
- 3 Which places are worth visiting? _____
- 4 How far are they from your home? _____
- 5 Can you recommend any restaurants? _____
- 6 Where's the nearest restaurant? _____



TEST YOURSELF

A Requests and responses

Requests (in the classroom)	Responses
Can you bring ¹ the dictionaries here, please?	✓ Yes, of course.
Could you finish this exercise for homework, please?	Sure. Yeah, no problem.
Yuri, could you take ² these books to the library?	X
Elena, can you change places with Gabi, please?	(No), I'm afraid I can't.
Could you lend me a pen, Oleg?	
Please make sure you put the books back.	

SPOTLIGHT being polite

In English, it is **polite** to say **please** when you ask a person for something, and to say **thank you** if the person says yes.

I'm afraid is a polite way to say **no**, and to say you are sorry about something.

■ **I'm afraid** I can't come this evening.

■ Can you come this evening? ~ **I'm afraid not.**

Can and **could** are both used for requests. **Could** is a bit more polite.

GLOSSARY



1 bring



2 take

request

asking for sth in a polite way

response

an answer to sb or sth **respond** v

finish

do/complete the last part of sth

change places

e.g. Elena sits in Gabi's seat, and Gabi sits in Elena's seat

lend

give sth to sb to use for a short time

make sure (you do sth)

be certain (that you do sth)

put sth back

return sth to its place

I'm afraid I can't

= I'm sorry, but I can't. (NOT ~~I'm~~ afraid but I can't.)

1 Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

- Can you clean the board, please?
- 1 Can _____ lend _____ a pen, please? ~ Yes, of _____.
- 2 Could you _____ the books here, _____? ~ Yeah, no _____.
- 3 _____ you lend me some money? ~ No, I'm _____ not. I don't have any.
- 4 Is it _____ to say **please** and **thank you** in English? ~ Yes, it is.
- 5 Do you often use **sure** and **no problem**? ~ Yes, they're common _____ to requests in English.
- 6 Can I _____ this book home tonight? ~ Yes, but please _____ it back tomorrow.
- 7 I must _____ sure I remember Katya's book next week.
- 8 Do you use **can** and **could** for _____ in English? ~ Yes. **Could** is a bit more _____.
- 9 We have to _____ all the books back on the shelf when we finish the lesson.

2 Write requests and responses using **can** and **could**, and different responses.

- put / books / over there

A Could you put these books over there, please?

B Yes, sure.

- 1 finish / exercise / homework

A _____

B _____

- 2 Luca / change places / Maria

A _____

B _____

- 3 bring / notebook / tomorrow

A _____

B _____

- 4 lend / pencil

A _____

B _____

- 5 take / books / library

A _____

B _____

- 6 finish / essay / Monday

A _____

B _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Asking for and giving permission



SPOTLIGHT *lend and borrow*

If you **borrow** a pen **from** someone, you use their pen, then give it back.

If you **lend** someone a pen, or **lend** a pen **to** someone, you give them your pen to use for a short time.

■ **Could I borrow your pen?** = **Could you lend me your pen?**

GLOSSARY

permission allowing sb to do sth; telling them it is OK to do sth:
She gave me permission to leave class early.

go ahead / that's fine You say **go ahead** or **that's fine** when you give sb permission to do sth. **ALSO of course / no problem**

all right OK

Do you mind if ...? = Is it a problem for you if ...? (The answer **No, go ahead** means 'It's not a problem'.)

3 Write new sentences. Change **only** the bold words. The meaning must stay the same.

- Can we sit down? **Is it OK** if we _____ sit down?
- 1 Is it **OK** if I use this dictionary? _____
- 2 **Is it OK** if I make a coffee? _____
- 3 **Can** I stay for another ten minutes? _____
- 4 Is it OK **to** close the window? _____
- 5 Can **you lend me** your book? _____
- 6 Can I sit here? ~ Yes, **of course**. _____
- 7 Can I use the computer? ~ I'm **sorry but** I need it. _____
- 8 Is it OK if I have my coffee here? ~ Yes, **sure**. _____

4 Ask for permission in these situations. Use the word in CAPITALS.

- You want to sit near the window. CAN Can I sit near the window?
- 1 You want to go at one o'clock today. MIND _____?
- 2 You want to borrow a piece of paper. COULD _____?
- 3 You want to go to the toilet. OK _____?
- 4 You want to sit in a different seat. ALL RIGHT _____?
- 5 You want somebody to lend you a pen. CAN _____?

5 Find five more responses in the box to the question below.

no	ahead	fine	afraid	problem	of	I	it
need	sure ✓	that's	yes ✓	go	I'm	course	

Could I possibly borrow your car tomorrow?

► Yes, _____ sure, _____

- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____

- 4 _____
- 5 _____



TEST YOURSELF

94 Invitations and suggestions

A Inviting people



Inviting	Saying yes
Would you like to ... Do you want to ... go out for a meal / a drink? come round for a coffee? come to a party?	Yes, great! Yeah, I'd love to! That sounds lovely/fun/good. That would be lovely/nice.
	Saying no
	I'd love to, but I'm going to the cinema. I'm sorry, but I'm busy. I'm afraid I can't.

GLOSSARY

invite	ask sb to come to a party, your house, etc. invitation <i>n</i>
Would you like to ...?	= Do you want to ...? (Would you like to is a bit more polite.)
go out for (a meal/drink)	go to a restaurant or a café/ bar
come round	visit a person at their house, often near your house
party	a time when friends meet to eat, drink, dance, etc.
great	very good SYNS lovely/wonderful
I'd love to	= I want to very much; I'd = I would ALSO That would be lovely. / That sounds lovely.
busy	If you're busy , you have a lot of things to do.
I'm afraid I can't	= I'm sorry, (but) I can't (NOT I'm afraid but I can't)

1 Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- meal / great D
- 1 love / wonderful 3 sorry / come 5 yeah / there
- 2 would / sound 4 afraid / great 6 busy / but

2 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- Do you / to go out later? want
- 1 Would you to come round later? 6 I'm afraid can't.
- 2 Yes, I'd love. 7 That be nice.
- 3 Do you want to out for dinner? 8 Do you want come to a party?
- 4 That lovely. 9 I'm, but I'm busy tonight.
- 5 I've just got an to a party. 10 Ben me to lunch on Saturday.

3 Complete the questions and answers.

- Invite someone for a drink in a bar.
Say yes.
- 1 Invite a friend for a meal in a restaurant.
Say yes.
- 2 Invite a friend to your home for a coffee.
Say no politely.
- 3 Invite someone to a party tomorrow.
Say yes.
- 4 Invite someone for a coffee in a café.
Say no politely.
- Do you want to go out for a drink?
- That would be lovely.
- Would ?
- Yes, g !
- Do ?
- I'm a ?
- Would ?
- Yes, that s ?
- Do ?
- I'd , but gym.



TEST YOURSELF

B Making suggestions

ask for a suggestion	What shall we do } this weekend? Where shall we go }		
make a suggestion	Shall we go to the beach? Maybe we could go out for a meal.	What about going to an art gallery? Let's go out for a drink.	
say 'yes'	Yes, (that's a) good/great idea! Yeah, let's do that. OK, fine.	say 'no', or make another suggestion	I'm not sure (about that). I think I'd prefer to stay at home. Yeah, or perhaps we could go to the mountains.

GLOSSARY

suggestion	an idea that sb gives you to think about suggest v
maybe	possibly SYN perhaps
that's a great idea	= that's a very good plan
prefer to do sth	like to do one thing more than another

4 Put the dialogues in order. Write the numbers in the boxes.

dialogue 1

- ☐ I'd prefer to get them at the station.
- ☐ The weather's nice, so
- ☐ Yes, that's a good idea.
- ☒ 1 What shall we do this weekend?
- ☐ And maybe we could take the train.
- ☐ Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
- ☐ what about going to the beach?

dialogue 2

- ☐ But it's going to rain.
- ☐ I think I'd prefer to go out.
- ☐ OK, fine.
- ☐ What about a nice meal at home?
- ☐ OK, then let's order a pizza.
- ☐ Where shall we go tomorrow?

5 Correct the mistakes.

- ▶ We could to have a party this weekend. We could have a party this weekend.
- 1 What do we do this evening? _____
- 2 Do you have a suggest? _____
- 3 What about go to see a film? _____
- 4 I'd prefer go by train. _____
- 5 Yes, is a good idea. _____
- 6 Where we shall go tomorrow? _____

6 Write in a word where there is a /.

- 1 ▶ A What / we do / evening? What shall we do this evening?
- B What / going / the theatre? _____
- A I'm / sure / that. _____
- 2 A What / we / on Saturday? _____
- B Perhaps we / go out for a meal. _____
- A OK, let's / that. _____
- 3 A Where / we go / afternoon? _____
- B / go to a museum. _____
- A Yeah, / 's a good / . _____



TEST YOURSELF

95 Offers and saying sorry

A Offers



Offering food/drink

Would you like a drink?
Do you want something to eat?



Offering help

Do you need some help?
Let me help you.

Accept	Refuse
Yes, please. Thanks. Thanks. Could I have ...?	No, thanks.

Accept	Refuse
Yes, please. Thanks a lot. Thank you (very much).	No, I'm fine, thanks. No, don't worry.

GLOSSARY

offer	say or show that you will give sth if another person wants it offer n
need	If you need sth, you must have it.
help	the act of doing sth good for sb help v
let me ...	used for asking permission to help another person

accept	say 'yes' OPP refuse
thanks a lot <i>inf</i>	= thanks very much
don't worry	used to tell sb that sth is not important
	worry n

1 Correct the mistakes.

- ▶ ~~Could~~ you like a drink? Would
- 1 You want something to eat? _____
- 2 Thanks, no. _____
- 3 I fine, thanks. _____
- 4 Do you like something to eat? _____
- 5 Let me to help you. _____
- 6 I thank you very much. _____
- 7 Thanks. Could I take a coffee? _____

2 Complete the sentences with one word.

- ▶ Would you like something to eat? ~ Oh, thank you very much.
- 1 Do you need some _____ with your luggage? ~ Oh, yes, _____.
- 2 Did you _____ her a drink when she arrived? ~ Yes, of course.
- 3 Do you _____ some help with those books? ~ Yes I do. _____ a lot.
- 4 Here, _____ me help you. ~ No, don't _____. I'm OK, thanks.
- 5 I offered to help but she _____. She said she didn't need help.
- 6 When people offer me a drink, I usually say 'yes'. I think it's polite to _____.

3 Complete the questions and answers.

- ▶ Offer someone food.
1 Offer someone a drink.
Accept, and ask for some water.
 - 2 Offer someone help.
Say no politely.
 - 3 Offer someone food.
Accept, and ask for an apple.
 - 4 Offer someone help.
Say no politely.
- Do you want something to eat?
- A Would _____ drink?
- B Yes, _____ water?
- A Do _____ help?
- B No, _____, thanks.
- A Would _____ eat?
- B _____ an apple?
- A Let _____.
- B No, _____ worry.



TEST YOURSELF

B Saying sorry

He pushed me but didn't say sorry.



Really! That's so rude.

SPOTLIGHT (I'm) sorry

You use **(very/really/so) sorry** when you:

- 1 feel bad about something you've done:
I'm sorry, I've broken your cup.
- 2 feel sad about something:
I'm sorry you can't come to the party.
- 3 want somebody to repeat something:
Sorry, could you repeat that, please?

Saying sorry	Responses
Sorry, I don't speak English very well.	That's all right. I'll speak slowly.
Oh no! I've broken a cup. I'm so sorry.	That's OK. Don't worry.
I'm very sorry - I've lost your pen.	It doesn't matter. I've got lots of pens.
I forgot to post your letter - I'm really sorry.	Never mind. I can post it later.
Sorry I'm late - the traffic was terrible.	Oh, don't worry about it.

GLOSSARY

rude	not speaking or behaving in a way that is correct for the social situation OPP polite	break <i>pt broke pp broken</i>	make sth go into smaller pieces, e.g. by dropping it
that's all right / don't worry / it doesn't matter / never mind	These phrases all mean 'it's not important' / 'it's OK'.	lose <i>pt/pp lost</i>	If you lose sth, you can't find it.
		forget <i>pt forgot pp forgotten</i>	= not remember
		(I'm) sorry I'm late	(NOT Sorry for being late.)

4 Match 1-8 with a-i.

- | | | |
|---------------------|---|--------------------|
| ► That's | c | a bring your book. |
| 1 It doesn't | | b my car keys. |
| 2 I forgot to | | c all right. ✓ |
| 3 Never | | d I'm late. |
| 4 Don't | | e sorry. |
| 5 Sorry | | f matter. |
| 6 I'm really | | g your pencil. |
| 7 I've broken | | h worry. |
| 8 I've lost | | i mind. |

5 Complete the dialogues with a word or a contraction (e.g. *don't*).

- I'm very sorry. ~ That's OK.
- 1 I'm really sorry. ~ all right.
- 2 I'm sorry late. The traffic was terrible. ~ That's OK.
- 3 I'm afraid I've my homework. ~ That's all Bring it tomorrow.
- 4 I'm sorry. ~ It doesn't
- 5 Sorry I'm late. ~ Oh, never It's not important.
- 6 Did he say to you? ~ Yes, he did. He's always very
- 7 I think I've your chair. I'm very sorry. ~ Don't It's very old.
- 8 Did he say sorry? ~ No, he's very

6 Write down:

- 1 three words you can use before sorry ► very
- 2 four phrases you can use to say 'it's OK' or 'it's not important':
.....
- 3 three different meanings of 'sorry':
.....



TEST YOURSELF

96 Probably or possibly



Noah and Ava are getting married. Sonja is an old girlfriend of Noah's, and Noah has invited her to the **wedding**. Ava doesn't like Sonja very much. Do you think Sonja will **attend** the wedding?

GLOSSARY

wedding	a time when a man and woman get married
attend formal	go to or be present at a place where sth is happening
certain	sure about sth certainly <i>adv</i> SYN definitely
probably	If sth will probably happen, you think it will happen but you are not sure. probable <i>adj</i>
likely (to)	If sth is likely to happen, it will probably happen.
chance	a possibility that sth may happen. A good chance means it is more probable.
possible	If sth is possible , it can happen. OPP impossible ; possibility <i>n</i>
maybe	a word that shows that sth is possible SYN perhaps
may	a word that shows that sth is possible, and will perhaps happen. SYN might : He may/might come with us. (NOT He may/might to come with us.)

100%	CERTAIN	Yes, She'll definitely go.
	PROBABLE	Yeah, I think so. Yeah, she's likely to go. Yeah, she'll probably go. I think there's a (good) chance that she'll go.
	POSSIBLE	I think she { may go. } might Yeah, maybe/perhaps .
	UNLIKELY	No, I don't think so . No, I don't think she'll go.
0%	IMPOSSIBLE	No, she definitely won't go.

SPOTLIGHT I think so / I hope so

You can use these expressions if you think or hope something is going to happen. Notice the difference in the negative.

- Are you going? ~ Yes, **I think so**. (= it is likely that this will happen)
- Is the exam difficult? ~ No, **I don't think so**.
- Will you get more money? ~ **I hope so**. (= I would like this to happen)
- Is it going to rain? ~ **I hope not**.

1 **Underline** the main stress in these words. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| ▶ possible | 4 definitely |
| 1 certainly | 5 likely |
| 2 impossible | 6 probably |
| 3 possibility | 7 perhaps |

2 Are the sentences similar in meaning or different? Write S or D.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| ▶ It's certainly true. / It's definitely true. | S |
| 1 The team will probably win. / The team will definitely win. | ..... |
| 2 I may stay in tonight. / I might stay in tonight. | ..... |
| 3 John and Shar are likely to come. / John and Shar will definitely come. | ..... |
| 4 Will Jo come? ~ Maybe. / Will Jo come? ~ Perhaps. | ..... |
| 5 Is it sunny outside? ~ I think so. / ~ I hope so. | ..... |
| 6 I'm probably going to change jobs. / I'm likely to change jobs. | ..... |
| 7 I think it's likely. / I think it's impossible. | ..... |
| 8 There's a chance it will happen. / There's a possibility it will happen. | ..... |

3 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- Is Marta coming with you? ~ It's not / but I think she will. certain
- 1 I probably work this evening.
- 2 My parents are not likely come this afternoon.
- 3 Are you going tonight? ~ Yes, I think.
- 4 Have you lost your money? ~ No, I hope.
- 5 I think there's chance that he'll be here.
- 6 Are you seeing Jacob this evening? ~ I'm not sure. I see him.

4 Complete the conversations.

- A Are you going tonight?
B I don't know yet. Perhaps
- 1 A What are you doing this evening?
B I'll p..... stay at home, and I m..... finish reading my book.
- 2 A Who's coming to the cinema this evening?
B Well, Elle will d..... come, and Briony will p..... come with her. And I think three or four more are l..... to come. So, about seven or eight, including us.
- 3 A What are you doing this weekend?
B I'm going to a w..... My cousin is getting married.
A Well, enjoy yourself.
B Thanks. It will c..... be interesting - I don't think the two families like each other very much.
- 4 A Is the team going to win this weekend?
B Yes, there's a good c..... we will - we're playing quite well.
- 5 A What are you doing next week?
B I have to a..... an important meeting for my company in Manchester.
A Are you going to drive?
B I don't think that's l..... : it's a long way. I m..... take the train. Then I can work.
- 6 A Will everyone come to the meeting this afternoon?
B There's a p..... they will all be here, but I don't think s.....
- 7 A Are you leaving at the end of the year?
B Well, m....., but nothing's c..... yet. I'll p..... decide at the end of this month.
- 8 A Will you finish the exercise by the end of the lesson?
B No, that's i..... It's really difficult.

5 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions using words and phrases from page 184.

- Are you going to do anything this evening? I might do some work. I'm not sure.
- 1 Are you going to have a good weekend?
- 2 Are you going to go out with friends?
- 3 Are you going to stay at home on Sunday?
- 4 Are you going to do any work?
- 5 Are you going to watch much TV?
- 6 Are you going to spend a lot of money?
- 7 Are you going to visit other members of your family?
- 8 Are you going to go shopping?



TEST YOURSELF

A Giving more information

These words give more information.

Word	Example	Meaning
and	<i>The city centre is dirty and very expensive.</i>	links two ideas in one sentence, sometimes with a comma (,)
also	<i>The centre is dirty.</i> { <i>It's also very expensive.</i> <i>It also costs a lot to live there.</i>	goes after auxiliary verbs, e.g. <i>be</i> , <i>can</i> , but before the main verb
too and as well	<i>The centre is dirty.</i> { <i>It's very expensive</i> <i>It costs a lot to live there</i> } <i>too.</i> <i>as well.</i>	go at the end of the sentence Too and as well are used more in spoken English.

1 Are *also*, *too* and *as well* in the correct position? Put a tick (✓) or a cross (X). Then correct the mistakes.

- You need a dictionary, and as well a grammar book is useful. X and a grammar book is useful as well
- The house is beautiful, and it's near the park also.
 - He speaks German, and he understands too Greek.
 - We went out for dinner and Lucy came as well.
 - I cleaned the house and washed also the car.
 - She worked in Rome, and I think she worked in Ravenna too.
 - We've got a big garden, and there's as well a park near the house.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- too / and it's good / the weather's / in autumn / nice / in winter
The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too.
- I often eat / ice cream / cake / also / like / and I
I often eat
 - I enjoy / and I go / too / watching tv / to the cinema a lot
I enjoy
 - I can speak / German / as well / understand / English / I can / and
I can speak
 - I read a lot / also / and I / music / of books / listen to
I read a lot
 - and / on TV / I play / I watch it / as well / football
I play
 - I drive / too / a lot / and / I / walk
I drive

3 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you or your country? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too.
That's not true. The weather in winter is very cold and it rains a lot as well.
-
 -
 -
 -
 -
 -



TEST YOURSELF

B Introducing a surprising idea

These words link two ideas when the second idea is surprising after the first idea.

Word	Example	Meaning
but	<i>We had sunny weather, but it was quite cold. He worked hard, but he didn't pass the exam.</i>	links two ideas, usually in one sentence. Sometimes there is a comma (,) with a longer sentence.
however	<i>We had sunny weather. However, it was quite cold. He worked hard. However, he didn't pass the exam.</i>	links two ideas, usually in two different sentences. There is a comma after however . However is more formal than but .
although/ though	<i>Although we had sunny weather, it was quite cold, especially in the morning. He worked hard, although he didn't pass the exam. I went to the party. I was quite tired, though.</i>	(the second part sounds like go) links two ideas in one sentence. Although often goes at the beginning of the sentence, but can go in the middle, after a comma. In spoken English, you often use though .

SPOTLIGHT *still*

You can use **still** to make the second idea a bigger surprise:

- *We had sunny weather, **but** it was **still** quite cold in the evenings.*
- *He worked hard. **However**, he **still** didn't pass the exam.*

4 Rewrite the sentences using the link word in CAPITALS.

- The exam was easy. I didn't pass. **HOWEVER** The exam was easy. However, I didn't pass.
- 1 He went to bed late. He couldn't sleep. **BUT** _____
- 2 People don't like her very much. She's very kind. **HOWEVER** _____
- 3 The food was terrible. The service was good. **ALTHOUGH** _____
- 4 It was snowing. We decided to go out. **BUT/STILL** _____
- 5 We lost our dog. We found it after an hour. **HOWEVER** _____
- 6 I wore a coat. I was cold. **ALTHOUGH/STILL** _____
- 7 I watched the whole programme. I didn't enjoy it. **THOUGH** _____
- 8 We had a big lunch. Jason was hungry. **HOWEVER/STILL** _____

5 Make six sentences or pairs of sentences from the table using **but** or **however**.

► I didn't feel well. ✓	but However,	I only had to wait five minutes.
I was really hungry,		I stayed at work to finish the job.
I was last in the queue.		someone lent me a jacket.
I was very cold.		I had to wait until 10.00 for dinner.
I was very frightened,		someone held my hand.
I was late for the party.		I was fine the next day. ✓
I was really tired.		everybody was still there.

- I didn't feel well. However, I was fine the next day.

6 Complete the sentences in a way that makes sense.

- I took my umbrella but it didn't rain.
- 1 Everyone says it's a great film, though _____
- 2 Although it was raining, _____
- 3 The dog looked dangerous but _____
- 4 Although she was ill, _____
- 5 She's very intelligent. However, _____
- 6 I thought the shop was open. However, _____

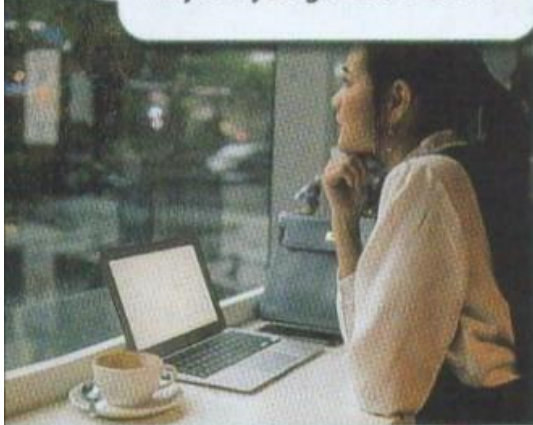


TEST YOURSELF

98 Link words (2)

A Reason and result

Why did you go into the café?



Link word before the **reason**:

because + clause	<i>I went into the café because it was raining.</i>
because of + noun	<i>I went into the café because of the rain.</i>
(in order) to + verb	
In order to is more formal than to .	<i>I went into the café (in order) to get out of the rain.</i>

Link word before the **result**:

so + clause = because of this	<i>It was raining, so I went into the café. = 'I went in the café' is the result of the rain.</i>
as a result + clause = because of this	<i>I went to bed very late, and as a result I was tired the next morning.</i>
As a result can also start a new sentence.	<i>The others had a map but I didn't. As a result, I was the last person to arrive.</i>

GLOSSARY

reason	an explanation for why you do sth
result	sth that happens because of sth else

1 Circle the correct word(s).

- ▶ I took my umbrella because so it was raining.
- 1 I stayed at home **because** / **because of** the weather.
- 2 We went to Paris **so** / **to** see a friend.
- 3 I couldn't go out **because** / **because of** I had to study.
- 4 I got lost and **in order to** / **as a result** I was late for the meeting.
- 5 It was my birthday, **so** / **because** we had a party.
- 6 She went to the market **in order to** / **as a result** get some meat.
- 7 She lost her passport, **so** / **because** she couldn't go to China.

2 Write **because**, **because of**, **so**, **(in order) to** or **as a result**.

- ▶ They were late because of the traffic.
- 1 I'm going to the chemist's _____ get some medicine.
- 2 It was a nice day, _____ we went out.
- 3 I bought the house _____ the beautiful view.
- 4 I didn't take a coat. _____, I was cold most of the time.
- 5 I don't go to the theatre very often _____ it's too expensive.
- 6 I'm going out now, _____ I will phone you later.
- 7 She went to the town centre _____ meet her friend.
- 8 Our two best players were ill, and _____ we lost the game.

3 Complete the sentences with your own reasons and results.

- I stayed at home last night ...
- ▶ **because** I had to do some work
- 1 **because of** _____
- 2 **in order to** _____
- I had to wait half an hour for a train, ...
- 3 **so** _____
- 4 **and as a result** _____
- I went to bed very late ...
- 5 **because** _____
- 6 **so** _____



TEST YOURSELF

B A series of actions or events

Luke is a waiter now. **Before that**, he worked in a factory.

First of all, you fry the meat. **Secondly**, you fry some onions and add them to the meat. **After that**, you add the red wine and water and cook it slowly for three hours. **Finally**, you add the mushrooms and cook it for another fifteen minutes.

... and we had a really nice time. **Firstly**, we spent a couple of days in Budapest. **After that**, we went to Vienna, where we spent the rest of the week. It was very easy to ...

GLOSSARY

before that	earlier than sth
firstly	You say firstly when you are talking about the first thing in a list. ALSO first / first of all
after that	You say after that when you are talking about the next thing in a list. ALSO (and) then
secondly	You say secondly to talk about the second thing in a list.
finally	You use finally when you are talking about the last thing in a list, usually a long list of four or more things.

4 Complete the link words in the texts.

For this job, ► firstly , you have to fill in a form. (1) S_____ , you have to go and talk to the boss. (2) A_____ , you meet other people who work in the company. (3) F_____ , you have to do a written test.

(4) F_____ , I checked the train times on the internet, and (5) t_____ I looked at flights to see if they were cheaper.

James got his first job last year. (6) B_____ , he was a student.

5 Put the sentences in the correct order. Then add link words.

► I checked the answers. / I did the grammar exercises.

First of all, I did the grammar exercises. Then I checked the answers.

1 You make the pasta sauce. / You boil the pasta. / You add the sauce to the pasta.

2 I trained to be a teacher. / I did a degree in History. / I got a teaching job in Liverpool.

3 We flew back to Rome. / We stayed in Munich for a week. / We spent the second week in Heidelberg. / We left our home in Rome.

4 I came home and had a cup of tea. / I cooked the dinner. / I went to the market. / I made a shopping list.

5 I rang for a taxi and left home. / I had a shower. / I got dressed. / I had breakfast.

6 ABOUT YOU Write three or four things you did last weekend. Use link words.

► First of all, I ...



TEST YOURSELF

99 Phrasal verbs

A Meaning

Most phrasal verbs are very common in spoken English. They have a verb (*sit, stand, get, etc.*) and a particle (*up, on, off, etc.*). Sometimes, the meaning of the two parts is easy to understand.



sit down



stand up



lie down



fall over

Sometimes the two parts form a new meaning.

Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning
give sth up	<i>He had to give up football.</i>	stop doing something
look sth up	<i>I had to look up the meaning.</i>	try to find information in a book or on the internet
take off	<i>The plane couldn't take off.</i>	leave the ground and start flying
grow up	<i>When Ben grows up, he wants to be a doctor.</i>	slowly change from a child to an adult
find sth out	<i>I must find out the times of the trains to Southampton.</i>	find a fact or piece of information you need or want
go out	<i>Let's go out this evening.</i>	leave your home to do a social activity, e.g. go to a cinema, a club, etc.

1 Underline the correct particle.

- ▶ I'd like to lie up / down for a minute.
- 1 Can we find out / over how much it costs?
- 2 Where did she grow out / up?
- 3 He fell over / off when he left the house.
- 4 Do you want to go out / off tonight?
- 5 Pepe wants to give on / up his job.
- 6 Look it out / up in your dictionary.
- 7 The plane couldn't take off / up.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct particle.

- ▶ Paola doesn't want to go out this evening. She's tired.
- 1 I don't know the name of the hotel, but I can find _____.
- 2 Everyone stood _____ when he came into the room.
- 3 Susana lives in England now, but she grew _____ in Spain.
- 4 She sat _____ at the table and started eating.
- 5 The doctor told me to lie _____ on the bed.
- 6 I told my brother to give _____ smoking.
- 7 The plane took _____ half an hour late because of the bad weather.
- 8 She fell _____ in the street, but several people helped her.
- 9 I asked James to look _____ the meaning of a word for me.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- ▶ Do you often look up English words in a dictionary? Yes, quite often.
- 1 Is there anything you would like to give up? _____
- 2 Where did you grow up? _____
- 3 When you fly, how do you feel when the plane takes off? _____
- 4 How often do you go out in the evenings? What do you do? _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Grammar

Some phrasal verbs never have an object.

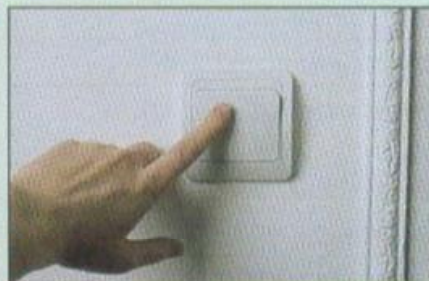
Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning
go up	The price of petrol will <u>go up</u> soon.	↑ increase, become more OPP go down ↓
carry on (with sth)	Can we <u>carry on</u> with the exercise?	continue with something
go back	She wants to <u>go back</u> to London.	return to a place
wake up	I always <u>wake up</u> at 7.00 a.m.	stop sleeping
go away	<u>Go away!</u> I'm working.	leave a person or a place

Other phrasal verbs need an object. In the following verbs, the object can go before or after the particle.



Take off your jacket.

Take your jacket off.



Could you turn on the light?

Could you turn the light on?



Put on your shoes.

Put your shoes on.

When the object is a pronoun (it, them, etc.) it must go before the particle.

Take it off. (NOT ~~Take off it.~~)

Put them on. (NOT ~~Put on them.~~)

4 Change the underlined noun to *it* or *them*, and put it in the correct place.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| ▶ Look up <u>the word</u> . <u>Look it up</u> . | 4 Put <u>those socks</u> on. _____ |
| ▶ Look up <u>both words</u> . <u>Look them up</u> . | 5 Take off <u>your shoes</u> . _____ |
| 1 Take off <u>your jacket</u> . _____ | 6 Give up <u>chocolate</u> . _____ |
| 2 Put on <u>this tie</u> . _____ | 7 Turn on <u>the lights</u> . _____ |
| 3 Turn on <u>the TV</u> . _____ | 8 Put <u>your coat</u> on. _____ |

5 Are the sentences correct, or do they need the pronoun *it*? Where? Look at the examples.

- ▶ Look up in the dictionary. Look it up in the dictionary. ▶ Please sit down. Correct
- The price will soon go down. _____
 - Do you want to go back? _____
 - Could you turn on, please? _____
 - You can take off if you're hot. _____
 - His salary will go up soon. _____
 - Do they want to stop or carry on? _____
 - Did you put on? _____
 - What time do you usually wake up? _____

6 Replace the underlined word(s) with a phrasal verb that has the same meaning.

- ▶ The price will decrease soon. go down
- I loved Tokyo, and I want to return next year. _____
 - When we finish Exercise 1, we can continue with Exercise 2. _____
 - I was busy so I told them to leave me on my own. _____
 - Can I remove my coat? _____
 - I think my salary will increase next year. _____
 - I was so tired, I didn't stop sleeping until 9 o'clock this morning. _____



TEST YOURSELF

100 Common expressions

A Expressions with get

Expression	Example	Meaning
get ready	<i>We need to get ready now – the film starts at 6.30.</i>	be prepared and able to do sth
get dressed	<i>I got dressed, had breakfast, then went to work.</i>	put on clothes
get to know sb	<i>I got to know Charlie when we were at university.</i>	meet sb and become friends
get changed (into sth different)	<i>I've been for a long walk, so I'm going to get changed.</i>	take your clothes off and put on different clothes
get in	<i>What time does our train get in?</i>	arrive at a place
get to sleep	<i>Do you have problems getting to sleep?</i>	start to sleep
go and get sth	<i>Could you go and get a clean towel from the bathroom?</i>	go to a place and return with sth SYN fetch
get back	<i>I want to get back by 7.00, if possible.</i>	return from a place
get better	<i>I feel my English is getting better now.</i>	reach a higher level, improve
get out of sth	<i>Be careful when you get out of the car.</i>	leave a vehicle such as a car or taxi
we/you get	<i>We get a lot of tourists where I live.</i>	= there are / you can see

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

► get better

1 get in

2 get back

3 get to know somebody

4 go and get

5 get dressed

6 get changed

g

a put on clothes

b meet and become friends

c return

d arrive

e put on different clothes

f fetch

g reach a higher level ✓

2 Complete the sentences.

► I started learning the guitar last year, and I'm definitely getting better now.

1 Ed, could you _____ and get my laptop from the bedroom?

2 We all got _____ of the car and pushed it to the side of the road.

3 I'm meeting Sophia at the station. Her bus gets _____ at 3.15.

4 I left Amelia's flat at 10.00, but I didn't get _____ until 11.30.

5 We're going out in ten minutes, so we need to get _____.

6 You _____ a lot of people sleeping on the streets in big cities.

3 Complete the sentences.

► Do you get to know _____ people easily?

1 Do you usually get _____ before or after you have breakfast?

2 When you go out, does it take you a long time to get _____?

3 When you get home from school/college/work, do you usually get _____ into different clothes?

4 Do you ever have problems getting to _____ at night?

5 Do you think your English is getting _____?

6 Do you _____ a lot of tourists in your town?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 3, or talk to another student.

► Do you get to know people easily? Yes, I think so.



TEST YOURSELF

B In conversation

These expressions are common in informal spoken English.

Guess what! I passed the exam. I heard this morning.

Wow! Well done! That's great.

Yes, I can now relax for the rest of the week.

I don't feel like going to the beach.

But everyone else will be there.

I know, but I'm going to stay here and take care of the dog.

Are you going to the meeting on Friday?

I guess so.

Well, can you let me know by tomorrow?

Come on! We have to go.

What, now?

Yes, right now.

SPOTLIGHT *else*

You can use **else** to mean 'different' after words like **everyone**, **somewhere** and **nothing**.

- I didn't like it, but **everyone else** did. (= all the other people)
- The restaurant was full so we went **somewhere else**. (= to another place)
- We had bread because there was **nothing else** to eat. (= no other thing)

GLOSSARY

Guess what!	used for introducing surprising news
Wow!	a word that shows you are surprised and happy
Well done!	You say this to sb when you are happy because they have done sth well. SYN Congratulations!
the rest	the part that is left or remains: the rest of the day/time
feel like (doing) sth	want (to do) sth: I feel like a nice cold drink.
take care of sth/sb	do everything to make sth/sb safe: I can take care of the children while you go shopping. SYN look after sth/sb
I guess so	= I think so SYN I suppose so
let sb know	tell sb
Come on!	used for telling sb to hurry, be quick SYN hurry up!
right now	at this minute; immediately SYN right away

5 Find eight more expressions using words from each box.

somewhere ✓ let come hurry
the rest I guess well right

on! up so done
me know now of the time else ✓

► somewhere else

6 Complete the dialogues.

- We need to go right away or we'll be late. ~ Yes, let's go.
- 1 You had all the biscuits. ~ Sorry, there was _____ else to eat.
- 2 Do you feel _____ a drink? ~ Yes, let's go out.
- 3 Do we need to get ready now? ~ Yes, right _____, so _____ up!
- 4 _____ what? I came first in the English exam. ~ _____! Well _____!
- 5 Are you staying? ~ Yes, I'm going to look _____ the two girls.
- 6 Are you staying at Jon's? ~ Yes, I _____ so. I'll _____ you know at the weekend.
- 7 Why are you going back to the flat? ~ Because there's nowhere _____ to go.

7 Rewrite the sentences using the word in CAPITALS. The meaning must stay the same.

- We need to go right now. AWAY We need to go right away.
- 1 The bar was busy, so we went to another place. ELSE _____
- 2 Could you tell me later? LET _____
- 3 Who is going to look after the children? TAKE _____
- 4 Come on, Sacha! HURRY _____
- 5 Do you want to go out? FEEL _____
- 6 Penny is here. All the others went out. EVERYONE _____



TEST YOURSELF

Vocabulary building

The words in **bold** are all in the units in the Elementary level.

The words in blue are people.



TEST YOURSELF

cover one column, and say the word or words in the other column.

1 Verbs and nouns

Verb	Noun(s)
act	actor, actress
advertise	advert/advertisement, advertising
agree	agreement
appear	appearance
argue	argument
arrange	arrangement
arrive	arrival
begin	beginning
build	building, builder
choose	choice
clean	cleaner
climb	climbing
collect	collection
complain	complaint
cook	cooker
dance	dance, dancing, dancer
decide	decision
depart	departure
describe	description
design	designer
disagree	disagreement
discover	discovery
discuss	discussion
draw	drawing
drive	driving, driver
educate	education
employ	employer, employee
enter	entrance
examine	exam/examination
explain	explanation
fail	failure
farm	farming, farmer
feel	feeling
fly	flight, flying
greet	greeting
grow	growth
hear	hearing
improve	improvement
instruct	instruction, instructor
invent	invention
invite	invitation
listen	listening, listener
manage	manager

mean	meaning
meet	meeting
move	movement
organize	organization
own	owner
park	parking
pay	payment
perform	performance, performer
play	player
prefer	preference
print	printer
pronounce	pronunciation
read	reading, reader
recommend	recommendation
record	record, recording
report	report, reporter
reserve	reservation
respond	response
ride	riding, rider
run	run, running, runner
serve	service
sign	signature
sing	song, singer
smoke	smoke, smoking
solve	solution
speak	speaking, speaker
spell	spelling
study	study, student
succeed	success
suggest	suggestion
swim	swim, swimming
teach	teaching, teacher
think	thinking, thought
travel	travelling, travel, traveller
visit	visiting, visitor
walk	walk, walking
wash	wash, washing
weigh	weight
win	winner
work	working, worker

2 Adjectives and nouns

Adjective	Noun(s)
attractive	attraction
beautiful	beauty
cloudy	cloud
cold	cold
crowded	crowd
dangerous	danger
different	difference
direct	direction
electric, electrical	electricity

excited, exciting	excitement
friendly, unfriendly	friend
happy, unhappy	happiness
healthy, unhealthy	health
icy	ice
ill	illness
industrial	industry
intelligent	intelligence
long	length
lucky, unlucky	luck
medical	medicine
musical	music
national	nationality
natural	nature
noisy	noise
painful	pain
peaceful	peace
personal	person
possible, impossible	possibility
scientific	science, scientist
strong	strength
sunny	sun
surprised, surprising	surprise
true	truth
various	variety
wide	width
windy	wind
wooden	wood
young	youth

3 Verbs and nouns with the same form

The words in **bold** are all in the units in the Elementary level in both noun and verb form.

answer	guide	record	use
brush	help	repair	visit
call	hope	reply	wash
cause	increase	request	work
change	interview	research	worry
chat	jump	rest	
circle	land	ride	
comment	laugh	ring	
control	look	score	
cook	love	search	
copy	matter	share	
cost	name	shave	
cough	need	smell	
cut	offer	smile	
dance	phone	snow	
download	plan	star	
dream	plant	start	
drink	post	stay	
email	promise	taste	
fall	queue	text	
guess	rain	tour	

4 Nouns, verbs and adjectives

Noun	Verb	Adjective(s)
death	die	dead
employment	employ	employed, unemployed
enjoyment	enjoy	enjoyable
excitement	excite	exciting, excited
help	help	helpful
interest	interest	interested, interesting
marriage	marry/get married	married
organization	organize	organized
pollution	pollute	polluted
sleep	sleep	asleep
speaking, speaker	speak	spoken
surprise	surprise	surprised, surprising
writing, writer	write	written
worry	worry	worried, worrying
reading, reader	read	reading

5 Verbs and adjectives

Verb	Adjective(s)
boil	boiled, boiling
bore	bored, boring
break	broken
clean	clean
close	closed
complete	complete
correct	correct
empty	empty
include	included, including
lose	lost
open	open
relax	relaxed, relaxing
shut	shut
sleep	asleep
speak	spoken
tidy	tidy
tire	tired, tiring
wake up	awake

Common irregular verbs

be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone/been
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left

lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake (up)	woke (up)	woken (up)
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Answer key

Unit 1

- 1 You can put these things in a bag: pencil, notice, CD player, coursebook, dictionary, piece of paper. You can't put these in a bag: desk, table, chair, noticeboard.

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 2 1 board pen | 4 exercise book |
| 2 coursebook | 5 piece of paper |
| 3 noticeboard | 6 CD player |

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 3 1 a whiteboard/board | 5 a noticeboard |
| 2 a dictionary | 6 a CD |
| 3 a desk/table | 7 a bag |
| 4 a notebook /
an exercise book | 8 a coursebook |

4 possible answers:

I've got a dictionary, a CD player, a desk and a pen.
I haven't got a noticeboard, a board, a board pen or a notice.

Unit 2

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1 1 indefinite | 5 pronouns |
| 2 noun | 6 verbs |
| 3 preposition | 7 adverbs |
| 4 an irregular | 8 past participle |

- | | |
|-----------|--|
| 2 1 I | 9 asked |
| 2 an | 10 This morning |
| 3 lesson | 11 class |
| 4 young | 12 think/'s |
| 5 from/in | 13 wrong |
| 6 a | 14 I/he |
| 7 quietly | 15 I think he's in the
wrong class. |
| 8 spoke | |

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 3 1 preposition | 6 indefinite article |
| 2 definite article | 7 adjective |
| 3 noun | 8 noun |
| 4 verb (past tense) | 9 pronoun |
| 5 preposition | 10 verb (past tense) |

Unit 3

- 1 1 third
2 Circle
3 sentence
4 small/little
5 possible answers:
wonderful/marvellous/great
6 mistake
7 thanks
8 false
9 is
10 yes
11 wrong
12 do

- 2 1 d 2 a 3 e 4 b

- 3 1 for example
2 yes/correct/right
3 informal
4 synonym
5 equals / is the same as
6 etcetera / and so on

- 4 1 etc.
2 missing
3 order
4 wrong
5 symbol; the same as
6 mistakes; corrects
7 test; cover
8 short form
9 match
10 informal
11 false
12 error
13 columns
14 underline
15 circle

Unit 4

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1 1 helped | 5 pronounce |
| 2 loud | 6 situation |
| 3 record | 7 use |
| 4 down | 8 things |

- 2 1 out loud
2 notebook; keep
3 meaning
4 use
5 situations

- 3 1 To practise the pronunciation. /
To practise how to pronounce them.
2 In a notebook.
3 To keep a record.
4 In English or your own language.
5 To help you to understand how to use
the word.
6 Think of situations where you can use the word.

- 4 1 f 2 g 3 a 4 d 5 b 6 e
- | | |
|------------|-------------------|
| 5 1 called | 5 wrong/not right |
| 2 like | 6 opposite |
| 3 How do | 7 does |
| 4 between | 8 explain |

6 possible answers:

- 1 What does this word mean?
2 How do you spell this word?
3 How do you say this in English?
4 Could you explain this word?
5 What's the opposite of this word?
6 What's this called in English?

Unit 5

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 1 e | 3 b | 5 a | 7 d |
| 2 i | 4 h | 6 f | 8 g |

2 explanation; description; guess;
instruction; invention; practice; education

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 3 1 repeat | 5 compared |
| 2 homework | 6 do; forgot |
| 3 guess | 7 made; up |
| 4 practise | 8 described |

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 4 1 text | 5 an essay |
| 2 paragraph | 6 context |
| 3 dialogue | 7 discussion |
| 4 activities | 8 simple |

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 5 1 revise | 5 dialogue |
| 2 looked; up | 6 activity |
| 3 conversation | 7 simple |
| 4 exercises | 8 essay |

6 possible answers, from Hungary:

- 1 Twice a day. I usually read the news in the morning and in the evening, or sometimes I read something for my English class.
- 2 Yes, because looking up words in a dictionary would take a long time.
- 3 Not very often - only when I am preparing for an exam.
- 4 Only before tests. I know I should do it more regularly but I don't have time for that.
- 5 Discussing things in groups in class, and watching videos or my favourite series outside class.
- 6 I like listening to dialogues several times. It helps me with pronunciation and understanding conversation in English. I think they help if I know a word already and hear it again.

Unit 6

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1 1 eight | 6 six |
| 2 twenty | 7 thirteen |
| 3 sixty-seven | 8 seventy-two |
| 4 fifty | 9 twenty-four |
| 5 thirty-five | 10 eighty-nine |

- 2 1 about/around a hundred euros
- 2 about/around ten lessons
- 3 about/around thirty years
- 4 about/around forty students
- 5 about/around fifty dollars
- 6 about/around eighty people
- 7 about/around seventy pounds
- 8 about/around twenty chairs

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 3 1 twenty-nine | 4 thirty-one |
| 2 seventy-seven | 5 twenty-four |
| 3 sixty-three | 6 forty-five |

- 5 1 two hundred
- 2 three hundred and forty
- 3 one thousand five hundred
- 4 two thousand six hundred and fifty
- 5 seven thousand
- 6 42,500

- 6 1 a/one thousand
- 2 five thousand and fifty-six
- 3 eleven thousand three hundred and one
- 4 a/one million
- 5 two thousand five hundred
- 6 three hundred and twenty-five thousand
- 7 a/one billion
- 8 two thousand

- 7 1 They said it was thousands of dollars.
- 2 It's about/around fifty minutes.
- 3 There are thousands (of them).
- 4 I bought about/around twenty books.
- 5 We want to grow hundreds of trees.
- 6 There are millions of people with this problem.

Unit 7

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------|
| 1 1 nine fifteen | 5 five fifty |
| 2 ten twenty-five | 6 seven twenty |
| 3 three thirty-five | 7 two thirty |
| 4 six forty-five | 8 four forty |

- 2 1 (a) quarter past seven
- 2 half past nine
- 3 twenty-five to twelve
- 4 ten to four
- 5 five to nine
- 6 three minutes past one
- 7 (a) quarter to three
- 8 seventeen minutes past four

- 3 1 At five past eight.
- 2 At eight forty-five/(a) quarter to nine.
- 3 At two minutes past nine.
- 4 At nine thirty-five/twenty-five to ten.
- 5 At ten past ten.

4 possible answers for England:

- 1 They usually open at 9.00 and they close at 5.00.
- 2 Supermarkets usually open at 8.00, and other shops usually open at 9.00 or 9.30. They usually close between 5.30 and 7.00.
- 3 Restaurants in England are often open all day from 12.00 p.m. to 10.00 p.m.
- 4 Most schools start at half past eight or nine o'clock and finish at three o'clock. Most people start work at 9 a.m. and finish at 5 p.m.
- 5 I have lunch at about 12.30.
- 6 I have dinner at around 7.00 p.m.

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|------|
| 5 1 S | 4 S | 7 S | 10 S |
| 2 D | 5 S | 8 D | 11 D |
| 3 S | 6 D | 9 S | 12 S |

- 6 1 just 6 at
2 almost/nearly 7 all
3 at 8 almost/nearly
4 midday/noon 9 just
5 in 10 all
- 7 1 at midday 6 at midnight
2 in the morning 7 at night
3 all day 8 almost/nearly 8.00
4 in the evening 9 just before
5 all evening

Unit 8

- 1 1 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday
2 spring, summer, autumn, winter
3 January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December
- 3 1 Tuesday 6 April
2 September 7 February
3 summer 8 winter
4 December 9 Thursday
5 Saturday 10 July
- 4 possible answers:
1 September.
2 I like spring because it's light and the trees and plants start to grow.
3 Friday, because it's nearly the weekend.
4 I go and see my family, and we have a big lunch together.
5 New Year's Day is a holiday. My family and I go for a long walk.
6 May 1st is a public holiday for people who work, and in March or April we have Easter Sunday.
- 5 1 third 6 sixteenth
2 twentieth 7 fourteenth
3 fifth 8 thirteenth
4 first 9 second
5 eighth
- 6 1 April the tenth/the tenth of April
2 March the fourth/the fourth of March
3 April the seventeenth/the seventeenth of April
4 March the twenty-first/the twenty-first of March
5 April the eleventh/the eleventh of April
6 April the sixth/the sixth of April
7 March the thirty-first/the thirty-first of March
8 April the twenty-third/the twenty-third of April
- 7 1 February the third/the third of February
2 July the fourth/the fourth of July
3 December the tenth/the tenth of December
4 August the twelfth/the twelfth of August
5 January the fifteenth/the fifteenth of January
6 twenty twenty-two/two thousand and twenty-two
7 May the twenty-first/the twenty-first of May

- 8 November the thirtieth/the thirtieth of November
9 April the twenty-second/the twenty-second of April
10 twenty fifteen/two thousand and fifteen
11 your answer
12 your answer

Unit 9

- 1 1 F - I got back six days ago.
2 T
3 F - I paid it two days ago.
4 T
5 F - I was in Moscow.
6 F - I'm going to the cinema this evening.
7 T
8 F - I'm seeing Scott in five days.
9 T
10 T
- 2 1 ago 4 this
2 diary 5 appointment
3 night 6 next
- 3 1 I went to the cinema
2 I had a meeting/I went to Wheeler's café
3 I stayed at Will's/I went to Will's
4 I've got a doctor's appointment
5 It's Callum's birthday
6 I'm seeing my parents/Mum and Dad for lunch
- 4 1 since 3 for 5 since
2 for 4 for 6 since
- 5 1 just 5 recently
2 while 6 yet
3 ever 7 ever
4 since 8 recently; for
- 6 1 yet 5 ever
2 already 6 yet
3 just 7 while
4 recently 8 since

Unit 10

- 1 Two: feet, ears, knees, shoulders, legs, hands, ankles, arms
- 2 1 shoulder
2 stomach
3 neck
4 bottom
5 blood
6 teeth
7 finger
- 3 1 skin 7 teeth
2 nose 8 chest
3 back 9 blood
4 chin 10 brain
5 face 11 bottom
6 head/hand 12 stomach

- | | |
|-------|------|
| 4 1 S | 6 D |
| 2 S | 7 S |
| 3 D | 8 D |
| 4 S | 9 D |
| 5 S | 10 S |
-
- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 5 1 arm | 4 neck |
| 2 bottom | 5 eyes/ears |
| 3 foot | 6 leg/knee |
-
- | | |
|---------------|----------|
| 6 1 eye | 8 skin |
| 2 toes | 9 leg |
| 3 finger | 10 blood |
| 4 bottom | 11 heart |
| 5 hair | 12 brain |
| 6 tooth/teeth | 13 bone |
| 7 waist | 14 body |

Unit 11

- 1 1 F - 'average height' means not tall and not short.
2 F - 'quite thin' means not very thin, but thinner than average.
3 T
4 T
5 F - the answer to 'How much does he weigh' is 60kg (for example).
6 T
7 F - 'average weight' means not heavy and not slim.
8 F - 'slim' is more positive than 'thin'.
9 T
10 F - 'height' describes how tall somebody is, 'weight' describes how heavy somebody is.
- 2 1 height 6 weighs
2 slim 7 short
3 fat 8 lost
4 quite 9 much
5 put on 10 quite
- 3 1 T
2 F - she's got blonde hair.
3 F - it's long.
4 F - the young man is handsome/good-looking.
5 T
6 F - The woman's got fair hair.
7 T
8 T
9 F - he's middle aged.
10 F - it's grey.
- 4 1 pretty 10 handsome
2 dark 11 grey
3 smile 12 blonde
4 features 13 beautiful
5 teenager 14 attractive
6 good-looking 15 teenage
7 straight 16 fair
8 beard 17 curly
9 middle-aged 18 good-looking

5 possible answers:

I'm a middle aged woman with short dark curly hair. I'm quite attractive.
I think all of the young people are attractive, but I don't like beards. The middle-aged man has a nice smile, but I think he's put on weight.

Unit 12

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 1 1 lie down | 5 sit down |
| 2 fall over | 6 get on |
| 3 ride | 7 run |
| 4 stand up | |
-
- 2 1 dance
2 sit down/lie down
3 fall over
4 ride
5 get on
 - 3 1 stand up 6 jumped
2 walk 7 rode
3 climb 8 ran; fell
4 dance 9 got off; on
5 lie down/sit down
 - 4 1 a door
2 a ball
3 a book
4 a person
5 a dictionary
6 a pencil
7 a bicycle
 - 5 1 pick up a cup 1; drop a cup 1
2 pick up a TV 2; turn on a TV 1
3 break a bottle 1; open a bottle 2
4 pull a person 2; carry a person 2
5 throw a ball 1; catch a ball 1 or 2
6 drop a ruler 1; break a ruler 2
7 carry a door 2; close a door 1
8 pick up a baby 2; hold a baby 2
 - 6 1 closed/shut
2 picked up; put it down
3 dropped
4 pulled; carried/pushed
5 gave; held
6 threw
7 carry

Unit 13

- 1 1 I need some personal information.
2 Where do you come from?
3 What do you do?
4 What is your postcode?
5 How old are you?
6 Where is the receptionist from?
- 2 1 Where do you come from?
2 Where in Poland exactly?
3 What do you do?
4 What's your address?
5 How old are you?

- 3 1 first
2 from
3 Whereabouts
4 What's
5 postcode
6 do
7 married
8 old

4 possible answers:

ABOUT YOU
Gomez.
Alicia.
I'm from Spain.
From Sevilla.
Yes, it's Gaspar Perez 27 Sta Clara, Sevilla.
41007.
I'm a history teacher.
Yes, I am.
I'm 34.

- 5 1 F - 'perfect' means so good it cannot be better.
2 T
3 F - 'improve' means become better.
4 T
5 F - a language course is a number of lessons.
Your language level is how good you are at the language.
6 T
7 F - 'how long?' means 'how much time?'
8 T

- 6 1 improving
2 level
3 can communicate very well
4 abroad
5 planning
6 great/wonderful
7 progress
8 help (people)

7 possible answers:

- 1 I'm elementary level.
2 It's difficult, and I can only understand a little.
3 Yes, I want to improve for my job, and my girlfriend is English.
4 Yes, slowly.
5 Yes, to England to visit my girlfriend's family.
6 Yes, I'd like a job in London to improve my English.

Unit 14

- 1 1 daughter 7 husband
2 nephew 8 grandmother
3 niece 9 uncle
4 sister-in-law 10 aunt
5 cousin 11 relatives
6 grandparents

2

MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE
father	mother	brother-in-law	sister-in-law
brother	sister	grandfather	grandmother
husband	wife	grandson	granddaughter
nephew	niece	cousin	cousin
relative	relative	parent	parent
son	daughter	uncle	aunt

3 your own answers

- 4 1 F - they are married.
2 T
3 F - he's older than Karen.
4 T
5 T
6 F - Luke is Amy's boyfriend.
7 F - there are 5 in Damon's family.
8 T
9 T
10 F - Luke is Damon's brother.
5 1 I was born in 2001.
2 We spend a lot of time together.
3 My girlfriend is older than me.
4 There are six of us in my family.
5 I am the youngest in my family.
6 I've got an older brother and a younger sister.
OR an older sister and a younger brother.

6 possible answers:

- 1 There are five of us.
2 1999.
3 I've got two sisters: one is three years older than me, and the other is two years younger than me.
4 I spend a lot of time with my younger sister because she goes out with my best friend, Ben.
5 No, my older sister is married and lives with her husband.

Unit 15

- 1 1 nice 5 friendly
2 funny 6 patient
3 clever 8 laugh
4 strange 9 relaxed
2 1 unfriendly 5 funny
2 intelligent 6 patient
3 stupid 7 relaxed
4 clever/intelligent

- 3 1 laugh
2 like; fun; strange
3 What; kind; clever/intelligent

4 possible answers:

My mother is very kind.
My cousin Lucia is very friendly.
My teacher Mrs Amato is very patient with me.
Dino, my boyfriend, is good fun.
My friend Alicia is very intelligent.
Mr Fideo, my neighbour upstairs, is quite strange.

- 5 1 D 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 S

- 6 1 T
2 F - they're completely different.
3 T
4 T
5 F - Sophie's quite lazy.
6 T
7 F - she's tidy.
8 F - it didn't matter.

- 7 1 own
2 life
3 share
4 matter
5 competely/really
6 other

8 possible answers:

- 1 I'm very tidy, but my wife is really untidy.
2 I'm hard-working some of the time!
3 Yes, I'm really quiet. I don't like a lot of noise.
4 No, I'm not very serious.
5 Yes, I've got a lot of friends and I go out quite often.
6 No, I don't.

Unit 16

- 1 get to know somebody, ex-boyfriend, get married, go out with somebody, have a baby, romantic relationship
2 1 They had a baby last year.
2 They separated in January.
3 We have a very good relationship.
4 How did you get to know your boyfriend?/
How did your boyfriend get to know you?
5 They were together for three years.
6 I went out with him for six months.
3 1 got; wife
2 got; together
3 couple
4 out; separated
5 ex-
6 divorced; partner/girlfriend; get
4 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S

- 5 1 advice
2 each
3 old; known
4 get
5 met
6 known; see
7 meeting
8 flatmate; best, personalities

6 possible answers:

- 1 A man called Noah.
2 About 20 years.
3 At work.
4 About once a week, because we don't work together now.
5 He's good fun and we laugh at the same things.
6 Yes, he gives me good advice if I have a problem. I'm not as good at giving advice as he is.

Unit 17

- 1 1 angry 4 scared 7 afraid
2 worried 5 embarrassed 8 surprised
3 bored 6 unhappy 9 excited
2 1 emotions 4 scared
2 bored 5 in love
3 sad 6 embarrassed

- 3 1 worried
2 surprised
3 excited
4 felt; embarrassed
5 happy
6 bored
7 afraid/scared
8 love
9 emotions/feelings

- 4 1 upset
2 nervous
3 thirsty
4 hungry
5 in pain
6 pleased
7 sorry

- 5 1 nervous 5 argument; argue
2 tired 6 sorry
3 pleased 7 thirsty
4 pain 8 upset; crying

6 possible answers:

- 1 I felt tired when I got up this morning.
2 I felt nervous before my exam last week.
3 I felt hungry an hour ago.
4 I felt thirsty during the night.
5 I argued with my boyfriend on Saturday.
6 I was in pain last week when I fell over.
7 I cried a couple of weeks ago when I saw a very sad film.
8 I felt pleased when I finished work on Friday afternoon.

Unit 18

- 1 1 2020 6 midnight
2 Friday 7 the-autumn
3 April 8 winter
4 the-morning 9 lunchtime
5 4:00 10 the-evening
- 2 1 at 3 in 5 On 7 in 9 At
2 at 4 in 6 in 8 at 10 on

3 possible answers:

I get up **at** seven o'clock.
I study English **on** Tuesday and Thursday evenings.
I go swimming **in** the summer.
I usually go out with friends **at** the weekend.
I watch TV **in** the evenings.
I go to bed **at** about eleven o'clock.
My birthday is **on** 6th June.
I was born **in** 1997.
We have public holidays **on** Christmas Day, **on** New Year's Day, **on** May Day (in early May), and several other days.

Unit 19

- 1 1 trees
2 motorway
3 river
4 shop
5 church
6 gate
7 mountain
8 field
9 building
- 2 1 under 4 towards 7 out of
2 into 5 past 8 down
3 up 6 through 9 across

- 3 1 across/over/under
2 across/over
3 through
4 along
5 past

4 your own answers

Unit 20

- 1 1 in 8 on
2 on 9 on
3 at 10 in
4 in 11 on
5 in 12 at
6 on 13 on
7 in 14 at
- 2 1 in 5 on
2 in 6 in
3 on 7 at
4 on 8 at; at; in

3 possible answers:

- 1 I live in a town.
2 I live in a house.
3 Yes, it's the River Ebro.
4 My bedroom is on the first floor.
5 I've got lots of pictures and lights on the wall.
6 Yes, I do.
7 Yes, but not often.
8 At school.

4 1 T

- 2 T
3 T
4 F - the people are in front of the garage.
5 T
6 F - the gate is between the house and the garage.
7 F - the children are in front of Mum and Dad.
8 T
9 T
10 T

- 5 1 next to 5 near
2 in front of 6 in front of
3 in front of 7 next to
4 between 8 behind

6 possible answers:

- 1 There's another house.
2 There's a garden and a hill.
3 Another house.
4 No, there aren't.
5 My parents' bedroom.
6 The dining room.
7 A bathroom.
8 Yes, a tree.

Unit 21

- 1 1 night
2 pencil
3 book
4 apple
5 milk
6 sky
7 mountain
- 2 1 at the top
2 at the back
3 at the bottom
4 At first
5 at the front
6 at the end
7 in the middle
8 in the end
9 on the other side
10 At the start/beginning
11 At first; In the end

- 3 AT: least, the same time, the time, the moment
ON: holiday, time, the phone
IN: fact, prison, hospital

- 4 1 at the same time
2 on holiday
3 at the moment
4 in hospital
5 At least
6 on time
7 at school/university

- 5 1 at the time 5 in prison
2 in hospital 6 in fact/actually
3 at least 7 at university
4 by the end of 8 on his phone

Unit 22

- 1 1 good at
2 I agree.
3 depends on
4 bored with
5 Do you ask your parents for money?
6 care about
7 live with
8 interested in speaking

- 2 1 thank; present/gift 4 spent
2 cares 5 interested
3 depends 6 ask

- 3 1 with 4 for 7 at
2 for 5 on 8 with
3 in 6 about 9 with

4 possible answers:

I live with my wife.

I sometimes ask my parents for advice, but I don't think I depend on them.

No, I never ask them for money.

Yes, I usually agree with them.

No, I don't spend much on clothes.

I don't really care about making money, but I would quite like a bit more.

I almost always thank people for presents.

I'm interested in sailing, photography and going to the theatre.

I'm quite good at photography, and I'm good at my job.

I get bored with things like housework.

- 5 1 f 2 a 3 e 4 b 5 g 6 d

- 6 1 at 4 about 7 about
2 for 5 on 8 of
3 for 6 for 9 of

- 7 1 based 3 pay 5 applied
2 heard 4 noticed 6 think

8 possible answers:

Yes, I listen to the radio when I have my breakfast.

No, that's not true. I don't like social media.

No, that's not true. I usually notice what people are wearing.

Yes, I like films based on true stories.

I like furniture made of wood very much.

I don't like waiting for buses. I don't take taxis, so I don't pay for them.

I applied for a job in the summer and I got it.

I think about the future a lot, more than the past.

Unit 23

- 1 1 D 3 D 5 S
2 S 4 D 6 D

- 2 1 get up
2 have a shower
3 get dressed
4 I arrive at
5 I finish/leave work
6 I have/eat dinner
7 go to bed
8 usually sleep
9 daily routine is

- 3 1 get 5 arrive at/get to
2 have 6 dinner
3 have/eat 7 go
4 leave 8 sleep

4 possible answers:

1 I get dressed before I have breakfast.

2 Yes, before breakfast.

3 In the kitchen.

4 I leave home at about 7.15.

5 I get to work at 8.00.

6 I have dinner with my husband.

7 I go to bed at about 11.30.

8 I sleep for about six or seven hours a night.

- 5 1 Do you often do the shopping?
2 He is never late for school.
3 We sometimes get up early and play tennis.
4 Do you always go shopping at the weekend?
5 Martha often goes out during the week.
6 I see my sister once or twice a week.

- 6 1 stay 4 go 7 during
2 go 5 do 8 once
3 play 6 at 9 twice

7 possible answers:

1 F - I **sometimes** play tennis in the summer, but in the winter too.

2 F - In my family, I **often** do the shopping, or my sister does.

3 F - I **never** go for a long walk during the week.

4 F - I **often** play video games at the weekend.

5 F - I **often** have dinner with my family.

6 F - **At the weekend**, I go out a lot.

7 T

8 F - I **sometimes** go shopping with a friend.

Unit 24

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1 1 jacket | 8 pocket |
| 2 trousers | 9 jeans |
| 3 jumper | 10 tie |
| 4 button | 11 shirt |
| 5 coat | 12 skirt |
| 6 T-shirt | 13 shorts |
| 7 dress | 14 sweater |

- 2 1 Megan
2 Enzo
3 Osman
4 Milla
5 Megan
6 Enzo
7 Milla
8 Osman
9 Milla, Enzo and Megan
10 Kim
11 Enzo and Osman
12 Milla, Osman, Kim, Megan
13 Enzo and Megan
14 no

- 3 **WHOLE BODY:** suit, dress, coat, uniform
ABOVE THE WAIST: top, tie, T-shirt, shirt, jumper
BELOW THE WAIST: trousers, skirt, shorts, jeans

- 4 1 skirts; dresses
2 put your coat on
3 trousers; jeans
4 hot
5 a uniform
6 an item of clothing

- | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|
| 5 1 D | 4 S | 7 D |
| 2 S | 5 D | 8 D |
| 3 D | 6 S | 9 D |

6 *possible answers:*

- I'm wearing a blue T-shirt, a pair of jeans and a jacket.
- It was Sunday, so I wore a dress. I also put my coat on when I went out.
- I wear jeans and sweaters a lot at the weekends, but if I'm going out, I often wear a skirt and top, or a dress.
- I don't go to parties very often, but I usually wear a dress.
- Yes. I worked in a restaurant when I was younger and I wore a uniform. I didn't like it!

Unit 25

- 1 1 T
2 F - glasses are made of glass, plastic or metal.
3 T
4 F - you can carry an umbrella.
5 T
6 T
7 T
8 F - people usually wear one scarf.

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 2 1 socks | 6 glasses |
| 2 hat | 7 scarf |
| 3 ring | 8 watch |
| 4 boots/socks | 9 umbrella |
| 5 tights/socks | 10 handbag |

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 3 1 S | 3 S | 5 S | 7 D |
| 2 D | 4 D | 6 S | 8 S |

- 4 1 Give me the sock.
2 not possible
3 I've got one pair of trainers.
4 Where's my glove?

- 5 a gold necklace; a watch; a pair of leather boots; a pair of trainers; a pair of gloves; a leather belt; a pair of tights; a plastic ring

6 *possible answers:*

- I always wear a watch, a ring and a necklace.
- I never wear socks or a hat.
- Yes, I wear them a lot.
- I wear glasses for reading and I often wear sunglasses when I'm driving.
- I wear jewellery every day and I always wear a watch, but I take it off when I go to bed. I never wear a hat. I sometimes wear a scarf in the winter.

Unit 26

- 1 red, green, pink, purple, orange, grey, dark blue, cream, brown, light blue, black, yellow, white

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-----------|
| 2 1 purple | 4 pink | 7 brown |
| 2 light blue | 5 grey | 8 cream |
| 3 green | 6 dark blue | 9 colours |

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 3 1 uncomfortable | 4 long |
| 2 expensive | 5 cheap |
| 3 small | 6 comfortable |

- 4 1 a short blue skirt
2 comfortable brown shoes
3 a large orange handbag
4 a long red skirt
5 uncomfortable red shoes
6 an expensive purple tie
7 a small green handbag

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 5 1 S | 3 D | 5 S | 7 D |
| 2 S | 4 D | 6 S | 8 S |

- 6 1 take/am/'m
2 style
3 wrong
4 take
5 fit; too
6 look/are
7 size; too
8 great/lovely/nice; great/lovely/nice
9 fit; too
10 right
11 appearance

Unit 27

1 1 T

2 F - the total is £60.

3 F - you have got enough.

4 T

5 F - they cost the same.

6 T

7 T

- | | |
|---------------|-----------|
| 2 1 cash | 6 -dollar |
| 2 purse | 7 dollars |
| 3 credit card | 8 total |
| 4 coins | 9 enough |
| 5 cost | 10 each |

3 possible answers:

- Yes, I usually have about €80. I need it because I often buy food when I'm out.
- I keep it in my purse. Sometimes I just have money in my pocket.
- Yes, I have enough for a coffee and a book, but not jewellery.
- If I'm not buying many things, I pay in cash, but if I buy a lot, I pay by debit card.

- | | |
|-----------|----------|
| 4 1 price | 6 online |
| 2 spend | 7 earn |
| 3 saved | 8 sold |
| 4 won | 9 bill |
| 5 price | 10 off |

- | | | |
|------------|----------|--------|
| 5 1 bought | 3 sold | 5 won |
| 2 spent | 4 earned | 6 paid |

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 6 1 online | 5 sale |
| 2 bills | 6 earn/spend |
| 3 free | 7 products |
| 4 price | 8 prize |

7 possible answers:

- Yes, I sometimes buy books online.
- No, I don't. I usually use my debit card.
- It's usually free, yes.
- It's about £1.
- No, I don't like sales very much.
- No, in general they earn less than men.
- They buy DVDs and books, I think.
- Yes, I won a prize at school - it was an art book.

Unit 28

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1 1 chemist's | 5 medicine |
| 2 pharmacy | 6 clothes shop |
| 3 department store | 7 present |
| 4 shopping centre | 8 electrical store |

2 bookshop, department store, clothes shop, pharmacy, supermarket, electrical store, furniture shop, everything, medicine, except

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| 3 1 toyshop | 4 fruit and vegetable shop |
| 2 gift shop | 5 music shop |
| 3 furniture shop | 6 chemist's |

- | |
|---|
| 4 1 baker's/supermarket |
| 2 toy shop/department store/shopping centre/gift shop |
| 3 gift shop/department store/shopping centre/music shop |
| 4 music shop/shopping centre |
| 5 chemist's/pharmacy/supermarket |
| 6 shoe shop/department store |
| 7 furniture shop/department store |
| 8 clothes shop/department store |
| 9 electrical store/shopping centre/department store |

- | |
|-------------------|
| 5 1 two things |
| 2 to |
| 3 the shoes on |
| 4 of two things |
| 5 personal |
| 6 online |
| 7 DVD |
| 8 the price |
| 9 somebody's face |

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 6 1 d | 3 h | 5 e | 7 c |
| 2 a | 4 g | 6 b | |

- | | |
|--------------|-----------|
| 7 1 prefer | 5 try; on |
| 2 choose | 6 online |
| 3 service | 7 sales |
| 4 particular | 8 touch |

8 possible answers:

- I like both of them, but I prefer small shops for meat and fish.
- No, it's difficult to choose. I often make mistakes.
- Yes, it is.
- I prefer comfortable shoes.
- No, sometimes I buy clothes online and try them on at home. I can always send them back.
- I prefer to go to the shops, but sometimes it's easier and cheaper online.
- The sales are usually in January, and also in the summer.
- Yes, I like to touch clothes.

Unit 29

- | |
|--------------|
| 1 1 recipe |
| 2 memory |
| 3 diary |
| 4 camera |
| 5 possession |

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 2 1 camera | 5 voice |
| 2 recipes | 6 diary |
| 3 possessions | 7 recordings |
| 4 gun | 8 memory |

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 3 1 any more | 5 gun |
| 2 tool | 6 voice |
| 3 recipe | 7 belongs |
| 4 memories | 8 possessions |

4 possible answers:

- 1 I've got some very old books that belonged to my grandfather, and my father's watch.
- 2 Yes, I really enjoyed school. I had a lot of friends, and the teachers were very good.
- 3 I use the camera on my mobile phone because I always have it with me.
- 4 I've got a recording of my mother and sister on my phone. They're singing and laughing.

5 1 F - Clothes are made of material.

- 2 T
- 3 T
- 4 F - an alarm clock is usually made of plastic or metal.
- 5 T
- 6 T
- 7 F - if something is unusual, you don't see it often, or it doesn't happen often.
- 8 F - an electric fan is useful if it's very hot.
- 9 T

6 1 I use my mobile as an **alarm** clock in the mornings.

- 2 My desk is made of **wood** and is very old.
- 3 What **shape** is the table? ~ I think it's round.
- 4 He's got a very **unusual** alarm clock - it's made of wood.
- 5 The garden chairs are made of white **plastic** and they're very hard.
- 6 A computer is made of **metal** and plastic.
- 7 What do you call the **device** that turns the TV on and off?

7 possible answers:

- 1 My dining room table is round.
- 2 No, I use a real alarm clock.
- 3 My desk is made of wood, and the computer, keyboard and printer are plastic and metal. There are some pencils made of wood too. And the lamp is made of plastic, I think.
- 4 Yes, I've got a digital TV.
- 5 I use an electric fan in the summer.

Unit 30

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 1 S | 3 S | 5 D | 7 S |
| 2 D | 4 D | 6 S | 8 D |

- | | |
|--------|-------|
| 2 1 No | 5 No |
| 2 Yes | 6 Yes |
| 3 Yes | 7 No |
| 4 Yes | 8 No |

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 3 1 found/discovered | 5 killed |
| 2 area/part | 6 crimes |
| 3 named | 7 series/number |
| 4 attacked | 8 alive |

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 4 1 D | 3 D | 5 D | 7 D |
| 2 S | 4 D | 6 S | 8 S |

- | | |
|--------------|-----------|
| 5 1 find | 4 think |
| 2 team/group | 5 people |
| 3 important | 6 happens |

- 6 1 late
- 2 statement
- 3 danger
- 4 searching

- 5 major
- 6 believe
- 7 happen
- 8 public

Unit 31

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1 1 What's | 8 feel |
| 2 's got | 9 feel |
| 3 feel | 10 a common |
| 4 've got | 11 's |
| 5 a headache | 12 flu |
| 6 Has | 13 haven't got |
| 7 healthy | 14 Has he got |

- 2 1 cough; unhealthy
- 2 temperature
- 3 matter; well; toothache
- 4 stomach ache
- 5 sick
- 6 flu
- 7 health
- 8 illness; common
- 9 cold

- 3 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 D

- 4 1 F - If you get better, you feel less ill.
- 2 F - A couple of weeks is about 2 weeks.
- 3 T
- 4 F - If you don't sleep for a week, you feel weak.
- 5 T
- 6 T
- 7 F - You should keep warm if you have flu.
- 8 F - If you stay in bed, you don't get up.
- 9 T
- 10 T

- 5 1 stayed
- 2 couple
- 3 get better/improve
- 4 advice
- 5 tablets/pills
- 6 should
- 7 chemist's/pharmacy
- 8 rest
- 9 keep
- 10 getting
- 11 weak

Unit 32

- 1 1 hurts/hurt (present or past both possible)
- 2 cut
- 3 accident
- 4 broken
- 5 drugs
- 6 injury
- 7 pain
- 8 cut
- 9 serious

- 2 1 She had a pain in her arm.
2 He had a serious injury.
3 I hit my head on the door.
4 I knocked my head on the wall.
5 I burnt my mouth on the hot soup.
6 She cut her foot on the broken glass.
7 My arm hurts a lot.
8 The doctor gave me some drugs for the pain.
9 I broke / have broken a bone in my ankle.

- 3 1 broken
2 drugs
3 pain(s)
4 your
5 burnt/cut

4 possible answers:

- 1 I broke my arm when I was 10. I fell over at the swimming pool.
2 No, I haven't.
3 Sometimes, if I work at the computer for too long.
4 Last week. I cut my finger when I was cutting vegetables.
5 Yes, I often burn my hands and fingers in the kitchen, but nothing serious.

Unit 33

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------|-------|------|
| 1 1 S | 3 D | 5 D | 7 S |
| 2 D | 4 S | 6 D | 8 D |
| 2 1 Yes | 3 Yes | 5 No | 7 No |
| 2 No | 4 No | 6 Yes | 8 No |
| 3 1 anywhere | 5 nowhere | | |
| 2 nowhere | 6 somewhere | | |
| 3 somewhere | 7 anywhere | | |
| 4 everywhere | 8 somewhere | | |
| 4 1 2,000 | | | |
| 2 the Sahara Desert | | | |
| 3 two billion years old | | | |
| 4 the Pacific Ocean | | | |
| 5 Siberia, in Russia | | | |
| 6 Yes, a few places. | | | |

Unit 34

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| 1 1 <u>government</u> | |
| 2 <u>disaster</u> | |
| 3 <u>environment</u> | |
| 4 <u>disappear</u> | |
| 5 <u>destroy</u> | |
| 2 1 increasing | 4 build |
| 2 disappearing | 5 destroying |
| 3 government | 6 land |
| 3 1 increases | 5 environment |
| 2 government | 6 disappears |
| 3 disaster | 7 destroy |
| 4 land | 8 extreme |

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 4 1 recycle | 5 petrol |
| 2 energy | 6 electricity |
| 3 gas | 7 develop |
| 4 coal | 8 cause |

- 5 1 F - Pollution is a bad thing.
2 T
3 T
4 T
5 F - You can't see gas.
6 T
7 F - If you develop something, you make it.
8 T
9 F - Pollution is bad for fish and animals.
10 T

- 6 1 f 2 d 3 g 4 a 5 c 6 b

7 possible answers:

- 1 We use gas and electricity.
2 Electricity is more expensive - about double the cost of gas. I think coal is cheap, but people don't use it a lot now.
3 Yes, it's very bad in the centre of the city.
4 It's the buses, cars and lorries, and some industry too.
5 Yes, I recycle bottles, paper, cardboard and plastic every week.

Unit 35

- | | |
|---|-------------------|
| 1 1 <u>Chinese</u> | 5 <u>Japanese</u> |
| 2 <u>Hungarian</u> | 6 <u>Canadian</u> |
| 3 <u>German</u> | 7 <u>Korean</u> |
| 4 <u>Italian</u> | 8 <u>Egyptian</u> |
| 2 1 T | |
| 2 T | |
| 3 F - They speak Thai. | |
| 4 T | |
| 5 F - They speak English. | |
| 6 T | |
| 7 T | |
| 8 F - They speak French, Italian or German. | |
| 3 1 Britain | |
| 2 Europe | |
| 3 Central/Latin | |
| 4 continent | |
| 5 South/Latin | |
| 6 Africa/Asia | |
| 7 the Middle East | |
| 8 Asia | |
| 9 continent | |
| 4 1 Italy, C | 9 Brazil, C |
| 2 Hungary, C | 10 Turkey, C |
| 3 Mexico, C | 11 Greek, N |
| 4 Swiss, N | 12 French, N |
| 5 China, C | 13 Germany, C |
| 6 Czech, N | 14 Russia C |
| 7 Egypt, C | 15 Argentinian, N |
| 8 Spanish, N | 16 Portugal, C |

- 5 1 Poland 7 Korean
2 Brazilian 8 Turkish
3 Russia 9 Italian
4 Russian 10 Chinese
5 Polish 11 Spain
6 Japanese 12 Australian
- 6 -ian: Argentinian, Australian, Brazilian, Canadian, Egyptian, Hungarian, Indian, Russian
-ish: British, Polish, Spanish, Turkish
-an: American, German, Korean, Mexican
-ese: Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese
- 7 your own answers

Unit 36

- 1 1 river 7 Ocean, east
2 mountain 8 major
3 coast 9 north
4 high 10 enormous
5 long 11 popular
6 border
- 2 1 famous 5 ocean
2 huge 6 long; long
3 west 7 beach
4 north 8 popular
- 3 possible answers about Britain (England, Scotland and Wales):
1 London, in the south of England/Britain.
2 Manchester, Liverpool, Birmingham, Edinburgh, Glasgow and Cardiff.
3 No.
4 The River Severn, in south-west England (290 kilometres).
5 Ben Nevis, in Scotland.
6 Trafalgar Square, Buckingham Palace, The Tower of London, Edinburgh Castle, The Lake District, Stonehenge, etc.
- 4 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S
- 5 SIZE: a small village, a large city, a small town
LOCATION: on the coast, south-west of the capital, on the River Duero
POPULATION: over two million, just under 50,000, about 3,000
INTERESTING FACTS: famous for its modern buildings, mobile phone industry, a warm climate, city full of culture
- 6 1 of 5 population
2 in 6 industry
3 of 7 ancient
4 on 8 climate
- 7 possible answer:
Bath is a medium-sized town, 170 km west of London, in the south-west of England. It's on the River Avon. It has a population of just under 100,000. It is a famous tourist city in England, with lots of ancient buildings, including the Roman Baths and many museums. It is cool and wet in winter and quite warm in summer.

Unit 37

- 1 1 c 4 j 7 a
2 i 5 b 8 f
3 h 6 e 9 g
- 2 1 raining 5 weather
2 sunny/bright 6 cloudy
3 snows 7 icy
4 windy 8 blowing
- 3 1 a bit 5 a bit
2 a lot of 6 a lot
3 a lot 7 a bit
4 a bit of 8 a lot of
- 4 1 showers 4 minutes
2 Suddenly 5 strong
3 clear 6 changes
- 5 1 There was heavy rain last night.
2 The weather in Spain is better than here.
3 There was a shower in the afternoon.
4 The weather changes every day.
5 It's dry today.
6 We had a storm.
7 There are clear skies.
8 It snows all the time in winter.
- 6 possible answers, from India:
1 Not, really! We get some rain occasionally in spring.
2 We get snowfall only in a few parts of the country, up in the hill stations.
3 We have horrible hot and dusty summers!
4 Yes, most parts of my country have dry winters, however it rains in the southern parts!
5 No, we don't have heavy rains in spring unless they are hail storms.
6 Yes, some parts of the country get strong winds and in fact dust storms in summers. Some parts get strong winds during monsoons!

Unit 38

- 1 whale, elephant, bear, lion, sheep, monkey, cat, mouse, fly
- 2 PETS: dog, cat
FARM ANIMALS: horse, pig, cow
INSECTS: bee, fly
WILD ANIMALS: elephant, tiger, lion, bear
- 3 1 most 5 hair
2 lion 6 tiger
3 whale 7 wild
4 son
- 4 (Other answers may be possible.)
1 people 6 mice
2 horses/elephants 7 farms
3 sea 8 zoo
4 insects 9 wings
5 fly

- 5 1 pets 5 insect
2 farmer; farm 6 zoo
3 wild 7 wings
4 both 8 both

- 6 1 **four legs:** lion, tiger, elephant, horse, sheep, cow, pig, cat, dog, mouse, bear (but some people say 2)
2 **two legs:** bird, monkey, bear (but some people say 4)
3 **six legs:** bee, fly
4 **no legs:** snake, whale

7 possible answers, from the Czech Republic:

- 1 Yes, I have a cat.
2 Yes, in the zoo, and also in a forest.
3 I'm afraid of spiders.
4 Cows, pigs, sheep, hens and goats.
5 Probably. I like going to zoos.
6 No.

Unit 39

- 1 1 taught 8 drove
2 put 9 spoke
3 let 10 held
4 brought 11 spelt/spelled
5 bought 12 rang
6 sang 13 sat
7 spent 14 burnt

- 2 1 swam; began 4 sent; built
2 wrote; drove 5 put; cut
3 bought; thought 6 got; fell

3 possible answers:

- 1 I swam a kilometre.
2 He forgot my homework.
3 She sent the letter to the lawyer.
4 He lent me his bike.
5 She put them in the cupboard.
6 He fell on the stairs.
7 She lost 100 euros.
8 They ran three kilometres.

- 4 1 swam 7 cost
2 caught 8 came/got
3 rode; rode 9 rang
4 cut/broke/burnt; hurt 10 bought
5 drove 11 began
6 wrote/sent 12 woke (up)

- 5 1 driven 5 spoken
2 ridden 6 hit/hurt
3 cut 7 broken
4 won/lost/spent 8 fallen

possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I drove my brother's car last summer. I was quite scared.
2 No, I haven't.
3 Yes, I cut my hair very badly when I was a child.
4 Yes, I have. I spent a large sum of money to buy a house.
5 No, I haven't.
6 No, I haven't.
7 Yes, I have. I broke my arm last year.
8 Yes, I have. I fell from a tree when I was six years old.

Unit 40

- 1 1 She's got blue eyes.
2 They've got a small dog.
3 I haven't got a smartphone.
4 He hasn't got any money.
5 Have you got any sisters?
6 Has she got a flat in town?
7 They haven't got a shop now.
8 Have they got a big office?

- 2 1 Has she got any children?
2 They've got a lovely garden.
3 Has she got long hair?
4 My sister hasn't got/doesn't have a boyfriend.
5 Have you got a computer?/Do you have a computer?
6 We haven't got any friends here./We don't have any friends here.

- 3 1 got 4 Do
2 Do 5 Have
3 Have 6 Do

4 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I have. I use it to go to college.
2 Yes, I do. It's an Apple.
3 Yes, they have. His name's Barney.
4 No, they don't.
5 Yes, I've got the Oxford Essential Dictionary.
6 Yes, I do. I've got an American friend, and a German friend who speaks excellent English.

5	GROUP 1	GROUP 2	GROUP 3	GROUP 4	GROUP 5
	rest	breakfast	bath	swim	holiday
	break	lunch	shower	run	weekend
		dinner	wash	walk	journey

- 6 1 walk/look 4 swim
2 drink 5 rest
3 dinner 6 journey
7 1 eat 5 time/day
2 walk/run 6 weekend
3 break 7 holiday/time
4 look/walk 8 bath

Unit 41

- 1 1 What does his wife do?
2 His company makes software programs./
His software company makes programs.
3 Why does English make you tired?
4 I want to do Spanish at school next year./
Next year I want to do Spanish at school.
5 Is this jumper made of wool?
6 What did you do last night?
- 2 1 made 5 made
2 do 6 made
3 do 7 do
4 makes 8 make
- 3 possible answers:
1 Cars and pianos are made in the UK.
2 I make little bags for friends.
3 Music makes me cry, and sometimes films as well.
4 I did maths, English, French, German, History, Geography, Chemistry, Physics, Biology and PE.
5 I'll probably watch TV after dinner.
6 I went shopping, saw an exhibition at an art gallery, and had dinner in a restaurant with friends.

4 your own answers

- 5 1 done 5 did
2 do 6 made
3 make 7 make
4 made 8 make
- 6 1 e 2 f 3 b 4 a 5 c
- 7 1 make 5 do
2 make 6 make
3 make 7 do
4 do

8 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, always.
2 Yes, usually when I'm speaking.
3 No, they're very quiet.
4 Not a lot.
5 Yes, very often.
6 No, not really, but I don't want to be poor.
7 No, not always. It depends how important something is.

Unit 42

- 1 1 Did you get my message?
2 He gets angry if you're late.
3 We got home late last night.
4 It's getting cold.
5 I got three letters today.
6 Where did you get that bag?
7 He needs to get a job.
8 Do you want to get a/the train?

- 2 1 receive 5 receive
2 become 6 buy
3 arrive 7 be given
4 become 8 travel

3 possible answers:

- 1 getting cold
2 get here/home/back
3 get them
4 get a/the bus
5 get one
6 get it.
7 getting late.
8 get a bus/taxi
9 got a good mark/grade
10 get every day/week

4 possible answers:

- 1 I get the bus every day.
2 It doesn't get very cold in my country.
3 I get around/about 10 texts every day.
4 I got a new skirt.
5 You can get information about my town from the internet.

Unit 43

- 1 1 1 3 4 5 5 7 4
2 2 4 3 6 1 8 5
- 2 1 see 5 watch
2 watch 6 see
3 see/watch 7 saw
4 see 8 saw/watched

- 3 1 see 5 see
2 watch 6 see
3 see/watch 7 see
4 saw/watched

4 possible answers:

- 1 No, I can't see very well without glasses because my eyes are bad. When I'm driving, I have to wear them.
2 Yes, I watch him often - it's lovely to watch him.
3 I always watch the news and sports.
4 I saw a programme yesterday about Iran - it was very interesting.
5 I see her every week.
6 I see them every day.
7 Yes, it's difficult because it has a lot of meanings.

Unit 44

- 1 1 control 4 cause
2 promise 5 copy
3 over
- 2 1 H 2 M 3 H 4 Hand M 5 H 6 M
- 3 1 cost 6 surprise
2 fighting 7 smell
3 control 8 dreaming
4 promised 9 caused
5 chat 10 sleep

- 4 1 I had a dream about you.
2 Did he make a comment on the report?
3 She made a promise to help me.
4 Does this soap have a nice smell?
5 They gave him a surprise.
6 I must send/write a reply to Jilly's letter. / I must send/write Jilly a reply.
7 Did you give Mo a call?
8 I had a look at her newspaper.
9 Could you make a copy of this?
10 He gave me a smile this morning.

5 possible answers:

- 1 I sometimes dream about people in my family who I don't see very often. It's strange.
2 Travelling by train costs a lot of money in the UK.
3 Some cheese has a very strong smell. And my dog has a strong smell too, but I don't mind it!
4 The fact that people are extremely rich or extremely poor causes a lot of problems.
5 It surprises me that people have such different ideas about politics.
6 The world can't control the internet. It's very good in some ways, but dangerous in others.

Unit 45

- 1 1 ✓
2 ✓
3 butter/some butter
4 ✓
5 bread/some bread
6 ✓
7 olive oil/some olive oil
8 rice/some rice
9 jam/some jam
10 ✓
11 cheese/some cheese/a piece of cheese
- 2 1 pasta 5 pasta
2 cheese 6 chocolates
3 cake 7 Butter
4 rice 8 biscuits

3 your own answers

- 4 1 a 3 b 5 e
2 g 4 c 6 f

- 5 1 Could I have twelve eggs, please?
2 Do you need a bag?
3 Have you got any French cheese?
4 How much pasta do you need?
5 That's just over half a kilo.
6 How many oranges do you need?

- 6 1 got; many
2 have; much; grams; all
3 Could/Can; just; That's;
4 ready; need

Unit 46

- 1 grapes, lemon, nuts, strawberries, pineapple, pear, orange, peach, apple
- 2 1 oranges
2 lemons
3 peaches
4 pineapples
5 bananas
6 nuts
- 3 1 Bananas
2 Oranges
3 Pineapples
4 Nuts
5 Sweet
6 Grapes
7 Strawberries
8 Peaches
9 Fruit

4 your own answers

- 5 1 peas 7 beans
2 onion 8 cucumber
3 pepper 9 mushroom
4 potato 10 tomato
5 cabbage 11 garlic
6 lettuce 12 carrot

- 6 1 T 6 T
2 T 7 T
3 F 8 F
4 T 9 F
5 F 10 T

7 possible answers (for Britain):

cabbage: Yes, but not much.
mushrooms: Yes, a lot.
red peppers: Yes, but not much.
fresh tomatoes: Yes, a lot.
frozen peas: Yes, a lot.
cooked onions: Yes, a lot.
fresh cucumber: Yes, a lot.
lettuce: Yes, a lot.
frozen carrots: Yes, but not much.
beans: Yes, a lot.
cold potatoes: Yes, but not much.
garlic: Yes, but not much.

Unit 47

- 1 1 F - They don't eat meat or fish.
2 T
3 F - It's a type of bird.
4 F - You get bacon from pigs.
5 T
6 T
7 F - Squid is a type of seafood.
8 F - Pig is an animal.
9 T
10 F - You get ham from pigs.

- 2 1 beef 6 squid
2 ham 7 bacon
3 tuna 8 sausages
4 duck 9 pork
5 crab 10 prawns
- 3 1 Pork, because it's a type of meat, not an animal.
2 Lamb, because it isn't from a pig.
3 Tuna, because it's a fish, not a type of meat.
4 Vegetarian, because it's not a type of meat, fish or seafood.
5 Cow, because it's an animal, not a type of meat.
6 Salmon, because it's a fish.
- 4 possible answers:
1 I like beef but it's expensive so I don't eat it very often.
2 I don't eat squid. It's very difficult to buy where I live.
3 I eat a lot of salmon.
4 I don't like crab so I don't eat it.
5 I like tuna.
6 I eat prawns, often with pasta.
7 I don't like duck - I prefer to see ducks swimming.
8 I like lamb.

Unit 48

- 1 1 3 3 6 5 3 7 1
2 3 4 6 6 2 8 3
- 2 1 fork 10 white
2 spoon 11 bottle
3 plate 12 beer
4 bowl 13 salt
5 bottle 14 black pepper
6 fizzy water 15 bottles
7 glasses 16 oil
8 wine 17 vinegar
9 red

- 3 possible answers, from China:
On restaurant tables in my country we usually have chopsticks, bowls, spoons, cups or glasses, and a pot of tea or a bottle of water. We have dishes for food. We sometimes have plates, napkins, and pepper, too.

We don't usually have knives, forks, salt, vinegar, white wine, red wine, beer, or fizzy water.

We never have oil on the table.

Unit 49

- 1 1 It's boiled rice.
2 The potatoes are fried.
3 A cheese sauce.
4 The first course was salad.
5 Did you have ice cream?
6 There was fruit for dessert.
7 I had tomato soup.
8 How was the apple pie?

- 2 1 F - You eat ice cream with a spoon.
2 T
3 T
4 F - You eat soup in chips in different bowls.
5 T
6 T
7 F - People don't have cream on pizza.
8 T
9 T
10 F - Apple pie is a dessert.

- 3 1 sauce 5 course
2 pie 6 cream
3 fried 7 boiled
4 soup

- 4 possible answer:
I'd like the soup for the starter, and then duck with orange sauce and boiled potatoes for the main course. Then for the dessert, I'd like apple pie with cream.

- 5 1 some more 7 of course
2 to order 8 the
3 another 9 I'll
4 meal 10 certainly
5 all right 11 waiter
6 tuna instead 12 without

- 6 1 have
2 without
3 course
4 or still
5 some
6 Certainly/Sure/Of course
7 'll
8 bill
9 sure/certainly/of course

Unit 50

- 1 crisps / snack / cheese sandwich / cake / toasted sandwich
tea with lemon / drink / black coffee / a fizzy drink / orange juice

- 2 1 F - Ice is frozen water.
2 T
3 T
4 F - Hot chocolate is a drink.
5 T
6 T
7 F - You can have a drink or a snack in a café.
8 T
9 F - Crisps are not sweet.
10 T

- 3 1 bread 7 fizzy/alcoholic/hot
2 sandwich 8 pub
3 chocolate 9 white
4 ice 10 black
5 coffee/tea 11 juice
6 drink(s) 12 tea/coffee

4 your own answers

- 5 1 S 3 D 5 S 7 S 9 D
2 S 4 S 6 D 8 D 10 S

6 B I'd like two toasted ham sandwiches, please.

A Is that to have here or take away?

B To have here, please.

A Is that everything?

B Can I get two teas, please?

A It will be a couple of minutes.

Please take a seat.

7 1 Can I **have/get** a tea with lemon, please?

2 To drink here or **take** away?

3 To **drink/have** here.

4 Would you **like** brown bread?

5 Yes, **please**.

6 OK, anything **else**?

7 **No**, thanks.

8 Fine. It will be a couple of minutes.

9 **Take/Have** a seat, please.

Unit 51

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1 1 to | 5 ride |
| 2 car | 6 both are correct |
| 3 both are correct | 7 both are correct |
| 4 on | 8 coach |

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| 2 1 rides | 5 motorbike |
| 2 coach | 6 foot |
| 3 lorries/trucks | 7 vehicles |
| 4 underground/car/train | 8 vans/a van |

3 possible answers:

1 Yes, I can. I learnt to drive when I was 17.

2 When I was about 7 or 8, I think.

3 I usually go by bus, but I can also get a train. I can't walk - it's too far.

4 No, I can't and I wouldn't like to.

5 Yes, it's excellent. It's not expensive and it's very clean and safe.

6 Yes, I sometimes go by coach, for example if I'm going to a football match.

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 4 1 traffic | 5 speed limit |
| 2 rush hour | 6 a quiet road |
| 3 main road | 7 motorway |
| 4 miles per hour | |

- 5 1 busy; hour
2 main
3 far
4 get; unfortunately
5 journey

7 possible answers for a driver in Britain:

1 Yes. Sometimes there's too much traffic, but often there are accidents or bad weather.

2 70 miles an hour.

3 Not very often. I prefer smaller, slower roads.

4 Yes, we do.

5 7.30 a.m - 9.30 a.m. and again between 4.30 p.m. and 6.30 p.m.

6 I went to Brighton by car a few weeks ago. It's about 130 miles. Unfortunately, there was a lot of traffic and the roads were very busy, so it took about four hours.

Unit 52

1 get off the bus; How long does it take?; the next stop; It doesn't take long; Excuse me.

2 1 Does the 24 stop outside the post office?

2 Where do I get off for the cinema?

3 Does the 24 go to the park?

4 How often does the 24 run?

5 Which is the last stop for the 16?

6 How many stops is it to the railway station?

7 Excuse me, which bus do I get to the school?

8 How long does it take to the railway station?

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 3 1 Yes, it does. | 5 The railway station. |
| 2 At the next stop. | 6 Five. |
| 3 No, it doesn't. | 7 The 16 or the 24. |
| 4 Every ten minutes. | 8 Fifteen minutes. |

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 4 1 routes | 7 timetable |
| 2 stop | 8 run |
| 3 next | 9 every |
| 4 last | 10 takes |
| 5 get off | 11 outside |
| 6 goes | 12 long |

5 possible answers:

1 Yes, at the end of the road.

2 The 9 and the 15.

3 The town centre or the airport.

4 One runs every 15 minutes, the other every half hour.

5 Sometimes to the town centre, but I don't get the bus very often.

6 About six.

7 About twenty minutes.

Unit 53

- 1 1 a fast train
2 get off the train
3 the (train) fare
4 the 7 o'clock train
5 a seat
6 at a railway station/train station
7 the timetable
8 a carriage

- 2 1 fare 7 waited
2 coach/carriage 8 timetable
3 missed 9 for
4 get/take 10 slow
5 last 11 journey
6 get on
- 3 1 seat 6 London
2 change 7 office
3 return 8 train
4 direct 9 there
5 passengers
- 4 1 change 6 to
2 leaves 7 single
3 platform 8 return
4 gets 9 book/reserve
5 take/get

5 possible answers:

- 1 Last Thursday.
2 A return.
3 I went to Oxford for a meeting.
4 It was £10.50.
5 No, I didn't have time.
6 I had to change at Didcot.

Unit 54

- 1 1 The bookshop is opposite of the hotel.
2 Go straight on and keep to going.
3 Is there a cinema near from here?
4 It's on your left side.
5 Turn to left and go straight on.
6 It's the third road turning on the right. (also possible: It's the third road turning on the right.)
7 Where's the most nearest post office?

- 2 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 D

- 3 1 Excuse me. How do I get to the museum?
2 Go along here and turn left.
3 Excuse me. Is there a post office near here?
4 It's the third turning on the right.
5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the station?
6 Cross the road at the traffic lights.

- 4 1 turning 6 going
2 much 7 on
3 left/right/corner 8 here
4 me 9 way
5 road/river 10 lights

5 Conversation 1

- 1 get 3 turning 5 much
2 straight 4 left 6 problem

Conversation 2

- 1 Excuse 4 take 7 opposite
2 near 5 turning 8 thanks
3 along 6 right 9 That's

6 possible answers:

- 1 Go straight on, then turn left into Frith Street, and the hotel is on the next corner on your right.
2 Go straight on, then turn left into Frith Street. Take the first turning on the right and keep going. The museum is on your left.
3 Yes, go straight on, and take first turning on your right/turn right. The post office is on the corner.

Unit 55

- 1 1 f 4 b 7 d
2 h 5 i 8 a
3 j 6 e 9 c

- 2 1 in a road 5 on a drinks machine
2 in a restaurant 6 in a hotel window
3 in a school 7 near the sea
4 in a shop window 8 in a bank

- 3 1 signs/notices 6 gap
2 notice/sign 7 closed/shut; open
3 sale 8 feed
4 allowed 9 Mind
5 let 10 toilets

- 4 1 no parking
2 entrance/no exit
3 no smoking
4 keep off the grass
5 out of order
6 please do not feed the animals
7 allowed
8 queue here
9 danger
10 keep right

- 5 NO exit
PLEASE queue here
MIND the gap, your head
KEEP right/left

Unit 56

- 1 1 S 4 D 7 S
2 D 5 S 8 D
3 D 6 D 9 S

- 2 1 art gallery, museum, palace, church and a castle
2 market
3 library
4 museum, palace, castle, art gallery and church
5 park
6 tower
7 post office
8 bridge
9 church (or castle or palace)
10 buildings
11 places

3 possible answers:

- 1 False. No, there are three or four.
- 2 Yes, there is. I go there about once a month.
- 3 Yes, we have both.
- 4 Yes, there are two big parks and several small ones.
- 5 Most of them are.
- 6 False. No, there's a market every Saturday.
- 7 Yes, there is.
- 8 False. No, it's a lovely place to live.

- 4
- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1 noisy | 5 safe |
| 2 lots | 6 dirty |
| 3 view | 7 There's |
| 4 opinion | 8 pollution |

- 5 Yes: 2, 3, 6, 7
No: 1, 4, 5, 8

- 6
- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1 opinion | 5 crowds |
| 2 dangerous | 6 clean |
| 3 do | 7 pollution |
| 4 busy/crowded | 8 quiet |

Unit 57

- 1 own, produce, grow

- 2 1 F - There are cows in the field.

- 2 T
- 3 T
- 4 T
- 5 T
- 6 T
- 7 T

- 8 F - There aren't a lot of trees near the farmer.

- 9 F - The farmer grows fruit and keeps cows.

- 10 F - The lake isn't in the valley.

- 3
- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 valley; hill | 5 fields |
| 2 lake | 6 own |
| 3 grass | 7 farming |
| 4 gate | 8 grow; produce |

4 possible answers:

- 1 I live on a hill.
- 2 No, there isn't, but there's a river near my home.
- 3 Yes, in my garden.
- 4 Yes, I can, at the end of the garden.
- 5 Yes, there are some on the hill.
- 6 I own two dogs.
- 7 Yes, it is.
- 8 Farmers produce a lot of milk and cheese. They also grow vegetables and wheat.

- 5 1 a 2 f 3 g 4 b 5 c 6 d

- 6
- | | |
|---------|------------|
| 1 water | 5 natural |
| 2 Fresh | 6 creative |
| 3 area | 7 pick |
| 4 earth | 8 nature |

7 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I often do in the summer.
- 2 Yes. I grow strawberries and raspberries, and I pick them from June to September.
- 3 Yes, I grow a lot of plants outside, but nothing inside.
- 4 Fresh air is really important. I like to see wild flowers in the countryside. The beauty of nature makes me feel happier. I like to see areas with plants in town; it brings more colour to the streets.

Unit 58

- 1
- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| 1 Anna and Rob | 8 the second floor |
| 2 on the top floor | 9 on the first floor |
| 3 Lucy | 10 the lift; the stairs |
| 4 on the top floor | 11 You put the key in the lock to open the door. |
| 5 the roof | |
| 6 8 | |
| 7 front door | |

- 2
- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1 lift | 9 top floor |
| 2 apartment | |
| 3 ground floor | 3 1 floor |
| 4 front door | 2 ground |
| 5 steps | 3 neighbours |
| 6 neighbour | 4 lift; stairs |
| 7 roof | 5 steps |
| 8 stairs | 6 key |

4 possible answers:

- 1 I live in an apartment on the second floor.
- 2 There's another flat and the person who looks after the building lives there.
- 3 An older lady called Dona Angeles is my neighbour, and a married couple live on the top floor.
- 4 It's got stairs, no lift.
- 5 No, there are no steps to the front door.
- 6 Yes, you have to open the door with a key.

- 5 view / modern / living room / hall / kitchen / home / dining room / upstairs / bedroom / parking / bathroom

- 6
- | | | |
|------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1 living | 6 views | 11 bedrooms |
| 2 bathroom | 7 hall | 12 bathrooms |
| 3 view | 8 kitchen | 13 parking |
| 4 park | 9 study | 14 outside |
| 5 outside | 10 Upstairs | 15 inside |

7 possible answers:

- 1 Most houses have two or three floors, but there are some very tall, old houses which have five floors.
- 2 Yes, they've got the same rooms, but in some houses there's an extra room for the washing machine.
- 3 A lot of houses in the modern part of the town have parking, but in the old part, parking is a big problem.

- 4 There are a lot of houses in the countryside, and just outside the centre of cities there are houses too.
- 5 Sometimes a very good garden makes a house a bit more expensive. A view of the sea will often make a house more expensive too.

Unit 59

- 1 1 S 3 S 5 D 7 S
2 D 4 D 6 S
- 2 1 washing machine 8 turn the oven;
2 dishwasher; sink on/off
3 cupboard 9 rubbish
4 bin 10 empty
5 oven 11 tap
6 fridge 12 equipment
7 full 13 cooker

3 possible answers:

We've got lots of cupboards, a sink and taps, an oven, a fridge, a washing machine, a bin, and a lot of kitchen equipment.
We haven't got a dishwasher.

- 4 1 prepare 4 clean
2 homework 5 look after
3 do 6 have to
- 5 1 feed 5 do the housework
2 do the washing 6 did my homework
3 task 7 look after
4 washing up 8 have to

6 possible answers:

In my home, my husband and I both do some housework.
He does the washing up.
I do the washing.
He cooks the dinner.
I clean the kitchen.
I do the ironing.
We probably both do the same number of everyday tasks because we both have full-time jobs - and also, he's better at cooking than I am.

Unit 60

- 1 GROUP A: table, seat, suitcase, sheet
GROUP B: match, picture, furniture, nature, Portuguese
GROUP C: international, dictionary

- 2 1 f 3 h 5 g 7 c
2 i 4 a 6 b 8 e
- 3 1 wardrobe 7 pieces of furniture
2 sheets 8 wooden
3 wall 9 table
4 suitcase 10 national
5 lamp 11 international
6 space 12 a few

4 possible answer:

I'm Lucy, and I live at home with my family. There's a bed with sheets, a table and a lamp on it. I've got a wardrobe in a corner of the room and a comfortable chair to sit on. I've got lots of pictures of my family and friends on the wall. I've got a suitcase on top of the wardrobe. The furniture is all wooden and it's a really nice room.

- 5 1 do; a brush 5 washbasin
2 have 6 towel; have
3 puts on 7 bath
4 shave 8 brush; mirror
- 6 1 bath 7 put on
2 towel 8 teeth
3 mirror 9 wash
4 hair 10 brush
5 clean/brush 11 shave
6 mirror/washbasin 12 razor

- 7 1 teeth
2 hair
3 mirror
4 brush
5 make-up; put ...on
6 have; razor; electric razor

8 possible answers:

- 1 I brush them after breakfast.
2 Twice a day.
3 Lots of times!
4 Yes, I do.
5 I only wear it sometimes.
6 My husband shaves every morning with a razor.

Unit 61

- 1 1 armchair 5 window 9 television
2 carpet 6 fire 10 curtain
3 floor 7 sofa 11 clock
4 light 8 shelf 12 telephone

- 2 1 F - There are two windows.
2 T
3 T
4 T
5 T
6 T
7 T
8 F - There are two corners.
9 T
10 F - There are four curtains.
11 T
12 T
13 F - There are two shelves.
14 T

- 3 1 phone/telephone 7 light
2 sofa; armchair 8 shelf
3 curtains 9 carpet
4 clock 10 corner
5 fan 11 window
6 fire

4 possible answers:

- 1 I've got a sofa, an armchair and a small table in my living room.
- 2 I've got a TV.
- 3 I've got a carpet on the floor and a telephone on a shelf.

Unit 62

- | | |
|---------------|--------------------|
| 1 1 uncertain | 5 unnecessary |
| 2 unlucky | 6 unhealthy |
| 3 irregular | 7 correct |
| 4 correct | 8 impolite |
| 2 1 polite | 5 unnecessary |
| 2 informal | 6 impolite |
| 3 regular | 7 uncertain |
| 4 lucky | 8 unhealthy |
| 3 1 polite | 5 uncertain/unsure |
| 2 Irregular | 6 unhealthy |
| 3 informal | 7 rude |
| 4 unlucky | 8 unnecessary |

4 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, my neighbours are all lovely.
- 2 That's true.
- 3 Yes, most of them are interesting.
- 4 No, I'm usually lucky - the weather is good.
- 5 That's true.
- 6 That's true.
- 7 That's true, but I sometimes text people when I'm having a meal.
- 8 That's probably true, but I like to have a shower every day.

Unit 63

- | | | | | |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1 1 No | 3 No | 5 Yes | 7 Yes | 9 No |
| 2 Yes | 4 Yes | 6 No | 8 Yes | 10 No |
- 2 1 strong
 - 2 awake
 - 3 poor
 - 4 low
 - 5 wide
 - 6 alive
 - 7 light
- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 3 1 hard | 6 light |
| 2 weak | 7 narrow |
| 3 rich | 8 asleep |
| 4 dead | 9 poor |
| 5 high | 10 soft |
- 4 Words that are ticked: useless, common, different, general, media, useful, similar
Other words: specific, unusual, tradition
- 5 1 T
- 2 T
- 3 F - A traditional building is not modern in style.
- 4 F - An unusual event doesn't happen a lot.
- 5 T
- 6 F - A useless thing won't help you.
- 7 T
- 8 F - A lazy person doesn't work hard.
- 9 F - It's usually light in the middle of the day.
- 10 T

- 6 1 general
- 2 useful
- 3 light
- 4 unusual

- 5 traditional
- 6 hardworking
- 7 useless

7 possible answers:

It's unusual for me to get colds and flu.
I prefer modern houses.
I prefer a dark room.
We enjoy similar things.
I think social media is both positive and negative.
I don't like specific holiday plans.
Sometimes it's useful to know about history.
They think I'm quite hardworking.

Unit 64

- | | |
|--------------|---------|
| 1 1 only | 4 only |
| 2 still | 5 even |
| 3 especially | 6 still |
- 2 1 He's 75 and he still plays tennis.
 - 2 It's nice there, especially in the morning.
 - 3 There are only three students in the class.
 - 4 He even works on Sundays./He works, even on Sundays.
 - 5 She's still at university.
 - 6 Rio is big, but Sao Paolo is even bigger.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 3 1 Only | 5 Even |
| 2 still | 6 especially |
| 3 especially | 7 still |
| 4 only | 8 even |
- 4 1 both answers are correct
 - 2 really
 - 3 both answers are correct
 - 4 really
 - 5 both answers are correct
 - 6 quite
 - 7 both answers are correct
 - 8 really
- 5 1 extremely/really
 - 2 rather/pretty
 - 3 a bit
 - 4 very/really
 - 5 a little
 - 6 quite/pretty
 - 7 very/extremely
 - 8 rather/pretty
- 6 possible answers:
- 1 slow/unfriendly
 - 2 handsome/attractive/friendly/nice
 - 3 enjoyed it/hated it
 - 4 lonely/bored/unhappy
 - 5 interesting/good
 - 6 late
 - 7 friendly/nice
 - 8 lazy

Unit 65

- 1 1 slowly 5 clearly 9 easily
2 badly 6 happily 10 quietly
3 angrily 7 well 11 correctly
4 late 8 hard 12 fast
- 2 1 I write very clearly.
2 My cousin sings well.
3 My boss works hard.
4 Lola drives carefully.
5 Robina answered the questions correctly.
6 Julio doesn't pronounce words clearly.
7 Miriam did the exercise easily.
8 Amina works very fast.
9 My little boy reads slowly.
10 She spoke to Sam angrily.
- 3 1 late 4 badly
2 loudly 5 carefully
3 clearly/slowly 6 hard
- 4 possible answers:
1 I never arrive late; I always arrive at the right time.
2 My father speaks very loudly.
3 Yes, she does.
4 I think I drive well.
5 Yes, I have to think carefully.
6 Sometimes I relax a little, but usually I work hard.

Unit 66

- 1 1 D 3 S 5 S 7 S
2 S 4 D 6 D
- 2 1 PE/physical education 8 computer science
2 literature 9 biology
3 history 10 design and technology
4 geography 11 physics
5 art 12 arts subjects
6 languages 13 science subjects
7 chemistry
- 3 possible answers:
1 I was good at English literature.
2 I was quite good at geography.
3 I was bad/terrible at maths.
4 I didn't study biology, physics or chemistry after the age of 15.
5 The subject I liked most was English literature.
6 The subject I hated most was physics.

Unit 67

- 1 2 g 4 e 6 f
3 b 5 a 7 d
- 2 1 leave 4 options
2 get/find 5 either
3 carry on/continue/stay 6 or
7 training

- 3 1 uniform 4 carry on/continue/stay
2 leave
3 get; training 5 at
- 4 possible answers, from Kenya:
0 Children in Kenya start school when they are between 5 and 7.
1 Yes, the children usually wear a uniform.
2 They can leave school at the age of 18.
3 At this age, they do more training at university or at a college.
4 Yes, they stay in school since they will not have completed high school education until they complete Form Four at the age of 18.
5 They can go to university or a college to get training for their future career or a particular job, for example working as a doctor.
- 5 1 no 4 A (for biology)
2 five 5 E (for maths)
3 two 6 Grade C (a pass)
- 6 1 take/do 4 results
2 do 5 badly; failed
3 well; grade/mark 6 worst
- 7 possible answers:
1 Most of my lessons were 50 minutes.
2 Yes, quite hard.
3 I took important exams at 16 and 18.
4 I took nine exams when I was 16, and four exams when I was 18.
5 Yes, fortunately I did.
6 Biology is my best subject.

Unit 68

- 1 1 do 6 do
2 term 7 Unfortunately
3 write 8 After
4 last 9 takes
5 library
- 2 1 degree; in 5 essay; took
2 research 6 last
3 fortunately 7 bookshop
4 again 8 unfortunately
- 3 possible answers, from Mexico:
1 Here in Mexico, the course lasts five years.
2 Unfortunately, only 16%.
3 Unfortunately, most students don't do that.
4 Between four or five months.
5 It is not always possible.
- 4 1 S 3 S 5 S 7 D
2 D 4 D 6 S
- 5 1 doctor 5 lecturer
2 engineer 6 designer
3 architect 7 journalist
4 lawyer 8 businessman

- 6 1 professor
2 law
3 manager
4 journalist
5 lectures
- 6 business
7 reporter
8 engineering
9 science
10 businesswoman

7 your own answers

Unit 69

- 1 1 job
2 shop assistant
3 nurse
4 long
5 clothes
6 hasn't
- 7 employee
8 boss
9 dentist
10 Models
11 builder
12 in the police
- 2 1 D 3 S 5 D 7 S
2 S 4 D 6 S
- 3 1 a pilot, a dentist, a teacher
2 a dentist, a nurse, a fashion designer, a hairdresser, a builder, a chef, a soldier
3 a pilot, a teacher (a maths teacher), a businessman/woman, a builder
4 unemployed
5 a nurse, a soldier, a police officer/policeman/policewoman, a pilot, a chef, a dentist
6 a secretary, a cleaner, a businessman/businesswoman
- 4 1 secretary 5 a fashion designer
2 a pilot 6 a model
3 a hairdresser 7 a teacher
4 the boss 8 a chef
- 5 possible answers:
1 My friend Lucia is a secretary.
2 Carlo is a chef at the pizzeria.
3 Christelle is my hairdresser.
4 My friend Marissa is a teacher.
5 I don't know anyone who is a taxi driver.
6 Mr Ranelli is my dentist.
7 My mum is a businesswoman.
8 My uncle is the boss in a small factory.

Unit 70

- 1 1 long hours
2 a factory
3 an office
4 work for
5 does he earn
- 6 hours a day
7 an American airline
8 earn much
9 a year
10 ten to six
- 2 1 hospital; in
2 company; salary; a
3 long; from; to
4 earn
5 in; army
- 6 for; airline
7 advertising
8 manages; manager
- 3 possible answers:
1 I'm a reporter.
2 I work for a local newspaper.
3 I work in an office, but I go out and talk to people.
4 I work long hours, often 10 or 12 hours a day.
5 No, we don't earn very much.

- 4 1 e 2 f 3 b 4 a 5 d

- 5 1 We discussed our problems.
2 I have a meeting this afternoon.
3 She spends a lot of time travelling.
4 Could you organize the meeting?
5 My job involves using a computer.
6 I met her for the first time last week.

- 6 1 clients
2 discuss
3 project
4 designing
5 involves
- 6 organize
7 send
8 reports
9 colleagues
10 spend

Unit 71

- 1 She offered me the job. 7
I went for an interview. 5
I posted it. 4
I decided to apply. 2
I saw an advertisement for a job.
I accepted the job. 8
I filled in the form. 3
The interviewer asked me questions. 6
- 2 1 offered
2 post
3 interview
4 fill
5 training
6 applying
7 experience
8 accept
9 advertisement/advert/ad
10 interviewer
- 3 possible answers:
1 I've applied for two jobs: a teaching job and a job in advertising.
2 I had interviews for both jobs.
3 My training for the teaching job was a one-year teacher training course.
4 I filled in a form for my interview.
5 I'd like to work with young people, especially helping them with sports activities.

Unit 72

- 1 1 Yes
2 No
3 Yes
4 Yes (usually)
- 5 No
6 Yes
7 Yes
8 No
- 2 1 He's at work today.
2 This is such a good book.
3 Stand up when she enters the room.
4 The film was so long.
5 She's part of a small group.
6 This is such a difficult job.
- 3 1 worries
2 whole
3 so
4 enter
- 5 such
6 charities; parts
7 support
8 amazing/incredible

4 possible answers:

- 1 It was quite good and I enjoyed the work.
- 2 Yes, I was worried about arriving on time and wearing the right clothes.
- 3 Yes, they were very friendly and the boss was amazing.
- 4 Yes, there were three of us and we all worked and had lunch together.

Unit 73

- | | | |
|--------------|----------|-----------|
| 1 1 keyboard | 4 menu | 7 screen |
| 2 window | 5 tablet | 8 printer |
| 3 laptop | 6 mouse | 9 program |
-
- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 2 1 laptop/tablet | 6 program |
| 2 screen | 7 document/window |
| 3 menu | 8 mouse |
| 4 printer | 9 keep |
| 5 tablet | |

3 possible answers:

- 1 No, I haven't. I've got an Apple Mac.
- 2 Yes, I've got a printer and I use it nearly every day.
- 3 I haven't got a laptop, but I've got a tablet and I keep it in the kitchen.
- 4 Yes, I've got thousands. They're mostly of friends and family.
- 5 I prefer a PC because it has a bigger screen and keyboard.

4 save, move, type, remove, replace, close

5 h, e, d, c, f, a, b, g (also possible: h, e, f, d, c, b, a, g)

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 6 1 lines | 6 save |
| 2 careful | 7 replace; with |
| 3 copies | 8 cut |
| 4 file | 9 types |
| 5 print/make | 10 closed |

Unit 74

- 1 1 reply
 - 2 the internet
 - 3 document
 - 4 a-reply
 - 6 the internet
-
- 2 1 Did you get/receive ...
 - 2 The letter got lost ...
 - 3 Have you replied to ...
 - 4 ... not on the internet
 - 5 ... jamie at gmail dot com
 - 6 Could you email/send/post ...
 - 7 I need to check ...
 - 8 ... send it by post/email
 - 9 ... sue 1 at gmail dot com

- | | | |
|----------|---------------|------------|
| 3 A | B | C |
| 1 sent | 4 receive/get | 6 reply |
| 2 letter | 5 reply | 7 on |
| 3 lost | | 8 internet |

4 website, virus, recognize, online

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 5 1 S | 3 D | 5 D | 7 D |
| 2 S | 4 D | 6 D | 8 S |

- | | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| 6 1 videos | 5 virus |
| 2 passwords | 6 search |
| 3 blog | 7 click; recognize |
| 4 websites | 8 contains |

7 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I do, usually music videos.
- 2 No, never.
- 3 No, I haven't.
- 4 I use the BBC website, Wikipedia, and the Arsenal football website.
- 5 No, it hasn't.
- 6 Yes, a lot.
- 7 No, I don't because it's dangerous.
- 8 I don't open it. I delete it.

Unit 75

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 1 S | 3 S | 5 D | 7 S |
| 2 D | 4 S | 6 S | |

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| 2 1 message; rang; answer | 5 phone; messaged |
| 2 number | 6 make |
| 3 call; busy; phone | 7 message |
| 4 wrong | 8 mobile; double |

3 possible answers:

- 1 Double three eight, nine seven four. Mobile: oh double seven double oh, nine double oh, six, eight four
- 2 My mother and my sister.
- 3 Yes, I do. I message my friends all the time.
- 4 Hello?
- 5 No, not very often.

4 correct answers:

- 1 Oh, hello, is that Jackie?
- 2 Just a moment ...
- 3 Speaking.
- 4 Oh hello, how are you?
- 5 I'm sorry, he's out.
- 6 OK, I'll call back later.
- 7 Yes, bye.

5 Conversation 1

- 1 speaking
- 2 This is
- 3 in/there
- 4 please
- 5 at the moment
- 6 call/phone/ring; back
- 7 bye/goodbye

Conversation 2

- 8 speak to
- 9 just a
- 10 get

Conversation 3

- 11 Is that
- 12 speaking
- 13 it

6 a possible answer, from Poland:

The phrases we use in Polish for answering the phone are quite different. We have a special word for *hello* on the phone: *halo*. Instead of *Speaking*, we say *Słucham*, which means literally 'I'm listening', and we use *Mówi Marisa* ('Marisa is speaking') for *It's Marisa*. When we ask for someone, we can say either *Czy to Marisa?* (which is basically the same as in English) or *Czy zastałam/zastałem Marisę?* (literally, 'Have I got hold of Marisa?').

Unit 76

- 1 1 owner 5 instructor
2 visitor 6 driver
3 traveller 7 television/TV actor
4 winner 8 factory worker
- 2 radio listener, film actor, bus driver, driving instructor, office worker, English teacher
- 3 1 visitors 6 listeners
2 owner 7 readers
3 race/competition 8 speaker
4 driver 9 winner
5 workers 10 teacher

Unit 77

- 1 1 flying 5 sightseeing
2 shopping 6 understanding
3 camping 7 teaching
4 spelling 8 driving

2 your own answers

- 3 writing English, painting pictures, sleeping in a tent, listening to music, playing football, learning languages, buying clothes, cooking meals

4 possible answers:

- 1 Writing English is quite difficult.
- 2 Painting pictures is not something I do.
- 3 Sleeping in a tent is not something I enjoy.
- 4 Listening to music is something I do a lot.
- 5 Playing football is something I used to do.
- 6 Learning languages is fun.
- 7 Buying clothes is boring for me.
- 8 Cooking meals is something I do every day.

Unit 78

- 1 1 celebrate; celebration
2 describe; description
3 predict; prediction
4 decide; decision
5 organize; organization
Note that the stress in nouns falls on the syllable before the last syllable.

- 2 1 invention 4 solution
2 celebration 5 prediction
3 description 6 organization

- 3 1 decision, decided 6 organizing;
2 solve, solution organization
3 description 7 predicted
4 celebrate 8 inventions
5 invented

4	VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
	move	movement	discover	discovery
	succeed	success	think	thought
	arrange	arrangement	argue	argument
	choose	choice	complain	complaint

- 5 1 an argument
2 complaint
3 thought
4 success
5 arrangements
6 discovery
- 6 1 complaint 4 argue 7 success
2 choose 5 argument 8 thoughts
3 choice 6 succeed

7 possible answers:

- 1 No, I haven't. My neighbours are very quiet.
- 2 No, I like to think about it carefully.
- 3 Yes, we could choose between Spanish and German, for example.
- 4 No, never.
- 5 No, I haven't.
- 6 No, I'm not interested in business.
- 7 No, family is the most important thing for me.
- 8 Yes, a lot.

Unit 79

- 1 bathroom railway station first floor
address book bus stop phone number
dishwasher capital letter police officer

- 2 1 a bathroom 5 a railway station
2 a dining room 6 an art gallery
3 a bus stop 7 an address book
4 a DJ (disc jockey) 8 a dishwasher

- 3 1 number 6 floor
2 officer 7 stop
3 jockey 8 phrasal
4 mark 9 full
5 tense; participle 10 capital

- 4 department store, sports centre, ticket office, traffic lights, swimming pool, credit card, public transport, high street

- 5 1 public 7 park
2 credit 8 machine
3 birthday 9 office
4 identity 10 sales/shop;
5 high department
6 traffic

- 6 1 identity 3 credit 5 birthday
2 centre 4 pool 6 store

7 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I have an identity card for work. It's got my name and a photo on it.
- 2 No, I don't.
- 3 Yes, I do. I use it for shopping.
- 4 No, I don't.
- 5 I don't send birthday cards. I email or call people to wish them a happy birthday.
- 6 Yes, I do. I usually buy clothes.

Unit 80

- 1 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A

- 2 1 I hate chocolate.
- 2 They don't like doing homework very much.
- 3 He doesn't like speaking English very much.
- 4 I quite like shopping.
- 5 She doesn't like driving.
- 6 I don't mind working at night.

- 3 1 love/like 5 hate
- 2 all 6 like
- 3 mind 7 quite/really
- 4 really 8 at

4 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I like going to the cinema too.
- 2 I quite like classical music, especially Bach and Vivaldi.
- 3 I love shopping - I go with my friends and we have a good time.
- 4 I don't mind driving, but it's not exciting.
- 5 I don't mind writing emails to my friends, but sometimes it's boring writing emails for work.
- 6 I love watching TV.
- 7 No, I hate housework.
- 8 I quite like talking on the phone to my friends.

- 5 1 I enjoy watching TV.
- 2 I'm not interested in politics.
- 3 My favourite film is *Star Wars*.
- 4 She prefers reading to writing.
- 5 He's an amazing boss.
- 6 Was the party good fun?
- 7 It's a boring programme.
- 8 Singing is enjoyable.

- 6 1 fun 5 interesting
- 2 prefer 6 enjoy
- 3 favourite 7 incredible
- 4 interested 8 modern

7 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, it's good fun.
- 2 No, I prefer fish.
- 3 I love Rio de Janeiro: it's a very exciting city.
- 4 No, I'm not interested in jazz.
- 5 Yes, I do. I read books and watch history programmes a lot.
- 6 I enjoy walking in the countryside with my dog.
- 7 No, the restaurants where I live aren't very good.
- 8 I prefer old houses.

Unit 81

- 1 Inside your home: play computer games; do a lot of drawing; collect stamps

- 2 1 g 2 b 3 a 4 f 5 c 6 d

- 3 1 does 6 goes
- 2 collects 7 play
- 3 play 8 watches
- 4 go 9 go
- 5 do 10 does

4 possible answers:

I do a lot of travelling, I go out with friends a lot, I watch TV, I do a lot of cooking.
I would like to go to the gym and play the guitar.
I'm not interested in fishing, camping, computer games, golf, drawing or painting.

- 5 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D

6 1 ✓

- 2 False. Kolya is a good singer.
- 3 False. Kolya plays the guitar.
- 4 False. There are various clubs in schools.
- 5 ✓
- 6 False. Natasha is quite good at dancing.
- 7 False. Computers and collecting things are popular hobbies.
- 8 False. Older people like repairing cars.

- 7 1 hobby 5 song
- 2 popular 6 at
- 3 various 7 repairing
- 4 singer

8 possible answers:

- 0 Yes, I'm a member of a swimming club.
- 1 I love making things like clothes, and I also enjoy painting.
- 2 Young people particularly like sports of all kinds, but gaming is also very popular.
- 3 I have various hobbies.
- 4 I am in a singing group, but if I sing alone, my voice isn't very good.
- 5 I can sing 'Human' by Rag and Bone Man.
- 6 I'm good at making things for the house: cushions, for example.
- 7 Yes, I often break things, so it's a good thing I like repairing things.

Unit 82

- 1 ice hockey, motor racing, table tennis, American football, basketball

- 2 1 game 5 do
- 2 skiing 6 bit/lot
- 3 racing 7 players; team
- 4 go 8 goal

- 3 INSIDE A BUILDING: basketball, ice hockey, running, swimming, table tennis, tennis
OUTSIDE A BUILDING: American football, baseball, football/soccer, motor racing, running, skiing, swimming, tennis

4 possible answers:

- 1 I play a bit of football and basketball with friends.
- 2 I play tennis every week and go skiing in the winter.
- 3 I watch football, rugby and tennis on TV.
- 4 Football is the most popular sport in Britain, but swimming, cycling, motor racing, rugby and cricket are also popular.

5 1 match/game

- 2 against
- 3 to
- 4 scored
- 5 nil
- 6 beat
- 7 won
- 8 draw
- 9 against

6 1 match/game

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 2 against | 7 beat |
| 3 lost | 8 scored |
| 4 drew; with/against | 9 won (or lost) |
| 5 time | 10 leading |
| 6 points | 11 score |

7 possible answers:

Manchester City beat Arsenal 2-0. Sterling scored just before half-time, and Aguero scored the second goal in the 78th minute.

Unit 83

1 1 concert

- 2 orchestra
- 3 pianist
- 4 audience
- 5 perform
- 6 opera singer
- 7 performance

2 1 classical

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 2 pianist | 6 performance |
| 3 violinist | 7 audience |
| 4 orchestra | 8 performed/played |
| 5 musical instruments | 9 pieces |
| | 10 by |

3 possible answers:

- 1 I don't go to classical music concerts very often because they're quite expensive.
- 2 *La Bohème* by Puccini, *The Magic Flute* by Mozart, the *Eroica Symphony* by Beethoven and *Swan Lake* by Tchaikovsky
- 3 I learnt to play the piano as a child, but I don't play now.
- 4 No.
- 5 The guitar.

4 1 made

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| 2 not good | 4 go |
| 3 cheaper | 5 are able to |
| | 6 like |

5 1 tour

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------|
| 2 live | 6 musician |
| 3 album | 7 performer |
| 4 hit | 8 festival |
| 5 records/albums/CDs | 9 recorded |
| | 10 ability |

6 possible answers:

- 1 I really like Radiohead.
- 2 I do both.
- 3 Yes, I saw them at Glastonbury.
- 4 *In Rainbows*.
- 5 Yes, they do.
- 6 No, but they have popular albums.

Unit 84

1 science violent exciting crime

2 1 thriller

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 2 comedy | 5 cartoon |
| 3 action film | 6 love story |
| 4 science fiction | 7 horror film |

3 1 sort

- | | |
|--------------------|----------|
| 2 adventure/action | 5 horror |
| 3 kind | 6 funny |
| 4 romantic | 7 type |

4 1 romantic

- 2 violent
- 3 scary
- 4 funny

5 1 F - He's an actor.

- 2 T
- 3 T
- 4 T
- 5 F - It's a woman.
- 6 T
- 7 F - He's a director.

6 1 about

- | | | |
|-------------|---------|------------|
| 2 brilliant | 4 stars | 7 director |
| 3 in | 5 hero | 8 on |
| | 6 actor | 9 Let's |

7 possible answers:

- 1 I like thrillers and action films.
- 2 It was a Polish film called *Cold War*.
- 3 It was on at our local cinema.
- 4 Joanna Kulig and Tomasz Kot.
- 5 Pawel Pawlikowski.
- 6 It's about two Polish people after the Second World War. It's a love story with an unhappy ending.

Unit 85

- 1 1 in 7 -
2 the 8 of
3 on 9 a newspaper
4 out 10 of
5 on 11 crime
6 programme
- 2 1 watch; saw/watched
2 believe/think; none
3 news; happened
4 listen; heard/listened to
5 paper/newspaper
6 on; drama
7 to
8 programme
- 4 1 D 4 D 7 S
2 S 5 S 8 D
3 D 6 S 9 S
- 5 1 magazines 5 wars
2 reports 6 opinion(s)
3 events 7 journalists/reporters
4 disasters 8 celebrities

6 possible answers:

- This week, Greta Thunberg spoke to the US Congress about climate change.
- In the last five years, the UK had a referendum on leaving the EU or not.
- I buy a newspaper on Saturdays, but during the rest of the week I usually get news from the TV, the radio and the internet.
- The meerkat adverts (for Compare the Market) on TV are not new now, but I think they are still popular.
- Jon Snow is a famous TV news reporter in the UK.

Unit 86

- 1 1 F - Non-fiction is about real things, fiction is not about real events.
2 T
3 T
4 F - If you are in trouble, it's bad.
5 T
6 T
7 F - A novel is a story.
8 T
9 F - If you create something, you make it or make it happen.
10 T
- 2 1 series/number 5 created
2 novels 6 rules
3 character 7 trouble
4 detective 8 solves

3 possible answers, from Poland:

- Olga Tokarczuk is a famous author who writes novels.
 - Bieguni (Flights) is a novel by Olga Tokarczuk.
 - Korona królów (Crown of Kings) is a popular series on TV.
 - King Kazimierz is one of the main characters in Korona królów.
 - Eberhard Mock is a famous detective in fiction.
 - I sometimes ride a bike on a zebra crossing.
- 4 1 same, mainly 5 butter, publish
2 mostly, home 6 variety, another
3 realize, fine 7 blue, including
4 achieve, receive 8 recent, see
- 5 1 with you 5 is
2 know it 6 short
3 good 7 mainly
4 lots of different things 8 more information
- 6 1 past; mostly/mainly 4 published
2 including 5 variety
3 realized 6 tried; achieved

Unit 87

- 1 1 g 2 d 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 c
- 2 1 flight 5 foreign
2 accommodation 6 checked
3 booked/arranged 7 packed
4 might 8 suitcase

3 possible answers:

- Yes, I always book a long time before I travel because it's often cheaper.
- Usually I do if I'm travelling with all the family. If I'm alone, I often don't.
- No, I don't.
- Yes, always. I need to know what I have.
- No, never, but I know I should do.

- 4 1 No 3 No 5 No 7 No
2 Yes 4 Yes 6 Yes
- 5 1 d 2 f 3 a 4 b 5 e
- 6 1 available 7 a
2 single/double 8 include
3 double/single 9 afraid
4 en suite 10 extra
5 dear 11 parking
6 matter 12 details

Unit 88

- 1 1 went on 5 definitely
2 recommend 6 stay
3 excellent 7 tourism
4 tourists 8 chat

- 2 1 excellent 5 staying
2 helpful 6 recommend
3 tourists 7 definitely/certainly
4 guests

- 3 1 stay
2 service
3 chat
4 recommend
5 tourists

- 4 possible answers:
1 One night.
2 Yes, quite good.
3 Yes, I did.
4 Yes, definitely/certainly.
5 No, it's a business hotel.

- 5 1 g 3 f 5 b
2 a 4 d 6 e

- 6 1 sign 5 serve
2 leave 6 change
3 call/take 7 collect
4 pay 8 check

- 7 1 key 3 serve 5 out
2 until/till 4 have; have 6 call

Unit 89

- 1 1 board 5 airport
2 check-in 6 hand luggage
3 boarding card 7 airline
4 aeroplane 8 security

- 2 boarding pass; hand luggage; board the plane;
check-in desk; ticket machine

- 3 1 passengers; check-in
2 reach
3 boarding; luggage; check
4 gate; board/get on
5 airports
6 print; machine
7 luggage

- 4 possible answers:
1 No, I use different airlines.
2 Yes, I do.
3 No, the first thing I do is check in, then I have a coffee.
4 Yes, of course.
5 No, it doesn't matter to me.
6 Yes, I do.

- 5 1 You get on the plane.
2 You fasten your seat belt.
3 The plane takes off.
4 Flight attendants provide drinks.
5 The plane lands.
6 You get off the plane.
7 Someone checks your passport.
8 You collect your luggage.
9 You leave the airport.

- 6 1 departure 7 landed
2 board/get on 8 arrival
3 fasten 9 checked
4 takes off 10 collect
5 flight 11 leave
6 provide

- 7 possible answers:
1 I'm fine, but my wife is very nervous.
2 I eat some of it, but it's usually terrible.
3 I'm excited.
4 I always try to travel with just hand luggage.

Unit 90

- 1 possible answers:
They used to go to Hyères on holiday.
They used to get a bus to Hyères.
They used to stay in an apartment.
He used to go swimming.
She used to sit on the beach.
She used to read on the beach.
They used to have lunch in the apartment.
They used to have dinner in one of the restaurants.
They used to relax after lunch.
She used to write postcards.
He used to go out on a boat.

- 2 1 couple
2 beach
3 boat
4 rocks
5 relax
6 flew
7 used

- 3 1 We used to stay 4 my dad, while my mum
2 a couple of weeks 5 lots of postcards
3 used to swim 6 a typical day

- 4 possible answers:
1 We went to several places: sometimes the south coast of England and sometimes to a couple of places in Spain.
2 A couple of weeks.
3 Yes, I went on a boat in England a couple of times - I enjoyed it.
4 I like being active - swimming and doing other sports.

- 5 1 go 5 guided
2 guidebook 6 take
3 go on 7 round
4 visit 8 an ideal

- 6 1 photos 7 tour
2 went; guide 8 visit
3 got; map/ 9 gets
guidebook 10 round; take
4 sightseeing 11 ideal/perfect
5 guided; prefer 12 look
6 guidebook

7 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I usually get a map from the tourist information office.
- 2 I sometimes buy a guidebook but not often.
- 3 No, but I sometimes go on bus tours.
- 4 Yes, generally I prefer to go sightseeing on my own.
- 5 Yes, almost always.
- 6 Yes, I spend most of my time looking round.
- 7 No, I don't take lots of photos but my wife does.
- 8 Not often, but it sometimes happens.
- 9 My ideal place for a sightseeing holiday is Venice.

Unit 91

- 1 1 Hello, nice to meet you.
2 Max, this is Emma. (or Emma, this is Max.)
3 Bye. Hope to see you again. (OR Hope to see you again. Bye.)
4 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. (OR Nice to meet you. Goodbye.)
- 2 1 introduce
2 shake
3 greet (also possible: meet)
4 Introductions
5 welcome
6 greetings
- 3 1 Hello/Hi; Nice/Good to meet you
2 again; Bye/Goodbye
3 this; meet you; welcome
4 Hope/Good; Bye/Goodbye
- 4 1 See you tomorrow.
2 He's very well.
3 What's the matter?
4 See you later.
5 See you soon.
6 How are things?
7 Give my love to Suki.
8 I've got to go now.
9 That's fine.
- 5 things; Fine/Very well; matter; 've got to; dear; give my love; will
- 6 well; fine/good; how's; good/fine
Anyway; 've got to; later; that's; then

Unit 92

- 1 1 How often do you go there?
2 What sort of music do you like?
3 What does he do?
4 How long have you lived there?
5 What type of films do you watch?
6 Who does this belong to?
7 What's his flat like?
8 Why do you like her?

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 2 a 4 | c 7 | e 6 | g 2 |
| b 5 | d 1 | f 3 | |

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| 3 1 often; once/twice | 5 belong |
| 2 Whose; mine | 6 kind/sort/type |
| 3 What | 7 idea |
| 4 Yeah/Yes | 8 long |
| 4 1 What | 5 nearest |
| 2 long | 6 seeing |
| 3 time | 7 Which |
| 4 many | 8 far |
| 5 1 far | 5 Which |
| 2 close/shut | 6 nearest |
| 3 many | 7 What |
| 4 worth | 8 recommend |

6 possible answers:

- 1 I live in Sevilla, in Spain.
- 2 I have lived here twenty-five years.
- 3 The Alcazar Palace and the Cathedral.
- 4 About a kilometre.
- 5 There are many, but my favourite is Egana Oriza.
- 6 It's only a few hundred metres.

Unit 93

- 1 1 you; me; course
2 bring; please; problem
3 Could (also possible: Can); afraid
4 polite
5 responses
6 take; bring
7 make
8 requests; polite
9 put
- 2 possible answers:
1 A Could/Can you finish this exercise for homework, please?
B Yes, sure.
2 A Luca, can/could you change places with Maria, please?
B Yes, no problem.
3 A Could/Can you bring your notebook tomorrow, please?
B I'm afraid I can't.
4 A Can/Could you lend me a pencil, please?
B Yes, sure.
5 A Could you take these books to the library, please?
B I'm afraid I can't. I have to leave now.
6 A Could/Can you finish the/your essay by Monday?
B Yes, sure.

3 possible answers:

- 1 Is it **all right** if I use this dictionary?
- 2 Do you **mind** if I make a coffee?
- 3 Could I stay for another ten minutes?/Is it **OK/all right** if/Do you **mind** if I stay another ten minutes?
- 4 Is it **OK** if I close the window?
- 5 Can I **borrow** your book?
- 6 Yes, **sure/no problem/go ahead/that's fine**.
- 7 I'm **afraid** I need it.
- 8 Yes, **of course/no problem/go ahead/that's fine**.
- 4 1 Do you **mind** if I go at one o'clock today, please?
- 2 Could I **borrow** a piece of paper, please?/
Could you **lend** me a piece of paper, please?
- 3 Is it **OK** if I go to the toilet?
- 4 Is it **all right** if I sit in a different seat?
- 5 Can you **lend** me a pen, please?/
Can I **borrow** a pen, please?
- 5 go ahead; no problem; of course; I'm afraid I need it.; that's fine

Unit 94

1 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D

- 2 1 Would you **like** to come round later?
- 2 Yes, I'd **love to**.
- 3 Do you want to **go out** for dinner?
- 4 That **sounds** lovely.
- 5 I've just got an **invitation** to a party.
- 6 I'm **afraid** I can't.
- 7 That **would** be nice.
- 8 Do you want **to** come to a party?
- 9 I'm **sorry**, but I'm busy tonight.
- 10 Ben **invited** me to lunch on Saturday.
- 3 1 Would you like to go out for a meal?
~ Yes, great!
- 2 Do you want to come round for a coffee?
~ I'm afraid I can't.
- 3 Would you like to come to a party tomorrow?
~ Yes, that sounds lovely.
- 4 Do you want to go out for a coffee?
~ I'd love to, but I'm going to the gym.

4 dialogue 1

What shall we do this weekend?
The weather's nice, so
what about going to the beach?
Yes, that's a good idea.
And maybe we could take the train.
Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
I'd prefer to get them at the station.

dialogue 2

Where shall we go tomorrow?
What about a nice meal at home?
I think I'd prefer to go out.
But it's going to rain.
OK, then let's order a pizza.
OK, fine.

- 5 1 What **shall** we do this evening?
- 2 Do you have a **suggestion**?
- 3 What about **going** to see a film?
- 4 I'd prefer to go by train.
- 5 Yes, **that's** a good idea.
- 6 Where **shall** we go tomorrow?
- 6 1 B What about going to the theatre?
A I'm not sure about that.
- 2 A What shall we do on Saturday?
B Perhaps we could go out for a meal.
A OK, let's do that.
- 3 A Where shall we go this afternoon?
B Let's go to a museum.
A Yeah, that's a good idea.

Unit 95

- 1 1 Do you want something to eat?
- 2 No thanks.
- 3 I'm fine, thanks.
- 4 Would you like something to eat?
- 5 Let me help you.
- 6 Thank you very much.
- 7 Thanks. Could I have a coffee?
- 2 1 help; please 4 let; worry
- 2 offer 5 refused
- 3 need; Thanks 6 accept
- 3 1 Would you like a drink?/Would you like something to drink?
Yes, please. Could I have some water?
- 2 Do you need some/any help?
No, I'm fine, thanks./No, don't worry, thanks.
- 3 Would you like something to eat?
Thanks./Yes, please. Could I have an apple?
- 4 Let me help you.
No, don't worry.
- 4 1 f 3 i 5 d 7 g
- 2 a 4 h 6 e 8 b
- 5 1 That's 5 mind
- 2 I'm 6 sorry; polite
- 3 forgotten; right 7 broken; worry
- 4 very/really/so; 8 rude
- matter
- 6 1 so, really
- 2 it doesn't matter; that's all right; never mind; don't worry
- 3 when you:
feel bad about something
feel sad about something
want somebody to repeat something

Unit 96

- 1 1 certainly
2 impossible
3 possibility
4 definitely
5 likely
6 probably
7 perhaps
- 2 1 D 3 D 5 D 7 D
2 S 4 S 6 S 8 S
- 3 1 I'll probably ...
2 ... likely to come ...
3 ... think so.
4 ... hope not.
5 ... there's a chance ...
6 I may/might see ...
- 4 1 probably; may/might
2 definitely; probably; likely
3 wedding; certainly
4 chance
5 attend; likely; may/might
6 possibility; so
7 maybe; certain; probably
8 impossible
- 5 possible answers:
1 I hope so.
2 I'll probably go out with my friends.
3 No, I'm definitely going out on Sunday.
4 I might do a bit of work.
5 I'll probably watch some sport in the evening.
6 I don't think I'm likely to spend a lot.
7 Yes, I'm definitely going to see my family for lunch on Sunday.
8 Maybe. I'm not sure.

Unit 97

- 1 1 X it's also near the park
2 X he understands Greek too
3 ✓
4 X and also washed the car.
5 ✓
6 X and there's a park near the house as well
- 2 1 I often eat ice cream/cake and I also like cake/ice cream.
2 I enjoy watching TV, and I go to the cinema a lot too.
3 I can speak English/German and I can understand German/English as well.
4 I read a lot of books and I also listen to music.
5 I play football and I watch it on TV as well.
6 I drive and I walk a lot too.
- 3 'True' or 'false' as correct for you.

- 4 1 He went to bed late, but he couldn't sleep.
2 People don't like her very much. However, she's very kind.
3 Although the food was terrible, the service was good./The food was terrible, although the service was good.
4 It was snowing, but we still decided to go out.
5 We lost our dog. However, we found it after an hour.
6 Although I wore a coat, I was still cold.
7 I watched the whole programme. I didn't enjoy it, though.
8 We had a big lunch. However, Jason was still hungry.
- 5 1 I was really hungry, but I had to wait until 10.00 for dinner.
2 I was last in the queue. However, I only had to wait five minutes.
3 I was very cold. However, someone lent me a jacket.
4 I was very frightened, but someone held my hand.
5 I was late for the party. However, everybody was still there.
6 I was really tired. However, I stayed at work to finish the job.
- 6 possible answers:
1 I didn't like it.
2 we (still) went out.
3 it was very friendly.
4 she (still) went to work.
5 she didn't pass the exam.
6 when I got there, it was closed.

Unit 98

- 1 1 because of 5 so
2 to 6 in order to
3 because 7 so
4 as a result
- 2 1 (in order) to 5 because
2 so 6 so
3 because of 7 (in order) to
4 As a result 8 as a result/so
- 3 possible answers:
1 because of the weather.
2 in order to work.
3 so I was late for work.
4 and as a result I didn't get to work until 9.30.
5 because I went out with friends in the evening.
6 so I was tired the next day.
- 4 1 Secondly 4 First of all
2 After that 5 then
3 Finally 6 Before that

5 possible answers:

- 1 Firstly, you make the sauce. Secondly, you boil the pasta. Finally, you add the sauce to the pasta.
- 2 First of all, I did a degree in History. After that, I trained to be a teacher, and finally, I got a teaching job in Liverpool.
- 3 First of all, we left our home in Rome. Then we stayed in Munich for a week. After that, we spent the second week in Heidelberg. Finally we flew back to Rome.
- 4 First I made a shopping list. Then I went to the market. After that I came home and had a cup of tea. Finally, I cooked the dinner
- 5 Firstly, I had a shower, then I got dressed. After that, I had breakfast and finally, I rang for a taxi and left home.

6 possible answer:

First of all, I took a train to Bristol and met my friend, Sue. After that, we went for a walk by the river in the sunshine. Then we went to a café and had lunch which was delicious. And then finally, we went to her flat and had a cup of coffee with her brother.

Unit 99

- | | |
|---------|-------|
| 1 1 out | 5 up |
| 2 up | 6 up |
| 3 over | 7 off |
| 4 out | |
-
- | | | |
|---------|--------|--------|
| 2 1 out | 4 down | 7 off |
| 2 up | 5 down | 8 over |
| 3 up | 6 up | 9 up |

3 possible answers:

- 1 I would like to give up sweets.
- 2 I grew up in London.
- 3 I feel afraid.
- 4 I don't often go out in the evenings. When I do, I go to dinner with my friends.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 4 1 Take it off. | 5 Take them off. |
| 2 Put it on. | 6 Give it up. |
| 3 Turn it on. | 7 Turn them on. |
| 4 Put them on. | 8 Put it on. |

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 5 1 correct | 5 correct |
| 2 correct | 6 correct |
| 3 turn it on | 7 put it on |
| 4 take it off | 8 correct |

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 6 1 go back | 4 take off |
| 2 carry on | 5 go up |
| 3 go away | 6 wake up |

Unit 100

- 1 1 d 2 c 3 b 4 f 5 a 6 e

- 2 1 go
2 out
3 in
4 back
5 ready/dressed/changed
6 get

- | | |
|-------------|----------|
| 3 1 dressed | 4 sleep |
| 2 ready | 5 better |
| 3 changed | 6 get |

4 possible answers:

- 1 I get dressed before I have breakfast.
- 2 No, I get ready very quickly.
- 3 Yes, I usually get changed. I put my jeans on.
- 4 Yes, sometimes.
- 5 Yes, I hope so.
- 6 Yes, we get lots of tourists where I live.

- 5 the rest of the time; hurry up; let me know;
I guess so; come on; well done; right now


- 6 1 nothing
2 like
3 away/now; hurry
4 Guess; Wow; done
5 after
6 guess/suppose; let
7 else

- 7 1 The bar was busy so we went somewhere else.
2 Could you let me know later?
3 Who is going to take care of the children?
4 Hurry up, Sacha!
5 Do you feel like going out?
6 Penny is here. Everyone else went out.

A1 items from the Oxford 3000 word list that are not keywords in Word Skills Elementary

This list includes some items which are used in Unit headings, and it is assumed learners will understand them.

classroom
family
hotel
learn
money
number
restaurant
school
sport
university
weather

This list includes some grammar words and some items which are very common, and it is assumed learners will know them. For any unknown words, please use the  to check the meaning.

adult
anyone
artist
ball
be
boy
cannot
cent
chart
child
class
cup
dancer
diet
difficult
everybody
future
girl
he
hello
her
hey
him
his
I
imagine
important
interest
it
its
join
life
list

local
man
me
metre
must
my
no
no one
nobody
object
or
our
page
paint
people
period
person
quick
quickly
real
room
scientist
second (= unit of time)
section
she
show
skill
slow
somebody
someone
something
student
talk
tell
that
the
theatre
their
them
they
title
today
tonight
topic
understand
us
we
woman
yes
you
young
your
yourself

Word list

The CEFR (Common European Framework) levels are given for all the words/phrases in the **Oxford 3000**. The numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

- a bit (used as *adv*) **A2** 37
 a bit (+ *adj*) **A2** 37, 64
 a bit (of sth) **B1** 37
 a couple (of sth) **A2** 31, 50, 90
 a day/week, etc. 70
 a few **A1** 60
 a little **A1** 64
 a lot (of sth) **A1** 37
 a night *as in* £90 a night 87
 ability **A2** 83
 about **A1** 6
 about **A1** *as in* it's about ... 84
 above **A1** 20
 abroad **A2** 13
 accept **A2** 71, 95
 accessory 25
 accident **A1** 32
 accommodation **B1** 87
 achieve **A2** 86
 across **A1** 19
 act *v* **A2** 76
 action film 84
 active **A2** 15
 activity **A1** 5
 actor **A1** 76, 84
 actress **A1** 84
 actually **A2** 21
 add **A1** 71, 85
 address *n* **A1** 13
 address book 79
 adjective 2
 adventure film 84
 adverb 2
 advert 71, 85
 advertisement **A2** 71, 85
 advertising **A2** 70
 advice **A1** 16, 31
 afraid (of sth/sb) **A1** 17
 afraid *as in* I'm afraid (not) **A2** 87, 93
 afraid *as in* I'm afraid I can't **A2** 94
 Africa 35
 after that 98
 afternoon **A1** *as in* in the afternoon 7
 again **A1** 68
 against **A2** 82
 age **A1** *as in* at the age of **A1** 67
 ago **A1** 9
 agree with (sb) **A1** 22
 air **A1** *as in* fresh air **A1** 57
 airline **A2** 70, 89
 airport **A1** 89
 alarm clock 29
 album **B1** 83
 alcoholic drinks 50
 alive **A2** 30, 63
 all (of sth) **A1** 85
 all day **A1** /morning/afternoon/evening 7
 all right **A2** 49, 93
 all the time **A2** 37
 allow **A2** 55
 almost **A2** 7
 alone **A2** 15
 along **A2** 19
 already **A2** 9
 also **A1** 97
 although **A2** 97
 always **A1** 23
 a.m. 7
 amazing **A1** 72, 80
 American football 82
 American 35
 ancient **A2** 36
 and **A1** 97
 and so on **B1** 3
 angrily **A2** 65
 angry **A1** 17, 65
 animal **A1** 38, 47
 ankle **A2** 10
 another **A1** 49
 answer (the phone) **A1** 75
 any more **A2** 29
 anything else? **A1** 50
 anyway **A2** 91
 anywhere **A2** 33
 apartment **A1** 58
 appearance **A2** 26
 apple **A1** 46
 apply for sth **A2** 22, 71
 appointment **B1** 9
 April **A1** 8
 Arabic 35
 architect **A2** 68
 architecture **A2** 68
 area **A1** 30, 57
 Argentina 35
 Argentinian 35
 argue **A2** 17, 78
 argument **A2** 17, 78
 arm **A1** 10
 armchair 61
 army **A2** 70
 around **A1** 6
 arrange **A2** 78, 87
 arrangement **A2** 78
 arrival **B1** 89
 arrive (at a place) **A1** 23, 53, 89
 art **A1** 66
 art gallery 56, 79
 article **A1** 85
 arts subjects 66
 as a result **A2** 98
 as well **A2** 97
 Asia 35
 ask sb for sth **A1** 22
 asleep **A2** 63

at

(a place) **A1** 20
 (a time) **A1** 18
 (= @) **A1** 74
 all 80
 breakfast, etc. **A1** 18
 Christmas 18
 first **A2** 21
 least **A2** 21
 midnight 7, 18
 New Year 18
 night 7, 18
 school **A1** 21
 (the age of sth) **A2** 67
 the back of sth 21
 the beginning/start of sth **A1** 21
 the bottom of sth 21
 the end of sth **A1** 21
 the front of sth 21
 the moment **A1** 18, 21, 75
 the same time **A1** 21
 the time **A2** 21
 the top of sth **A2** 21
 the weekend **A1** 18, 23
 university **A1** 21
 work **A1** 72
 attack **A2** 30
 attend **A2** 96
 attractive **A2** 11
 audience **A2** 83
 August **A1** 8
 aunt **A1** 14
 Australia 35
 Australian 35
 author **A2** 86
 autumn **A1** 8
 available **A2** 87
 average **A2** 11
 awake 63
 away **A1** as in go away **A2** 99
 away as in right away 100
 awful **A2** 26

baby **A1** as in have a baby 16

back **A1** 10
 backache 31
 bacon 47
 bad 17; **A1** 67
 bad at sth **A1** 66
 badly **A2** 65
 bag **A1** 1, 45
 baker's 28
 banana **A1** 46
 band **A1** 83
 bank account 27
 bar (of chocolate) **B1** 45
 bar **A2** 50
 base sth on sth **B1** 22
 baseball **A2** 82
 basketball 82
 bath **A1** 60
 bathroom **A1** 58, 79

be

able to do sth **A2** 83
 born **A1** 14
 divorced **A2** 16
 from **A1** 13
 sick **A1** 31
 the same as sth **A1** 3
 together **A1** 16

beach **A1** 36, 90
 beans **A2** 46
 bear **A2** 38
 beard 11
 beat v **A2** 82
 beautiful **A1** 11
 because **A1** 98
 because of sth/sb **A1** 98
 become **A1** 16
 bed **A1** 60
 bedroom **A1** 58
 bee **B1** 38
 beef **A2** 47
 beer **A1** 48
 before that **A1** 98

begin **A1** 39

beginning **A1** as in at the beginning of sth **A1** 21
 behind **A1** 20
 believe **A1** 30, 85
 belong to sb **A2** 29, 92
 below **A1** 20
 belt **A2** 25
 best **A1** as in (the) best 67
 best friend **A1** 16
 better (than) **A1** 37
 better **A2** as in get better **A2** 31
 between **A1** 20
 bicycle **A1** 51
 big **A1** 26
 bike **A1** 51
 bill **A1** 27, 49, 88
 billion **A2** 6
 bin **A2** 59
 biology **A2** 66
 bird **A1** 38
 birthday **A1** 8
 birthday card 79
 biscuit **A2** 45
 bit **A2** as in a bit (of sth) **B1** 37, 64
 black **A1** 26
 black coffee 50
 black pepper 48
 blog **A1** 74
 blonde **A1** 11
 blood **A2** 10
 blow **A2** 37
 blue **A1** 26
 board v (= get on) **B1** 89
 board **A2** 1
 board pen 1
 boarding pass/card 89
 boat **A1** 90
 body **A1** 10
 body **A1** as in a dead body 30
 boil **A2** 49
 boiled **A2** 49
 bone **A2** 10

- book **v** **A2** 53, 87
 bookshop 28, 68
 boots **A1** 25
 border **B1** 36
 bored **A1** 17, 80
 bored with sth **A1** 22
 boring **A1** 80
 born **A1** as in be born **A1** 14
 borrow **A2** 93
 boss **A2** 69
 both (of sb/sth) **A1** 38
 bottle **A1** 48
 bottom **B1** 10
 bowl **A2** 48
 box **A1** 45
 boyfriend **A1** 14, 16
 brain **A2** 10
 Brazil 35
 Brazilian 35
 bread **A1** 45
 bread (white/brown) 50
 break **A1** 12, 32, 39, 95
 break a rule 86
 breakfast **A1** 23
 bridge **A2** 56
 bright **A2** 37
 brilliant **A2** 84
 bring **A1** 39, 93
 Britain 35
 broken **A2** 32
 brother **A1** 14
 brother-in-law 14
 brown **A1** 26
 brown bread 50
 brush **n, v** **A2** 60
 build **A1** 34, 39
 builder 69
 building **A1** 56, 70
 burn **A2** 32, 39
 bus **A1** 51
 bus driver 69
 (bus) stop 52, 79
 business studies 68
 businessman **A2** 68, 69
 businesswoman 68, 69
 busy **A1** 51, 56, 94
 busy (= telephone) **B1** 75
 but **A1** 97
 butter **A1** 45
 button **A2** 24
 buy **A1** 27, 39
 by **A1** as in a book by Tolstoy 83
 by the end of sth **A2** 21
 bye **A1** 75, 91
 cabbage 46
 café **A1** 50
 cake **A1** 45, 50
 call **n, v** **A1** 44, 75, 88
 call sb back 75
 called **A1** 4
 camera **A1** 29
 camping **A2** 77, 81
 Can I get ... ? 50
 Can I have ... ? 50
 Can I/you ... ? 93
 Canada 35
 Canadian 35
 capital **A1** 36
 capital letter 8, 79
 car **A1** 51
 car park **A1** 79
 care about sb/sth **A2** 22
 career **A1** 69
 careful **A2** 73
 carefully **A2** 65, 73
 carpet **A2** 61
 carriage **C1** 53
 carrot **A1** 46
 carry **A1** 12, 25
 carry on (with sth) **A2** 67, 99
 cartoon **A2** 84
 cash **A2** 27
 castle **A2** 56
 cat **A1** 38
 catch (an illness) **B1** 31, 39
 catch (a ball) **A2** 12, 39
 cause **n, v** **A2** 34, 44
 CD **A1** 1, 83
 CD player 1
 celebrate 78
 celebration 78
 celebrity 85
 Central America 35
 century **A1** 18
 certain **A2** 62, 96
 certainly **A2** 49, 88, 96
 chair **A1** 1
 chance **A2** as in a good chance 96
 change (= become different) **A1** 37
 change (money) **A1** 88
 change (trains) **A2** 53
 change places 93
 character **A2** as in main character 86
 charity **A2** 72
 chat **v, n** **A2** 44, 88
 cheap **A1** 26
 check **A1** 74, 87, 89
 check in **A2** 88, 89
 check-in 89
 check-in desk 89
 check out **A2** 88
 cheese **A1** 45
 chef **A2** 69
 chemist's 28, 31
 chemistry **A2** 66
 chest **B1** 10
 chicken **A1** 47
 chin 10
 China 35
 Chinese 35
 chips **A2** 49
 chocolate **A1** 45
 choice **A2** 28, 78
 choose **A1** 28, 78
 Christmas Day 8
 church **A2** 56

- cinema **A1** 84
 circle *n* **A2** 29
 circle *v* **A2** 3
 city **A1** 36
 classical music 83
 clean *adj* **A2** 56
 clean *v* **A1** 59
 clean (your teeth) **A1** 60
 cleaner 69
 clear (sky) **A2** 37
 clearly **A2** 65
 clever **A2** 15
 click on sth **B1** 74
 client **B1** 70
 climate **A2** 36
 climb **A1** 12
 clock **A1** 29, 61
 close *v* **A1** 12, 73, 92
 close friend 16
 closed **A2** 55
 clothes **A1** 24
 clothes shop 28
 clothing **A2** 24
 cloud **A2** 37
 cloudy 37
 club **A1** 81
 coach (= bus) **A2** 51
 coach (= in train) 53
 coal **B1** 34
 coast **A2** 36
 coat **A1** 24
 coffee **A1** 50
 coin **B1** 27
 cold *adj* **A1** 37
 cold *n* **A1** 31
 colleague **A2** 70
 collect (stamps, etc.) **A2** 81
 collect (= go and get sth) **B1** 88, 89
 college **A1** 67
 colour **A1** 26
 column **A2** 3
 come **A1** 39
 come from somewhere **A1** 13
 Come on! **A2** 100
 come round 23, 94
 comedy **A2** 84
 comfortable **A2** 26
 comma 6
 comment *n* **A2** 44
 comment *v* **B1** 44
 common **A1** 31, 63
 communicate **A2** 13
 community **A2** 71
 company **A1** 69
 compare (sth with sth) **A1** 5, 28
 competition **A2** 76
 complain **A2** 78
 complaint **B1** 78
 complete *v* **A1** 3
 completely different 15
 computer games 81
 computer science 66, 68
 concert **A1** 83
 congratulations **C1** 100
 contain **A2** 74
 context **A2** 5
 continent **A2** 35
 continue **A2** 67
 control *n, v* **A2** 44
 conversation **A1** 5
 cook *v* **A1** 59
 cooked **A1** 46
 cooker **A2** 59
 cooking **A1** 81
 cool **A1** 37
 copy *n, v* **A2** 44, 73
 corner **A2** 61
 corner **A2** as in on the corner 54
 correct *adj, v* **A1** 3, 4
 correctly **A2** 65
 cost *n, v* **A1** 27, 39, 44
 cough *n* 31
 could (= suggestion) **A1** 94
 Could I have ... , please? 45, 95
 Could I/you ... ? 4, 93
 count **A2** 6
 country **A1** 35
 couple (= two people) **A2** 16
 couple **A2** as in a couple of sth/sb **A2** 31, 50, 90
 course **A1** 13, 68
 coursebook 1
 cousin **A1** 14
 cover *v* **A2** 3
 cow **A1** 38, 47
 crab **A1** 47
 cream (= colour) **B1** 26
 cream (= food) **A1** 49
 create **A1** 57, 86
 creative **A2** 57
 credit card **A2** 27, 79
 crime **A2** 30
 crime drama 85
 criminal **A2** 30
 crisps 50
 cross sth out 3
 cross *v* **A2** 54
 crowd **A2** 56
 crowded **A2** 56
 cry **A2** 17
 cucumber 46
 culture **A1** 36
 cupboard **A2** 59
 curly **A2** 11
 curtain **B1** 61
 customer **A1** 45, 49
 cut (= in a computer document) 73, 39
 cut *n, v* **A1** 32, 39
 Czech 35
 Czech Republic 35
 dad **A1** 14
 daily **A1** *adj, B1* *adv* 23
 dance *v* **A1** 12
 dancing **A1** 81
 danger **A2** 30, 55

dangerous **A1** 30, 56
 dark (= with not much light) **A1** 63
 dark (= hair colour) **A1** 11
 dark blue 26
 date **A1** 8
 daughter **A1** 14
 day **A1** 8
 dead **A2** 30, 63
 debit card 27
 December **A1** 8
 decide **A1** 78
 decision **A2** 41, 78
 deep **A2** 33
 definite article 2
 definitely **A2** 88, 96
 degree **A2** 68
 delicious **A1** 49
 dentist **A2** 69
 department store 28, 79
 departure **B1** 89
 depend on sb/sth **A2** 22
 describe **A1** 5, 78
 description **A1** 5, 78
 desert **A2** 33
 design *n* **A1** 66
 design *v* **A1** 70
 desk **A1** 1
 dessert 49
 destroy **A2** 34
 details **A1** 87
 detective **A2** 86
 develop **A2** 34
 device **A2** 29
 dialogue **A1** 5
 diary **A2** 9, 29
 dictionary **A1** 1
 die **A1** 85
 difference **A1** 4
 different **A1** 3, 63
 digital **A2** 29
 dining room 58, 79
 dinner **A1** 23

direct **A2** 53
 directions **A2** 54
 director **A2** 84
 dirty **A1** 56
 disagree with sb **A2** 22
 disappear **A2** 34
 disaster **A2** 34, 85
 disc jockey 79
 discover **A2** 30, 78
 discovery **A2** 30, 78
 discuss **A1** 5, 70
 discussion **A2** 5
 dish **A1** 48
 dishwasher 59, 79
 dislike **B1** 80
 divorced **A2** 16
 DJ 79

do

(= have a job or study sth) **A1**
 13, 41

(an activity) **A1** 41, 82

a course 68

a degree (in sth) 68

an exam 67

an exercise 5, 41

badly 67

exercise 41

homework 5, 41, 67

research 68

the housework 41, 59

the ironing 59

the shopping 41

a sport 82

the washing 59

the washing up 59

well **A2** 67

you know the way to ... ? 54

you mind if I ... ? 93

you want to? 94

you want ... ? 95

your best 41

your hair 60

doctor **A1** 68
 document **A2** 73
 dog **A1** 38
 dollar **A1** 27
 don't mind 80
 don't worry 95
 door **A1** as in front door 58
 dot **B2*** 74
 double **A2** 4, 75
 double room 87
 down **A1** 19
 download (music) *v* **A2** 83
 downstairs **A1** 58
 draw with/against sb 82
 drawing **A2** 81
 dream *n, v* **A2** 44
 dress **A1** 24
 drink *v* **A1** 39
 drink *n* **A1** 50
 drive **A1** 39, 51, 76
 driver **A1** 69, 76
 driving **A2** 77
 drop **A2** 12
 drug **A2** 32
 dry **A2** 37
 duck 47
 during (the week) **A1** 23
 DVD player 61
 each **A1** 27
 each other **A1** 15, 16
 ear **A1** 10
 early **A1** 23
 earn **A2** 27, 70
 earth **B1** 57
 Earth **A2** as in planet Earth 84
 easily **A2** 65
 east *n, adj* **A1** 36
 easy **A1** 65
 eat **A1** 47
 education **A2** 67
 e.g. 3
 egg **A1** 45

- Egypt 35
 Egyptian 35
 eight **A1** 6
 eighteen **A1** 6
 eighteenth 8
 eighth 8
 eighty **A1** 6
 either ... or **A2** 67
 electric fan 29
 electric razor 60
 electrical store 28
 electricity **A2** 34
 electronic mail 74
 elephant **A1** 38
 eleven **A1** 6
 eleventh 8
 else **A1** as in everyone else **A2**,
 somewhere/nothing else 100
 email *n, v* **A1** 44, 74
 embarrassed **B1** 17
 emotions **B1** 17
 employ **A2** 69
 employee **A2** 69
 employer **A2** 69
 empty *adj* **A2**; *v* **B1** 59
 en suite 87
 end **A1** as in at/by the end of
 sth **A1** 21
 end **A1** as in in the end **A2** 21
 energy **A2** 34
 engineer **A2** 68
 engineering **B1** 68
 England 35
 English 35
 enjoy *v* **A1** 80
 enjoyable **B2*** 80
 enormous **A2** 36
 enough **A1** 27
 enter **A2** 55, 72
 entrance **B1** 55
 environment **A2** 34
 environmental **B1** 34
 equal *v* **B1** 3, 6
 equipment **A2** as in kitchen
 equipment 59
 error **A2** 3
 especially **A2** 64
 essay **A2** as in write an essay 5, 68
 etc./etcetera 3
 euro **A1** 27
 Europe 35
 even **A1** 64
 evening **A1** as in in the evening 7
 event **A1** 85
 ever **A1** 9, 39
 every **A1** 52
 everyday **A2** 59
 everyone **A1** as in everyone
 else **A2** 100
 everything **A1** 28
 everywhere **A2** 33
 ex (-wife/husband, etc.) 16
 ex-boyfriend (-girlfriend) 16
 exactly **A2** 13
 exam **A1** 67
 examination **B2** 67
 example **A1** as in for example **A1** 3
 excellent **A2** 88
 except **A2** 28
 excited **A1** 17
 exciting **A1** 84
 excuse me **A1** 52, 54
 exercise book 1
 exercise **A1** [C] as in do exercises 41
 exercise **A1** [U] as in do exercise 41
 exit **B2*** 51, 55
 expensive **A1** 26
 experience **A2** 71
 explain **A1** 4, 5
 explanation **A2** 5
 extra **A1** 87
 extreme **A2** 34
 extremely **A2** 37, 64
 eye **A1** 10
 face **A1** 10
 fact **A1** 36
 factory **A2** 70
 fail an (an exam) **A2** 67
 fair (hair) **B1** 11
 fall **A1** 39, 44
 fall over 12, 99
 false **A1** 3
 family name 13
 famous **A1** 36
 fan (= to cool yourself) 29, 61
 fantastic **A1** 13
 far **A1** as in how far 51, 92
 Far East 35
 fare **B2*** 53
 farm **A1** 38, 57
 farmer **A1** 38, 57
 farming **A2** 57
 fashion designer 69
 fast *adj, adv* **A1** 65
 fast train 53
 fasten (your seat belt) **B1** 89
 fat **A1** 11
 father **A1** 14
 favourite **A1** 80
 feature **B1** 11
 February **A1** 8
 feed **A2** 55, 59
 feel **A1** 17
 feel **A1** as in I don't feel well 31
 feel like (doing) sth **A2** 100
 feelings **A1** 17
 feet **A1** 10
 festival **A1** 83
 fetch 100
 few **A1** 60
 fiction **A2** 86
 field **A2** 57
 fifteen **A1** 6
 fifteenth 8
 fifth 8
 fifty **A1** 6
 fight *n, v* **A2** 39, 44
 file **B1** 73

- fill **A1** 59
 fill in (a form) **A2** 71
 film **A1** 84
 final score 82
 finally **A2** 98
 find **A1** 30
 find (sth) out **A1** 85, 99
 fine (= OK) **A2** 50
 fine (= well) **A1** 91
 finger **A2** 10
 finish **A1** 23, 93
 fire **A1** 61
 first **A1** 8, 98
 first course 49
 first floor 58, 79
 first name 13
 first of all **A2** 98
 firstly **A2** 98
 fish **A1** 47
 fishing **A2** 81
 fit **A2** 26
 five **A1** 6
 fizzy water 48, 49
 fizzy drink 50
 flat *adj* **A2** 29
 flat *n* **A1** 58
 flatmate 16
 flight **A1** 87
 flight attendant 89
 floor **A1** 61
 flower **A1** 57
 flu **A2** 31
 fly *n* (= insect) **A2** 38
 fly *v* **A1** 87, 90
 flying **A2** 77
 follow (instructions) **A2** 5
 food **A1** 45, 50
 foot (*pl* feet) **A1** 10
 football **A1** 82
 for **A1** 9
 for example **A1** 3
 foreign **A2** 87
 forest **A1** 33
 forget **A1** 5, 39, 95
 fork **A2** 48
 form **A1** 71
 formal **A2** 3, 62
 fortunately **A2** 68
 forty **A1** 6
 four **A1** 6
 fourteen **A1** 6
 fourteenth 8
 fourth 8
 France 35
 free **A2** 27
 French 35
 fresh **A2** 46
 fresh air 57
 Friday **A1** 8
 fridge **A2** 59
 fried **B1** 49
 friend **A1** *as in* best friend **A1** 16
 friendly **A1** 15
 from *as in* be from 13
 from ... to **A1** 70
 front **A1** *as in* at the front of 21
 front **A1** *as in* in front of sth **A1** 20
 front door 58
 frozen **B1** 46
 fruit **A1** 46
 fruit and vegetable shop 28
 fry **B1** 49
 full **A1** 59
 full stop 79
 fun **A1** 15, 80
 funny **A1** 15, 84
 furniture shop 28
 furniture **A2** 60
 game **A1** *as in* play a game 23, 81, 82
 gap **A2** 55
 garden **A1** 57
 gardening 81
 garlic 46
 gas **A2** 34
 gate **A2** 57
 gate (= at an airport) **A2** 89
 general **A2** 63
 geography **A1** 66
 German 35
 Germany 35
 get **A1** 39
 (= arrive at/in somewhere) **A1** 23, 42, 51, 53
 (= be given) **A1** 42, 67, 74
 (= become) **A2** 42
 (= buy) **A1** 42
 (= fetch) **A1** 100
 (= travel by sth) **A1** 42, 52, 53
as in we/you get (= there are) 100
 back (= return) **A2** 100
 better **A2** 31, 100
 changed 100
 divorced 14
 dressed 23, 100
 in (= arrive) **B2** 100
 lost **A2** 74, 90
 married **A1** 14, 16
 on/off (a train, plane, bus, etc.) **A1** 12, 52, 53, 89
 on (well) with sb **B1** 16
 out (of sth) **A2** 100
 ready **A1** 45, 100
 sb (= go and find) **A1** 75
 there **A1** 51
 to know sb **B1** 16, 100
 to sleep 100
 to work 23
 up **A1** 23
 gift **A2** 22, 28
 gift shop 28
 girlfriend **A1** 14, 16
 give **A1** 12
 my love to sb 91
 sb advice 16
 sb a call 44
 sb a smile 44

sb a surprise 44
sth up **A2** 99
glass (of sth) **A1** 48
glasses **A1** 25
gloves **B1** 25
go **A1** 52
+ -ing **A1** 82
across (the road, a bridge) 19
ahead (= yes, of course) **B1** 93
along (the road) 19
along here 54
and get **A2** 100
away **A2** 99
back **A1** 99
camping 81
by car 51
down (the stairs) 19
down (= decrease) **A2** 99
fishing 81
for (a walk/swim) **A2** 23
home **A1** 23
into (a house, etc.) **A1** 19
on a guided tour 90
on a trip 88
on foot 51
over (a bridge) 19
out **A1** 23, 99
out for sth 94
out of (a house, etc.) 19
out (with sb) 81
out with sb (= have a relationship) 16
past (a church, etc.) 19
shopping 23
sightseeing 90
straight on 54
through (a gate) 19
to bed **A1** 23
towards (a hill, etc.) 19
under (a bridge) 19
up (the stairs) 19
up (= increase) **A2** 99
on holiday 87

goal **A2** 82
gold **A2** 25
golf **A2** 81
good **A1** 67
good at sth **A1** 22, 66, 81
good chance 96
good fun 15
good to meet you 91
good-looking 11
goodbye **A1** 75
government **A2** 34
grade **B1** 67
gram 45
granddaughter 14
grandfather **A1** 14
grandmother **A1** 14
grandparents **A1** 14
grandson 14
grapes 46
grass **A2** 57
great **A1** 13, 26, 94
great fun 15
Great Britain 35
Greece 35
Greek 35
green **A1** 26
green pepper 46
greet **A2** 91
greeting *n* 91
grey **A1** 11, 26
ground floor 58
group (= musical) 83
grow **A1** 57
grow up **A1** 99
guess *n, v* **A1** 5
Guess what? **A1** 100
guess **A1** *as in* I guess so **A2** 100
guest **A2** 88
guide *n* **A2** 90
guidebook 90
guided tour 90
guitar **A1** 81
gun **A2** 29

gym **A1** 81
hair **A1** 10
hairdresser 69
half **A1** 45
half past (one, etc.) 7
half-time 82
hall **A2** 58
ham 47
hand **A1** 10
hand luggage 89
handbag 25
handsome 11
happen **A1** 30, 85
happily **A2** 65
happy **A1** 17
hard *adj* (= difficult) **A1** 65
hard *adj* (= not soft) **A2** 63
hard *adv* (= a lot) **A1** 65, 67
hardworking 15, 63
hat **A1** 25
hate **A1** 80
have **A1** 40
(= eat/drink) **A1** 50
a good/great day 40
a good/great time 40
a good/great weekend/holiday/
journey 40
a baby 16
a bath 40
a break 40
a chat 44
a dream 44
a drink/sth to eat 40
a fight 44
a guess 5
a look (at sth) 40, 44
an argument 78
a rest 40
a run 40
a seat 50
a shave 60
a sleep 44
a (nice) smell 44

a swim 40
a thought 78
a wash 40, 60
a shower 23, 40
a walk 40
breakfast 23, 40
got (an illness) 31
got (family) 14
got A1 40, 45
got to do sth A2 91
dinner 23, 40
lunch 23, 40
to do 59, 88
head A1 10
headache A2 31
health A1 31
healthy A1 31, 62
hear A1 85
hear about sth A2 22
heart A2 10
heavy (= not light) A2 63
heavy rain 37
height A2 11
help v A1 4, 13, 95
help n A1 95
helpful A2 88
here A1 as in go along here 54
here A1 as in over here 53
hero A2 84
heroine 84
hi A1 91
high A1 63
high A1 as in 3,000m high 36
high street B1 79
hill A2 57
Hindi 35
history A1 66
hit v A2 32, 39
hit n A2 83
hobby A1 81
hold A2 12, 39
holiday A1 87

home A1 58
homework A1 5, 41, 59
hope A1 as in I hope so / I hope not 96
hope to see you again 91
horror film 84
horse A1 38
hospital A1 70
hot A1 37
hot chocolate 50
hour A1 70
house A1 58
housework 41, 59

how

are things? 91
are you? A1 91
do I get to ... ? 54
do you do? 91
do you say ... ? 4
far 51, 92
long A1 13, 52, 68, 92
many A1 45, 92
much A1 44, 45, 92
often A1 92
old 13
tall 11

however A1 97
huge A2 36
human A2 33
hundred A1 6
Hungarian 35
Hungary 35
hungry A1 17
hurry up 100
hurt A2 32, 39
husband A1 14, 16

I

don't think so 96
guess so A2 100
hope so 96
hope not 96
suppose so 100

think so A2 96
'd like 50
'd love to 94
'll have (when ordering) 49
'm afraid (not) A2 87, 93
'm afraid I can't 94
'm fine, thanks 95
'm not sure 94
'm sorry but ... 94
'm sorry I'm late 95
ice (= weather) A1 37
ice (= in a drink) A1 50
ice cream A1 49
ice hockey 82
icy 37
idea A1 92
idea A1 as in that's a great idea 94
ideal A2 90
identity card 79
if A1 as in Do you mind if / Is it OK if ... ? 93
ill A2 31
illness A2 31
immediately A2 23
impolite 62
impossible A2 62, 96
improve A1 13, 31
improvement B1 13

in

(a place) A1 20
(something with walls or sides) A1 20
(= at home) A2 75
(a big area) A1 20
2020, etc. A1 18
(ten) days A1 9
fact A1 21, 86
front of sth A1 20
hospital A2 21
January, etc. A1 18
love A2 17
order to do sth B1 98
pain 17, 32

- prison **A2** 21
the back of sth 21
the end **A2** 21
the middle of sth 21
the morning, etc. **A1** 18
the (news)paper 85
the past **A1** 86
(the) spring, etc. **A1** 18
trouble 86
include **A1** 87
included **A2** 87
including **A2** 86
increase *n, v* **A2** 34
incredible **A2** 72, 80
indefinite article 2
India 35
Indian 35
industry **A2** 36
informal **A2** 3, 62
information **A1** 13, 74
injury **A2** 32
insect **A2** 38
inside **A2** 10, 58
instead **A2** 49
instruct **C1** 76
instructions **A2** 5
instructor **A2** 76
instrument (= musical) **A2** 83
intelligent **A2** 15
interested (in sth) **A1** 22, 80
interesting **A1** 80
international **A2** 60
internet **A1** 74
interview *n, v* **A1** 71
interviewer 71
into **A1** 19
introduce sb (to sb) **A1** 91
introduction **A2** 91
invent **A2** 5, 78
invention **A2** 78
invitation **A2** 94
invite **A2** 94
involve **A2** 70
Ireland 35
ironing 59
irregular 2, 62
Is it OK/all right if ... ? 93
Is that everything? 50
Is that ... ? (= on the phone) 75
Is there ... near here? 54
island **A1** 33
it doesn't matter 87, 95
IT manager 68
Italian 35
Italy 35
item of clothing 24
jacket **A1** 24
jam **A2** 45
January **A1** 8
Japan 35
Japanese 35
jazz **A2** 80
jeans **A1** 24
jewellery **A2** 25
job **A1** 13, 67, 69
journalism **B2*** 68
journalist **A2** 68, 85
journey **A1** 51, 53
juice **A1** as in orange juice 50
July **A1** 8
jump **A2** 12
jumper 24
June **A1** 8
just **A1** 9
just a moment 75
just before/after 7
just over/under 36, 45
keep **A1** 73
keep a record of sth 4
keep **A1** as in keep warm 31
keep going 54
keep left/right 55
keep off 55
key **A1** 58, 88
keyboard **B1** 73
kill **A2** 30
kilo(gram) 45
kilometre **A1** 36
kilometres (per hour) 51
kind **B1** 15
kind **A1** as in What kind of ... ?
84, 92
kitchen **A1** 58
knee **A2** 10
knife **A2** 48
knock **B1** 32
know **A1** 4, 16
Korean 35
kph 51
lake **A2** 57
lamb 47
lamp **A2** 60
land *v* **A2** 89
land *n* **A1** 34
landline 75
language **A1** 35, 66
laptop **A2** 73
large **A1** 26
last (stop) **A1** 52, 53
last *v* **A2** 68
last year **A1** /week/night, etc. 9
late *adv, adj* **A1** 23, 65
late **A1** as in in your late thirties 30
later **A1** as in see you later 91
Latin America 35
laugh **A1** 15
law **A2** 68
lawyer **A2** 68
lazy **A2** 15, 63
lead *v* **B1** 82
leather **B1** 25
leave **A1** 53, 89
leave a message 75
leave home 23
leave school 67
leave sth somewhere 88
lecture **A2** 68

- lecturer 68
left (= not right) **A1** 54
leg **A1** 10
lemon **A2** 46, 50
lend **A2** 39, 93
lesson **A1** 67
let **A1** 39, 55
let me ... **A2** 95
let sb know **A2** 100
let's 84
letter **A1** 74
lettuce 46
level **B1** 13
library **A1** 56, 68
lie down 12, 99
lift **A2** 58
light (= not heavy) **A2** 63
light *n* **A1** 61
light blue 26
like (= similar to) **A1** 4
like *v* **A1** 80, 81
like **A1** *as in* What's he/she like? 15
likely (to) **A2** 96
line (= of a phone) **A2** 75
line (= of writing) **A1** 73
link **A2** 74
lion **A1** 38
listen **A1** 22, 76, 85
listener **A2** 76
literature **B1** 66
little **A1** 26
live (= happening now) **B1** 83
live with sb **A1** 22
living room **A1** 58
lock **A2** 58
long (= not short) **A1** 11, 26
long **A1** *as in* 20km long 36
long hours 70
look *n* **A2** 44
look *v* **A1** 44
look nice/great, etc. 26
look after sth/sb 59, 100
look at sb/sth **A1** 22, 74
look round 90
look sth up **A2** 5, 99
lorry **A2** 51
lorry driver 69
lose (to sb) **A1** 39, 82, 95
lose weight 11
lost **A2** *as in* get lost **A2**; be lost 74, 90
loudly **A2** 65
love *v* **A1** 80
love *n* **A1** 17
love story 84
lovely **A2** 11, 26, 94
low **A2** 63
lucky **A2** 62
luggage 89
lunch **A1** *as in* have lunch 23, 40
machine 89
made of sth 22
magazine 85
main character 86
main course 49
main road 51
mainly **B1** 86
major **A2** 30, 36
make
(= produce/create) **A1** 41
(= produce a change) **A1** 41
a call 75, 88
a choice 78
a comment 44
a complaint 78
a copy 44, 73
a decision 41
a discovery 78
a mistake **A2** 41
an arrangement 78
a noise 41
a promise 44
money **A2** 41
sense **A2** 41
sure **A2** 93
the bed 41
sth up **B1** 5
make-up **B2*** 60
manage **A2** 70
manager **A2** 70
manner **A2** 65
many **A1** *as in* how many **A1** 45, 92
map **A1** 90
March **A1** 8
mark *n* **B1** 67
market **A1** 56
married **A1** 13
match *n* **A1** 82
match *v* **A1** 3
material **A2** 29
mathematics **A2** 66
maths **A2** 66
matter **A2** *as in* it doesn't matter 15, 87, 95
matter **A2** *as in* What's the matter? 31
May **A1** 8
may **A2** 96
maybe **A1** 94, 96
meal **A1** 49
mean **A1** 4
meaning **A1** 4
meat **A1** 47
media **A2** 85
medical **A2** 31
medicine **A2** 28, 68
meet (= for the first time) **A1** 16, 70
meet (= go somewhere and wait for sb) **A1** 16
meeting **A1** 70
member **A1** 30
memory **A2** 29
menu (= in a restaurant) **A1** 49
menu (= on a computer) **A1** 73
message *n* **A2** 74, 75
message *v* 75
metal **A2** 29

- metre high 36
 Mexican 35
 Mexico 35
 mice (= animal) A1 38
 mice (of a computer) 73
 midday 7
 middle-aged 11
 Middle East 35
 midnight A1 7
 might A2 87, 96
 miles per hour, mph 51
 milk A1 45, 50
 million A1 6
 mind A2 as in Do you mind if ... ? 93
 mind A2 as in I don't mind 80
 mind (= be careful) B1 55
 mine A2 92
 minus 6
 minutes past/to 7
 mirror A2 60
 miss (a train) A1 53
 missing A2 3
 mistake A1 as in make a mistake A2 3, 41
 mobile phone A1 29, 75
 mobile number 75
 model A2 69
 modern A1 36, 58, 63, 80
 moment A1 as in at the moment A1 18, 21, 75
 moment A1 as in just a moment 75
 Monday A1 8
 monkey A2 38
 month A1 8
 moon A2 7
 more A1 as in any more 29
 more A1 as in some more 49
 morning A1 as in in the morning A1 7
 most (of sth) A1 85
 mostly A2 86
 mother A1 14
 motor racing 82
 motorbike 51
 motorcycle A2 51
 motorway 51
 mountain A1 36
 mouse (pl mice) (= animal) A1 38
 mouse (pl mice) (= of a computer) A1 73
 mouth A1 10
 move A1 73, 78
 movement A2 78
 movie A1 84
 much A1 as in how much A1 44, 45
 much A1 as in thanks very much 54, 95
 mum A1 14
 museum A1 56
 mushroom 46
 music shop 28
 musical instrument 83
 musician A2 83
 name v A1 30
 narrow A2 63
 national A2 60
 nationality 35
 natural A1 57
 nature A2 57
 near A1 20, 52, 54
 nearest 54, 92
 nearly A2 7
 necessary A2 62
 neck A2 10
 necklace 25
 need v A1 45, 95
 negative A1 63
 neighbour A1 58
 nephew 14
 nervous A2 17
 never A1 23
 never mind 95
 new A1 80
 news A1 as in the news A1 85
 New Year's Day 8
 newspaper A1 85
 next (stop) A1 52, 53
 next to A1 20
 next week/Thursday/year A1, etc. 9
 nice A1 15, 26
 nice to meet you 91
 niece 14
 night A1 as in at night 7, 18
 night A1 as in last night 9
 nil 82
 nine A1 6
 nineteen A1 6
 ninety A1 6
 nineteenth 8
 ninth 8
 no problem A1 54, 93
 no smoking 55
 no, thanks / thank you 50, 95
 no vacancies 55
 noise A2 56
 noisy A2 56
 non-fiction 86
 none (of sth) A2 85
 noon 7
 normally A2 23
 north A1 n, adj 36
 North America 35
 north-east 36
 north-west 36
 Northern Ireland 35
 nose A1 10
 not bad 91
 not sure 4
 note (= money) B1 27
 notebook B2* 1, 4
 nothing else 100
 notice n A2 1, 55
 notice v A2 22
 noticeboard 1
 noun 2
 novel A2 86
 November A1 8
 now A1 as in right now A1 100

- nowhere **A2** 33
 number (= phone) **A1** 75
 nurse **A1** 69
 nuts **A2** 46
 o'clock **A1** 7
 ocean **A2** 36
 October **A1** 8
 of course **A1** 49, 93
 off **B1** as in 50% off 27
 offer *n, v* **A2** 71, 95
 office **A1** 70
 often **A1** 23
 oh (= zero) 75
 oh! **A1** 91
 Oh dear! **A2** 87, 91
 oil **A2** 48
 OK **A1** as in Is it OK if ... ? 93
 OK **A1** as in that's OK 54
 old **A1** 58, 80
 old friend **A2** 16
 older than 14
 oldest as in the oldest 14
 olive oil 45
 olive 45
on
 1st January, etc. **A1** 18
 foot 51
 his/her, etc. mobile 21
 holiday **A1** 21, 87
 Monday, etc. evening **A1** 18
 my/your, etc. own **B1** 15
 (something long/flat) **A1** 20
 the coast **A2** 20
 the corner 54
 the ground/first/second/top floor 58
 the phone **A1** 21, 75
 the river 20
 the road 20
 the side of sth / the other side **A2** 21
 the table 20
 the wall **A2** 20
 time **A2** 21
 tour 83
 TV **A1** / the radio 85
 your right/left 54
 once **A1** as in once a **A1** (week) 23
 one **A1** 6
 onion **A1** 46
 online **A1** 27, 28, 74
 only **A1** 64
 open **A1** 12, 92
 open (a document) **A1** 73
 opera singer 83
 opinion **A1** 56, 85
 opposite **A1** 3, 4, 20, 54
 option **A2** 67
 orange (= colour) **A1** 26
 orange (= fruit) **A1** 46
 orange juice 50
 orchestra **B2*** 83
 order *v* **A1** 49
 order **A1** as in Are you ready to order? 49
 organization **A2** 78
 organize **A2** 70, 78
 other **A1** as in each other **A1** 15, 16
 out (= not at home) **A1** 75
 out loud 4
 out of (a place) **A1** 19
 out of order 55
 outside (= in front of sth) **A2** 52
 outside (= not inside) **A2** 58
 oven **A2** 59
 over (= direction) **A1** 19
 over (= more than) **A1** 36
 over here 53
 over there **A1** 53
 overweight 11
 own as in on my own **B1** 15
 own *v* **A2** 57, 76
 owner **A2** 57, 76
 pack **A2** 87
 pain **A2** 32
 painting **A1** 77, 81
 pair **A1** as in a pair of shoes 25
 palace **A2** 56
 paper **A1** 85
 paragraph **A1** 5
 parent **A1** 14
 park **A1** 56
 park *v* **A1** 58
 parking **A2** 55, 58, 87
 part of speech 2
 part of sth **A1** 72
 particular **A2** 28
 partner **A1** 16
 party **A1** 94
 pass (an exam) **A2** 67
 passenger **A2** 53, 89
 passport **A1** 87
 password **B2*** 74
 past (= direction) **A2** 19
 past **A1** as in half past 7
 past participle 2, 79
 past simple 2
 past tense 79
 pasta 45, 48
 patient **B2** 15
 pay **A1** 27, 88
 pay attention **A2** 5
 pay for sth **A1** 22
 PC (= personal computer) 73
 PE (= Physical Education) 66
 peace **A2** 85
 peach 46
 pear 46
 peas 46
 pen **A1** 1
 pencil **A1** 1
 pepper (= black pepper) **A1** 48
 pepper as in red/green pepper 46
 per cent **A2** 27
 perfect **A1** 13, 90
 perform **A2** 83
 performance **B1** 83
 performer 83

perhaps **A2** 94, 96
 permission **A2** 93
 personal (= for one person) **A1** 28
 personal (information) 13
 personal computer 73
 personality **A2** 16
 pet **A2** 38
 petrol **A2** 34
 pharmacy 28, 31
 phone *n, v* **A1** 29, 61, 75
 phone **A1** *as in* on the phone **A1** 21, 75
 phone number **A1** 75, 79
 phone sb back 75
 photo **A1** 73, 90
 photograph **A1** 73
 phrasal verb 79
 phrase **A1** 2
 physical education 66
 physics **A2** 66
 pianist 83
 piano **A1** 83
 pick **B1** 57
 pick sth up **A2** 12
 picture **A1** 60
 pie 49
 piece **A1** 45
 piece **A1** *as in* a piece of furniture 60
 piece **A1** *as in* a piece of music 83
 piece **A1** *as in* a piece of paper 1
 pig **A1** 38, 47
 pill **B2*** 31
 pilot **A2** 69
 pineapple 46
 pink **A1** 26
 pizza 49
 place **A1** 56
 plan (to do) sth **A1** 13
 plan *n, v* **A1** 30
 plane **A1** 89
 planet **A2** 84
 plant *n* **A1**

plant *v* **A2** 57
 plastic **A2** 25, 29
 plate **A2** 48
 platform **A2** 53
 play (a game) **A1** 23, 81, 82
 play (an instrument) **A1** 81
 player **A1** 82
 please **A1** 45, 50, 55
 pleased **A2** 17
 plus **B1** 6
 p.m. 7
 pocket **A2** 24
 point **A2** 82
 Poland 35
 police officer **A2** 69, 79
 policeman **A1** 69
 policewoman 69
 Polish 35
 polite **A2** 62, 93, 95
 pollution **A2** 34, 56
 poor **A1** 63
 popular **A1** 36, 81
 population **A2** 36
 pork 47
 Portugal 35
 Portuguese 35
 positive **A1** 63
 possessions **A2** 29
 possibility **A2** 96
 possible **A1** 62, 96
 post office **A1** 56
 post *n, v* **A1** 71, 74
 postcard 90
 postcode 13
 potato **A1** 46
 pound **A1** 27
 practice *n* **A1** 5
 practise *v* **A1** 5
 prawn 47
 predict **A2** 78
 prediction **B1** 78
 prefer to do sth **A1** 28, 90, 94

prefer (X to Y) **A1** 28, 80
 prepare **A1** 59
 preposition 2
 present **A1** 22, 28
 pretty (= attractive) **A1** 11
 pretty (= quite) **A1** 64
 price **A1** 27
 print **A2** 73, 89
 printer **A2** 73
 prison **A2** *as in* in prison **A2** 21
 prize **A2** 27
 probably **A1** 96
 problem **A1** *as in* no problem **A1** 54, 93
 produce **A2** 57
 product **A1** 27
 professor **A2** 68
 program **A1** 73
 programme **A1** 85
 progress **A2** 13
 project **B1** 70
 promise *n, v* **A2** 44
 pronoun 2
 pronounce **A2** 4
 pronunciation 4
 provide **A2** 89
 pub **A2** 50
 public **A2** *as in* the public 30
 public transport **A2** 51
 publish **A2** 86
 pull **A2** 12
 purple **A1** 26
 purpose **A2** 29
 purse 27
 push **A2** 12
 put **A1** 39
 on make-up 60
 on weight 11
 sth back 93
 sth down 12
 sth in order 3
 on clothes **A2** 24, 99

- quality **A2** 28
 quarter (to/past) 7
 question mark 79
 queue **B1** 55
 quiet (= not talking a lot) **A1** 15
 quiet (= not noisy) **A1** 56
 quiet (= not busy) **A1** 51
 quietly **A2** 65
 quite **A1** 11, 64, 80
 race **A2** 76
 radio **A1** as in on the radio 85
 railway station 53, 79
 rain *n, v* **A1** 37
 rather **A2** 64
 razor 60
 reach **A2** 89
 reader **A1** 76
 reading **A1** 76, 77
 ready **A1** 45
 realize **A2** 86
 really **A1** 15, 64; as in really like 80
 reason **A1** 98
 receive **A2** 74
 recent **A2** 30, 86
 recently **A2** 9
 reception **A2** 13
 receptionist 13
 recipe **A2** 29
 recognize **A2** 74
 recommend **A2** 88, 92
 record *n* **A2** 4
 record (= with music) 83
 record *v* **A2** 83
 recording **A2** 29
 recycle **A2** 34
 red **A1** 26
 red pepper 46
 red wine 48
 reduce **A2** 28
 refuse **A2** 95
 region **A2** 33
 regular **A2** 2, 62
 relationship **A2** 16
 relative **B1** 14
 relax **A1** 90
 relaxed **B1** 15
 remember **A1** 4
 repair **A2** 81
 repeat **A1** 5
 replace sth (with sth) **A2** 73
 reply *n, v* **A2** 44, 74
 report *v* **A2** 85
 report *n* **A1** 70
 reporter **A2** 68, 85
 request **A2** 93
 research **A2** as in do research 68
 reserve **B2*** 53
 respond **A2** 93
 response **A2** 93
 rest **A2** 31
 rest **A2** as in the rest **A2** 100
 result **A1** 67, 98
 return (ticket) 53
 review **A2** 84
 revise **B1** 5
 rice **A1** 45
 rich **A1** 63
 ride (a bike/motorbike, etc.) **A1** 12, 39, 51
 right (= correct) **A1** 3, 4, 26
 right (= not left) **A1** 54
 right (= OK) 45
 right now **A1** /away (= immediately) 100
 ring *n* (= jewellery) **A2** 25
 ring *v* (= telephone sb) **A2** 39, 75
 ring sb back 75
 river **A1** 36
 road **A1** as in main road 51
 rock **A2** 33, 90
 rock music 81
 roll *n* **B1** 50
 romantic **B1** 16, 84
 roof **A2** 58
 room [U] (= space) **B1** 60
 route **A2** 52
 routine **A1** 23
 rubbish **A2** 59
 rude **A2** 62, 95
 rule **A1** 86
 run (= on foot) **A1** 12, 39
 run (= travel) **B1** 52
 running **A2** 82
 rush hour 51
 Russia 35
 Russian 35
 sad **A1** 17, 65
 sadly **A2** 65
 safe **A2** 30, 56
 salad **A1** 46, 49
 salary **A2** 70
 sale(s) **A2** 27, 28, 55
 sales assistant 69, 79
 salmon 47
 salt **A1** 48
 same **A1** as in the same **A1** 3
 same **A1** as in be the same as sth 3
 same **A1** as in at the same time **A1** 21
 sandwich **A1** 50
 Saturday **A1** 8
 sauce **A2** 49
 Saudi Arabia 35
 Saudi 35
 sausage 47
 save (money) **A2** 27
 save (= on a computer) **A2** 73
 say **A1** 4
 say sorry 95
 scared (of sth/sb) **A2** 17
 scarf 25
 scary **A2** 84
 school **A1** 67
 science fiction **A2** 84
 science (subjects) 66
 sci-fi 84
 score *n, v* **A2** 82
 Scotland 35

- screen **A2** 73
 sea **A1** 90
 seafood 47
 search *n, v* **A2** 30
 search (for sth) (= on a computer) **A2** 74
 season **A2** 8
 seat **A2** 50, 53
 seat belt 89
 second **A1** 8
 second floor 58
 secondly **A2** 98
 secretary **A2** 69
 security **B1** 89
 see (= notice) **A1** 43
 see (= watch a film/TV) **A1** 43, 85
 see (= find out about sth) **A1** 43
 see (= visit/spend time with sb) **A1** 16, 43
 see (= understand) **B1** 43
 see you **A1** (later/soon/then) 91
 sell **A1** 27
 send **A1** 39, 70, 74
 send an email 44
 send a reply 44
 sentence **A1** 2
 separate **B1** 16
 September **A1** 8
 series (on TV, etc.) **A2** 86
 series (of events, etc.) **B1** 30
 serious (= not fun) **A2** 15
 serious (= very bad) **A2** 32
 serve **A2** 28, 88
 service **B1** 28, 88
 seven **A1** 6
 seventeen **A1** 6
 seventeenth 8
 seventh 8
 seventy **A1** 6
 shake hands 91
 Shall we ...? 94
 shape **A2** 29
 share a flat 15
 shave *n* 60
 sheep **A1** 38, 47
 sheet **A2** 60
 shelf **B1** 61
 shine **B1** 37
 shirt **A1** 24
 shoe **A1** 25
 shoe shop 28
 shop **A1** *n* 28
 shop assistant 45, 69, 79
 shop online 28, 74
 shopping **A1** *as in* go shopping / do the shopping 23, 28, 41, 77
 shopping centre 28, 79
 short (= not tall) **A1** 11
 short (= not long) **A1** 11, 26
 short form 3
 shorts 24
 should **A1** 31
 shoulder **A2** 10
 shower (= in a bathroom) **A1** 23, 60
 shower (= light rain) **B1** 37
 shut *adj* **A2** 55
 shut *v* **A2** 12, 39, 92
 sick **A1** *as in* be/feel sick 31
 sightseeing *as in* go sightseeing 77, 90
 sign *n* (= notice) **A2** 55
 sign *v* (= write your name) **A2** 88
 silver **A2** 25
 similar **A1** 63
 simple **A2** 5
 since **A2** 9
 sing **A1** 39, 81
 singer **A1** 81
 single (ticket) 53
 single (= not married) **A2** 13
 single room 87
 sink *n* 59
 sister **A1** 14
 sister-in-law 14
 sit **A1** 39
 sit down **A1** 12, 99
 site (= website) **A2** 74
 situation **A1** 4
 six **A1** 6
 sixteen **A1** 6
 sixteenth 8
 sixth 8
 sixty **A1** 6
 size **A2** 26
 skiing **A2** 82
 skin **A2** 10
 skirt **A1** 24
 sky **A2** 37
 sleep *v* **A1** 23, 44
 sleep *n* **A1** 44
 slim 11
 slow train 53
 slowly **A2** 65
 small **A1** 26
 smartphone 75
 smell *n, v* **A2** 44
 smile *n, v* **A2** 11, 44
 smoking **A2** 77
 smoking **A2** *as in* no smoking 55
 snack 50
 snake **A1** 38
 snow *n, v* **A1** 37
 so conjunction **A1** 98
 so ... (that) *adverb* (= for emphasis) **A1** 72
 soap **A2** 60
 soccer **A2** 82
 social life 15
 social media 63
 socks **A2** 25
 sofa 61
 soft **A2** 63
 software designer 68
 soldier **A2** 69
 solution **A2** 78, 86
 solve **A2** 78, 86
 some (of sth) **A1** 45, 85
 some more 49
 sometimes **A1** 23

- somewhere **A2** 33
 somewhere else 100
 son **A1** 14
 song **A1** 81
 soon **A1** *as in* see you soon 91
 sorry **A1** *as in* (so/very/really) sorry 17, 94, 95
 sorry **A1** *as in* sorry I'm late 95
 sort **A2** *as in* What sort of ... ? 84, 92
 sound **A1** *as in* that sounds lovely 94
 soup **A1** 49
 source **A2** 34
 south *n, adj* **A1** 36
 South America 35
 South Korea 35
 south-east 36
 south-west 36
 soy sauce 49
 space [U] **A1** 60
 Spain 35
 Spanish 35
 speak **A1** 39, 76
 speaker **A2** 76
 speaking 75
 special **A1** 8
 specific **A2** 63
 speed limit 51
 spell **A1** 4, 39
 spelling **A1** 77
 spend money (on sth) 22, 27, 39
 spend time doing sth **A1** 70
 spend time with sb 14, 39
 spider **A2** 38
 spoon **A2** 48
 sports centre 79
 spring **A1** 8
 square (= shape) **A2** 29
 square (= in a town) **A2** 56
 squid 47
 stairs **A2** 58
 stand up **A1** 12, 99
 star *n* **A1** 84
 star *v* **A2** 84
 start school 67
 starter 49
 statement **A1** 30
 station **A1** 53
 stay *v* **A1** 88
 stay *n* **A2** 88
 stay at school 67
 stay in **A1** 23
 stay in bed 31
 steps **A2** 58
 still water 49
 still (= continuing) **A1** 64, 97
 stomach **A2** 10
 stomach ache 31
 stop *n* **A1** 52
 storm **A2** 37
 story **A1** *as in* love story 84
 straight **A2** 11
 strange **A2** 15
 strawberry 46
 stress **B2** 30
 strong (= not weak) **A1** 31, 63
 strong (wind) **A2** 37
 study *n* **B1** 58
 stupid **A2** 15
 style **A1** 26
 subject **A1** 66
 subway 51
 succeed **A2** 78
 success **A1** 78
 such ... (that) **A2** 72
 suddenly **A2** 37
 sugar **A1** 45
 suggest **A2** 94
 suggestion **A2** 94
 suit **A2** 24
 suitcase 60, 87
 summer **A1** 8
 sun **A1** 37
 sunny 37
 Sunday **A1** 8
 sunglasses 25
 supermarket **A1** 28
 support *v* **A2** 72
 suppose **A2** *as in* I suppose so 100
 sure (= certain) **A1** 4, 62
 sure (= of course) **A2** 49, 93
 surname 13
 surprise *n, v* **A2** 44
 surprised **A2** 17
 surprising **A2** 72
 sweet **A2** 46
 swim *v* **A1** 39
 swim *n* **B1** 23
 swimming **A1** 82
 swimming pool **A1** 79
 Swiss 35
 Switzerland 35
 symbol **A2** 3
 synonym 3
 system **A2** 67
 T-shirt **A1** 24
 table (= furniture) **A1** 1, 60
 table (= diagram) **A2** 3
 table tennis 82
 tablet (= computer) **A2** 73
 tablet (= medicine) **B1** 31
 take
 size 12, etc. 26
 (time) **A1** 68
 (= carry) **A1** 93
 a message 75
 an exam 67
 a photo 90
 a seat 50
 away 50
 care of sb/sth **A2** 100
 off (= leave) **A2** 89, 99
 place **A2** 30
 sth off (= remove) **A2** 24, 99
 the bus/train 51, 53
 as in how long does it take? 52

- as in* take the first/second, etc.
turning 54
- tall **A1** 11
- tap **B2*** 59
- task **A2** 59
- taste **A2** 46
- taxi **A1** 51
- taxi driver 69
- tea **A1** 50
- teach **A1** 39, 76
- teacher **A1** 68, 69, 76
- teaching **A2** 77
- team **A1** 82
- technology **A2** 66
- teenage **A2** 11
- teenager **A1** 11
- teeth **A1** 10
- telephone **A1** 29, 61
- television **A1** 61
- temperature **A2** 31
- ten **A1** 6
- tennis **A1** 23, 82
- tent **B1** 81
- tenth 8
- term **A2** 68
- terrible **A1** 26
- terrible at sth 66
- test *v* **A1** 3
- text *n* **A1** 5, 73, 75
- Thai 35
- Thailand 35
- than **A1** 14
- thank sb (for sth) 22
- thanks a lot 95
- thanks very much 54
- that would be lovely 94
- that's a great idea 94
- that's all right 95
- that's all, thanks 45, 50
- that's fine 45, 93
- that's OK 54
- the army 70
- the best 67
- the news 85
- the oldest 14
- the rest 100
- the same 3
- the worst 67
- the youngest 14
- then **A1** 98
- there are five of us 14
- there's lots / a lot / nothing to do 56
- thin **A2** 11
- thing **A1** 4
- think **A1** 39, 78
- think about/of sth **A1** 22
- think **A1** *as in* I think so **A2** / I don't think so 96
- third **A1** 8
- thirsty **A1** 17
- thirteen **A1** 6
- thirteenth 8
- thirtieth 8
- thirty **A1** 6
- this evening/weekend/
morning **A1**, etc. 9
- This is ... (= on the phone) **A1** 75
- This is ... (= introducing sb) **A1** 91
- though **B1** 97
- thought(s) **A2** 78
- thousand **A1** 6
- three **A1** 6
- thriller 84
- through **A1** 19
- throw **A2** 12
- Thursday **A1** 8
- tick 3
- ticket **A1** 53
- ticket machine 89
- ticket office 53, 79
- tidy **A2** 15
- tie **A2** 24
- tiger 38
- tights 25
- time **A1** *as in* on time **A2** 21
- timetable 52, 53
- tired **A1** 17
- to (= purpose) **A1** 98
- toasted sandwich 50
- toe **B1** 10
- together **A1** 14
- together **A1** *as in* be together 16
- toilet **A1** 55, 60
- tomato **A1** 46
- tomorrow morning 9
- too (= excessive) **A1** 26
- too (= also) **A1** 97
- tool **A2** 29
- tooth (*pl* teeth) **A1** 10
- toothache 31
- toothbrush 60
- top (= clothes) **A2** 24
- top (= highest) **A2** 82
- top floor 58
- total **B1** 27
- touch **A2** 28
- tour **A2** *as in* go on a guided tour 90
- tourism **A2** 88
- tourist **A1** 88
- towards **A2** 19
- towel **A2** 60
- tower **A2** 56
- town **A1** 36
- town centre **A1** 79
- toy **A2** 28
- toy shop 28
- tradition **A2** 63
- traditional **A2** 63
- traffic **A1** 51
- traffic lights 54, 79
- train **A1** 53
- train driver 69
- train station 53, 79
- trainers **A2** 25
- training **A2** 67, 71
- travel **A1** 76
- traveller **A2** 76

- travelling 81
tree **A1** 57
trip **A1** 88
trouble **A2** 86
trousers **A1** 24
truck **A2** 51
true **A1** 3
try **A1** 86
try sth on 28
Tuesday **A1** 8
tuna 47
Turkey 35
Turkish 35
turn left/right 54
turn sth on/off **A2** 59, 99
turning *as in* take the second turning 54
TV **A1** 61
twelfth 8
twelve **A1** 6
twentieth 8
twenty **A1** 6
twenty-first 8
twenty-one 6
twenty-second 8
twenty-third 8
twenty-three 6
twenty-two 6
twice **A1** 23, 92
two **A1** 6
type **A1** *as in* What type of ... ? 47, 84, 92
type *v* **B1** 73
typical **A2** 90
UK 35
umbrella **A1** 25
uncertain 62
uncle **A1** 14
uncomfortable 26
under (= below) **A1** 19
under (= less than) **A1** 36
underground 51
underline 3
understanding **A2** 77
unemployed **B1** 69
unfortunately **A2** 51, 68
unfriendly 15
unhappy **A2** 17
unhealthy 31, 62
uniform **A2** 24, 67
unit **A2** 72
United Kingdom 35
United States (of America) 35
unlucky 62
unnecessary **B1** 62
unsure 62
untidy 15
until **A1** 88
unusual **A2** 29, 63
up **A1** 19
up to (an age) **B1** 67
upset **B1** 17
upstairs **A1** 58
use *v* **A1** 4
used to **A2** 90
useful **A1** 63
useless **B2*** 63
usually **A1** 23
vacancy 55
valley **A2** 57
van **A2** 51
variety **A2** 86
various **B1** 81
vegetable **A1** 46
vegetarian 47
vehicle **A2** 51
verb 2
very **A1** 26, 64
very well 91
video **A1** 74
view (= opinion) **A2** 56
view (= what you can see) **A2** 58
village **A1** 36
vinegar 48
violent **B1** 84
violin 83
violinist 83
virus (= illness) **A2** 31
virus (= on a computer) **A2** 74
visit *n, v* **A1** 76, 90
visitor **A1** 76
vocabulary 5
voice **A2** 29
vomit 31
waist 10
wait for sth **A1** 22, 53
waiter **A1** 49
wake up **A1** 23, 39, 99
Wales 35
walk **A1** 12
wall **A1** 60
wallet 27
want **A1** *as in* Do you want to ... ? 94
want **A1** *as in* Do you want ... ? 95
war **A2** 85
war film 84
wardrobe 60
warm **A1** 37
wash **A1** *as in* wash the dishes 59
wash *n* **A2** 60
washbasin 60
washing **A2** 59
washing machine 59, 79
washing-up 59
watch *n* **A1** 25
watch *v* **A1** 43, 81, 85
water *n* **A1** 48
water *v* **B1** 57
way **A1** 54
way out 55
weak **A2** 31, 63
wear **A1** 24, 25
website **A1** 74
wedding **A2** 96
Wednesday **A1** 8

week **A1** *as in last/next week* 9

weekday 23

weekend **A1** 9, 23

weigh **B1** 11

weight **A2** 11

welcome *adj, v* **A1**

welcome *n* **A2** 91

well **A1** 65

well (= not ill) **A1** 31

Well done! 100

west *n, adj* **A1** 36

wet **A2** 37

whale 38

what **A1** 92

about? **A1** 94

can I get you? 50

do you do? (= what's your job?)
13, 69, 92

kind/sort/type of ... ? 84, 92

time is it? 7

time/when ... ? 92

would you like? 50

's on? 84

's sth like? 15, 92

's the matter? 31, 91

's the time? 7

's the weather like? 37

's your job? 13, 69

when **A1** 92

Where's it on? (= film) 84

Where's the nearest ... ? 92

whereabouts 13

which **A1** 92

while **A2** 9, 90

white **A1** 26

white bread 50

white coffee 50

white wine 48

whiteboard 1

who **A1** 92

Who's calling? 75

whole **A2** 72

whose **A2** 92

why **A1** 92

wide **A2** 63

wife **A1** 14, 16

wild **A2** (animal/plant) 38, 57

will (= in promises) **A1** 91

win **A1** 27, 39, 76, 82

wind **A2** 37

window (= in a room) **A1** 61

window (= on a computer) **B1** 73

windy 37

wine (white/red) 48

wing **B1** 38

winner **A2** 76

winter **A1** 8

without **A1** 49

wonderful **A1** 80, 94

wood (= product) **A2** 29, 60

wood (= place with trees) **A2** 57

wooden **A2** 60

word **A1** 2

work *v* **A1** 69, 70, 76

work *n* **A1** 69

work hard **A1** 67

worker **A1** 76

working 77

world **A1** 33

worried **A2** 17

worry *v* **A2**

worry *n* **B1** 72, 95

worse (than) **A2** 37

worst **A2** *as in the worst* 67

worth doing 92

Would you like to ... ? 94

Would you like ... ? **A1** 95

Wow! **A2** 100

write **A1** 39

write an essay 68

write a reply 44

write sth down **A2** 4

writing **A1** 77

writer **A1** 86

wrong (= not correct) **A1** 3, 4, 26

wrong number 75

yeah **A1** 92

year **A1** 8

yellow **A1** 26

yes, please 50, 95

yesterday **A1** 9

yesterday evening 9

yet **A2** 9

younger than 14

youngest *as in the youngest* 14

zero **A2** 75

zoo 38

* These 13 words are from the **5000**.

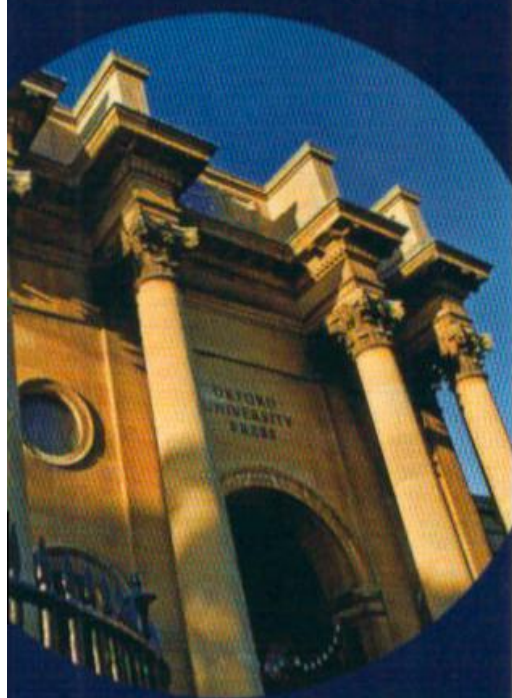
Abbreviations used in the book

<i>adj</i>	adjective
<i>adv</i>	adverb
[C]	(of a noun) countable
<i>inf</i>	informal
<i>n</i>	noun
OPP	opposite
<i>pl</i>	plural
<i>pp</i>	past participle
<i>pt</i>	past tense
<i>sing</i>	singular
<i>sb</i>	somebody
<i>sth</i>	something
SYN	synonym
[U]	(of a noun) uncountable
<i>v</i>	verb

Oxford University Press
is the world's authority
on the English language.

As part of the University of
Oxford, we are committed to
furthering English language
learning worldwide.

We continuously bring
together our experience,
expertise and research to
create resources such as
this one, helping millions of
learners of English to achieve
their potential.



OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

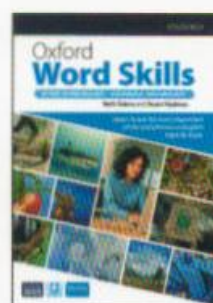
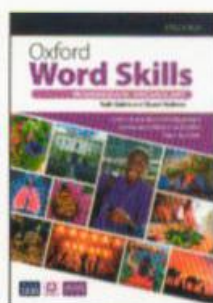
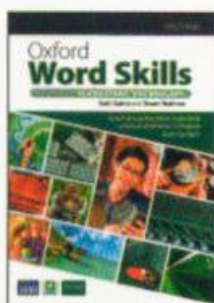
www.oup.com/elt

Oxford Word Skills

ELEMENTARY VOCABULARY

***Learn to use the most important words
and phrases in English topic by topic***

Based on the Oxford 3000™, *Oxford Word Skills* teaches you
the words and phrases you need to use in English in real life.
The Oxford 3000™ is a list of the 3,000 essential core words that
every learner of English needs to know, graded by CEFR level.



- learn over 2,400 words and phrases
- improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- practise the words in context
- study 100 units (20 extra!) with more practice
- use in the classroom and for self-study

Now with one year's access to the best-selling
Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary app.

Use the app with *Oxford Word Skills* to:

- listen to the pronunciation of each new word
and do exercises on pronunciation
- look up the meaning of any word you don't know



Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who
specialize in writing material for learning and teaching vocabulary.

**Oxford
3000**



ISBN 978-0-19-460566-3

